

# OUR STATE AND NATION

---

## CIVICS AND ECONOMICS

FIVE PONDS PRESS



# OUR STATE AND NATION

CIVICS AND ECONOMICS  
SECOND EDITION

## EXECUTIVE EDITOR

Written under the direction of and reviewed for accuracy by  
**Dr. Peter Wallenstein** Professor of History,  
Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University

## REVIEWERS

**Dr. Robert Roberts** Professor of Political Science,  
James Madison University

**Dr. Michael Clemons** Associate Professor of Political Science  
and African American Studies, Old Dominion University

**Dr. Michelle Vachris** Professor of Economics,  
Christopher Newport University

**Dr. William Wood** Professor of Economics,  
James Madison University

**Justin Blunt** Civics and Economics Teacher,  
Hanover County Public Schools

**Allison Castle** Former Civics and Economics Teacher,  
Virginia Beach Public Schools

## CONTRIBUTORS

**Bree Linton** Henrico, Virginia

**Leslie Swenson** Henrico, Virginia

**Lisa Arnold** Henrico, Virginia

No part of this publication may be reproduced in whole or in part without the express permission of Five Ponds Press. For information regarding rights and permissions, please contact: Permissions Department, Five Ponds Press, 600 S. Australian Avenue, Suite 500, West Palm Beach, FL 33405.

Copyright ©2017. All rights reserved.  
Published by Five Ponds Press, West Palm Beach, FL 33405. First printing, second edition, August 2017.

ISBN 978-1-935813-79-8  
Printed in the USA

## INTRODUCTION

### Freedom Is Not Free.....6

#### CHAPTER ONE

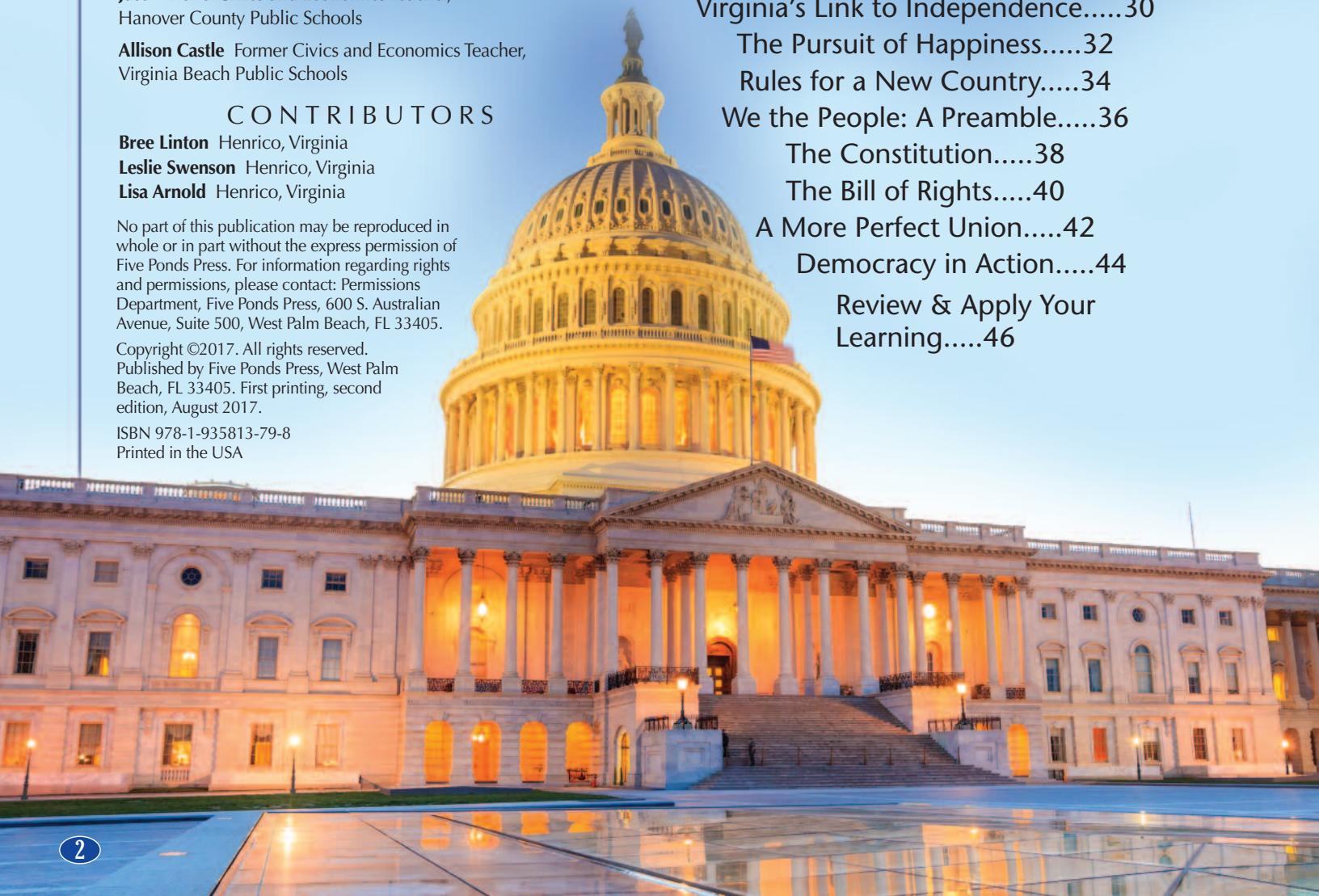
### Your Voice, Your Nation.....8

What Makes Us Americans?.....10
Tales of an American Life.....12
Five Important Freedoms.....14
The Price of Being an American.....16
Serving Our Nation.....18
Make Your Voice Heard.....20
The Good We Can Do.....22
Review & Apply Your Learning.....24

#### CHAPTER TWO

### The Words We Live By.....26

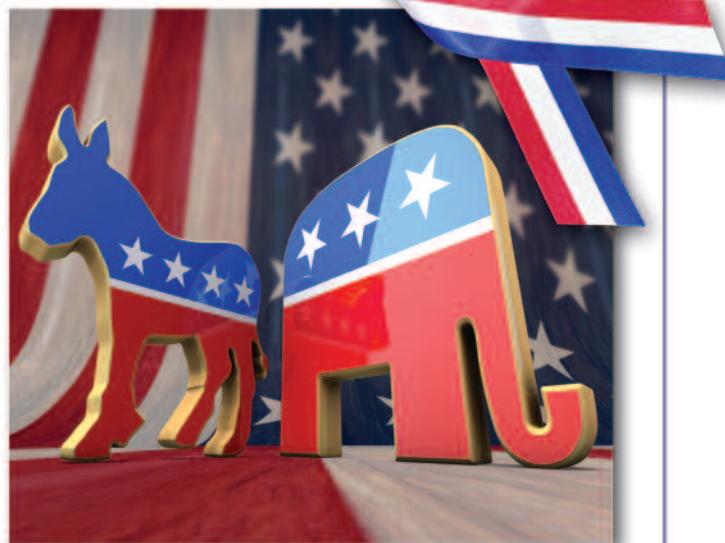
The Birth of Democracy.....28
Virginia's Link to Independence.....30
The Pursuit of Happiness.....32
Rules for a New Country.....34
We the People: A Preamble.....36
The Constitution.....38
The Bill of Rights.....40
A More Perfect Union.....42
Democracy in Action.....44
Review & Apply Your Learning.....46



## CHAPTER THREE

### A Vote for Democracy.....48

- Are You a Good Person?.....50
  - How to Get Elected.....52
  - Elephants and Donkeys.....54
  - On the Campaign Trail.....56
  - The High Cost of Politics.....58
  - The Electoral College.....60
  - Please Vote!.....62
- Review & Apply Your Learning.....64



## CHAPTER FOUR

### How Does It All Work?.....66

- Our Federal System.....68
  - The Legislative Branch.....70
  - Who's Who on Capitol Hill.....72
  - The Executive Branch.....74
    - Cabinet Dossier.....76
    - A President's Power.....78
    - So Much to Do!.....80
  - The Judicial Branch.....82
  - Checks and Balances.....84
  - Necessary and Proper.....86
- Review & Apply Your Learning.....88



## CHAPTER FIVE

### Our Commonwealth.....90

- Virginia Led the Way.....92
  - Virginia's Government.....94
  - The Federalists: Sharing the Power.....96
    - Federalism in Action.....98
    - At Work in the Virginia General Assembly.....100
    - Our Governor.....102
- Review & Apply Your Learning.....104





## CHAPTER SIX

### On the Home Front.....106

- County, City, Town.....108
- Here at Home.....110
- Virginia's Court System.....112
- Five Important Jobs.....114
- It's the Law Here.....116
- Review & Apply Your Learning.....118



## CHAPTER SEVEN

### Pushing for Change .....120

- The Power of the Media.....122
- The Power of One Voice.....124
- Agents of Change.....126
- A Clear and Present Danger.....128
- Review & Apply Your Learning.....130

## CHAPTER EIGHT

### Order in the Court.....132

- The Court System: An Overview.....134
- The High Courts: A Closer Look.....136
- Landmarks in Justice.....138
- Criminal Cases.....140
- Civil Cases:
  - Settling Disagreements.....142
  - Due Process Promises.....144
  - The Court at School.....146
- Review & Apply Your Learning.....148



## CHAPTER NINE

<b>America and Its Resources.....</b>	150
Let's Talk Economics!.....	152
How The World Works.....	154
The American Way .....	156
Getting Down to Business.....	158
Supply and Demand.....	160
Economic Flow.....	162
Put It in the Bank.....	164
Our Global Links.....	166
Review & Apply Your Learning.....	168



## CHAPTER TEN

<b>A Helping Hand.....</b>	170
The Government Steps In.....	172
Our Nation's Business.....	174
It's Tax Time!.....	176
Money, Money, Money!....	178
The Federal Reserve.....	180
Keeping Us Safe.....	182
Review & Apply Your Learning.....	184



## CHAPTER ELEVEN

<b>What Lies Ahead?.....</b>	186
What Do You Do Best?.....	188
You and Technology .....	190
Having It All.....	192
Review & Apply Your Learning.....	194



## ADDITIONAL REFERENCE

<b>Documents and Maps.....</b>	195
Declaration of Independence.....	196
The Constitution of the United States.....	199
The Bill of Rights.....	206
Additional Amendments.....	207
The Virginia Statute for Religious Freedom.....	211
Virginia Declaration of Rights.....	212
Virginia Congressional & Judicial Districts.....	214
Political Map of the U.S.....	216
Glossary.....	218
Index.....	221
Photo Credits.....	224



# Freedom Is Not Free

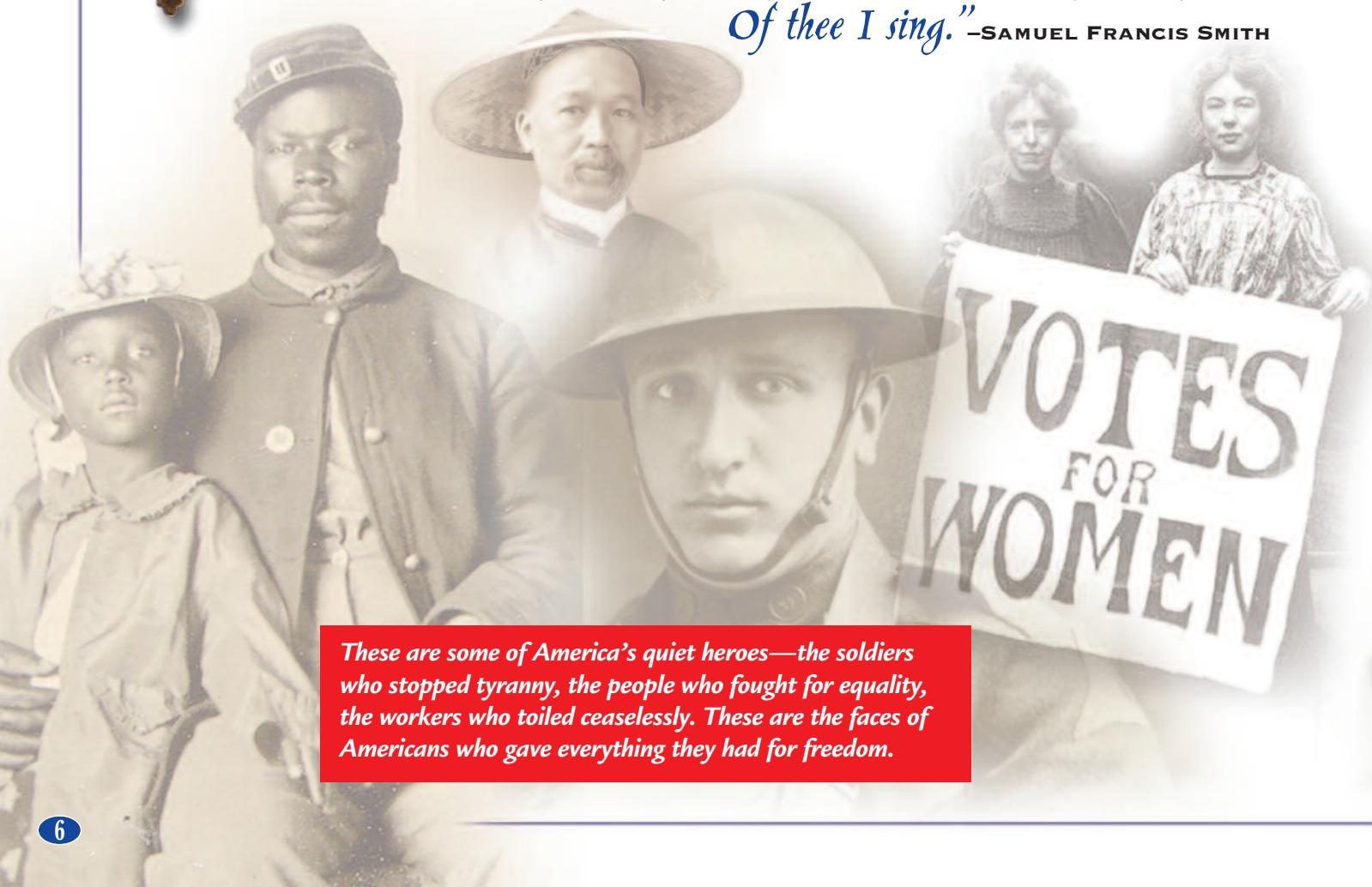
## THESE ARE THE FACES OF OUR HARD-WON RIGHTS

There are many Americans who take their fundamental civil liberties for granted. Many complain about gridlocked government, bitter political campaigns, endless budget struggles, or yet another new rule or regulation that makes life seem ever more complicated.

People complain about too many taxes, “unfair” speeding tickets, and even scoop-the-poop laws. But stop for a minute and think about this: Ever since the first soldier fell to the ground, mortally wounded in the dawning days of the American Revolution, the citizens of this nation have been willing to give their lives so that we can live as free people. All the things we take for granted—the power to speak freely, to worship in any way we wish, to live without fear—these precious rights have come to us through the huge sacrifices of millions of people.

It has taken over two hundred years to grant a majority of Americans basic civil liberties. An enormous price has been paid so that all Americans can share the promise of life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. And our work is not done. The struggle to guarantee all Americans basic civil liberties continues today.

*“My country, 'tis of thee, Sweet land of liberty,  
Of thee I sing.” —SAMUEL FRANCIS SMITH*



*These are some of America's quiet heroes—the soldiers who stopped tyranny, the people who fought for equality, the workers who toiled ceaselessly. These are the faces of Americans who gave everything they had for freedom.*

## WE THE PEOPLE...

What powerful words! The first three words of the Constitution of the United States are a cry to *all* Americans to be a part of the work of this great nation. That's what **civics** is all about.

Understanding the laws of our land—how they are made, and how they can be changed if they do not serve us—is just one small part of the journey that lies ahead. Civics is a celebration of leadership and a willingness to roll up your sleeves and take part in making your community and nation a better place.

## MAKE YOUR VOICE HEARD

There are countries in other parts of the world where people have no say in the government. They cannot speak freely. They live in fear. They do not get to choose their leaders. Every aspect of their lives is controlled. Would you want to live that way?

Our government is not perfect, because people are not perfect. In the past there have been some downright bad laws. Working to make positive changes is an ongoing task. The business of running the United States is complicated.

As you explore the inner workings of our nation this year, you will begin to understand how we are all linked together. Our efforts help to form a finely woven fabric of red, white, and blue—a great cloak of freedom that protects us all.



# You have a very important job to do

Do you think you are too young to change the world around you?

You cannot run for president of the United States (yet). You will not be able to vote for another few years. Still, there is so much you CAN do.

It's the job of all Americans to stand up for what they believe in.

- Begin by treating your fellow citizens with respect and tolerance.
- Volunteer in your community. Help clean up roadside trash, work at an animal shelter, or read with a kindergartner at an after-school center.



- Stay informed. What's happening in the nation and around the globe?

Being an American is YOUR job, YOUR responsibility.

**Let's get to work!**



American Ashley Spencer proudly flies her flag  
after winning a gold medal in the relay event at  
the 2012 World Junior Championships in  
Barcelona, Spain.

A close-up photograph of a person's arm and hand holding the American flag. The hand is gripping the wooden pole, and the flag's stars and stripes are visible.

*"The right of every American to first-class citizenship is the most important issue of our time."*

**-JACKIE ROBINSON**, Baseball legend

SEEKING LIFE  
AND LIBERTY

# YOUR VOICE, YOUR NATION



*A citizen is an individual with certain rights and duties under a government who, by birth or by choice, owes allegiance to that government.*

*The Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution of the United States of America defines citizenship as follows: "All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside."*

## Words to Know

### ► **immigrate**

(im-uh-grate)

To come into a new country to live permanently

### ► **naturalize**

(natch-uh-rul-eyeze)

To grant a foreigner citizenship in a country



# What Makes Us Americans?

This flag-waving toddler was born in the United States. That is one way to be an American citizen. Many of us are Americans for that simple reason.

But for people who want to become American citizens, the road to citizenship can be difficult.

## A PLEDGE OF NEW ALLEGIANCE

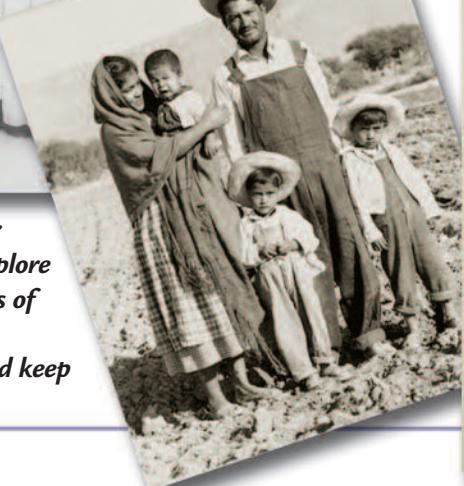
America is a nation of immigrants. Even if you are an American Indian, most of your ancestors came from Asia. Some were drawn by the promise of a better life. Some were pushed from their homes because of war or religious persecution. Some were dragged here in chains, against their will.

The Irish came to escape the potato blight. Jews from Eastern Europe came to seek safety from violent attacks. The Chinese came to flee war and famine. Italians and Latinos came to escape crushing poverty. All hoped to find job opportunities. Instead, these new arrivals were often treated badly.

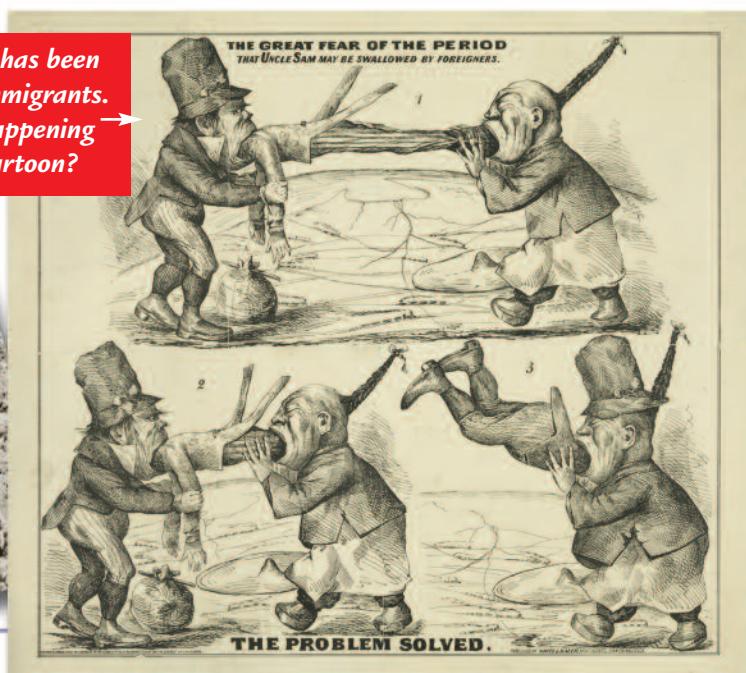
In spite of that, the newcomers have helped to shape our nation. They have brought foods and customs that became all-American favorites—hot dogs, pizza, bagels, music. They brought fresh ideas and new ways of doing things. And they have helped to shape our nation into a remarkable country unlike anyplace else on Earth. Today, America's diversity is its strength.



Fighting discrimination has been a challenge for many immigrants. What do you think is happening in this 1871 political cartoon?



What is your heritage? Explore the traditions of your family's homeland and keep them alive.



THE PROBLEM SOLVED.

## YEARNING TO BREATHE FREE

Every year thousands of people try to **immigrate** to America. For victims of persecution, America offers a safe haven, but every year many are turned away because our immigration laws do not automatically admit everyone who applies. The immigration process begins by getting a visa—limited-time permission to come to America. You can then apply for a “green card,” which gives you the ability to live and work here permanently. After several years, you can finally apply for permanent U.S. citizenship.

There is a lot of disagreement over what to do about undocumented residents. Many immigrants who are undocumented entered the country lawfully with valid visas, and ended up overstaying their visas. Some argue that there should be a path to citizenship. Others believe that Congress must do more to stop people from staying in the country illegally.



### Room for Debate

Some states now issue driver's licenses to undocumented immigrants. Do you think that is a good idea? Why or why not?

## Six Steps TO BECOMING A CITIZEN

How do you become a **naturalized** citizen? You must be at least 18 years old and a legal resident in the U.S. for at least three to five years. Of course, you have to be able to read, speak, and write in the English language. You will have to pass a naturalization test that demonstrates your knowledge of American history and principles. *Who is the governor of Virginia? What were the thirteen original states? Who was the president during World War I?* Could you answer those questions? You must be of good moral character. Finally, you will swear loyalty to the United States by taking the *Oath of Allegiance* at a naturalization ceremony.

Some of America’s most influential, creative people were immigrants. Albert Einstein, the brilliant scientist, came from Germany. Musician Wyclef Jean came from Haiti. Thousands of scientists, artists, and civic leaders have come from afar and made America a better place.

This man is taking the Oath of Allegiance at a naturalization ceremony. He can now get a U.S. passport and, best of all, vote.



## TALES OF AN AMERICAN LIFE



### FIRST THEY SERVED THEIR NEW COUNTRY

Did you know that you do not have to be a United States citizen to serve in America's armed forces? In fact, in 2010 there were about 16,500 non-citizen soldiers proudly serving their soon-to-be country. Many non-citizen soldiers have been wounded and have died for the United States.

For U.S. Navy sailors Jesse Taylor and Alex Litovtchenko, enlisting in the navy helped to speed their path to citizenship. They took their Oath of Allegiance aboard a U.S. aircraft carrier, in a special citizenship ceremony. Reading the part of the Oath of Allegiance that says "I will bear arms on behalf of the United States..." must have stirred a deep sense of pride in them. They had been defending America, and now it was officially their true homeland.



#### NATURALIZATION OATH OF ALLEGIANCE TO THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

"I hereby declare, on oath, that I absolutely and entirely renounce and abjure all allegiance and fidelity to any foreign prince, potentate, state, or sovereignty, of whom or which I have heretofore been a subject or citizen; that I will support and defend the Constitution and laws of the United States of America against all enemies, foreign and domestic; that I will bear true faith and allegiance to the same; that I will bear arms on behalf of the United States when required by the law; that I will perform noncombatant service in the Armed Forces of the United States when required by the law; that I will perform work of national importance under civilian direction when required by the law; and that I take this obligation freely, without any mental reservation or purpose of evasion; so help me God."

## THE OLDEST NEW CITIZEN

As 105-year-old Sona Babai of Iran proudly raised her right hand and was sworn in with 7,000 other new citizens, she became one of the oldest naturalized Americans in U.S. history.

"America is a big umbrella that lets a lot of people underneath to be safe," Babai said, as her son stood close by, steadying her frail body. "Because of the good hearts of American people, I want to be part of them."

Asked what she would do now that she was a new citizen, she answered, "I'm an American. I'm going to vote."



## YOUNG AMERICANS

An Duong, from Vietnam, and other teens proudly display their Certificate of Citizenship during their swearing-in ceremony in Texas. Most immigrant teens gain citizenship because one parent (or both) has become a citizen. American families who adopt children from other countries must file the necessary papers to apply for citizenship. When it is time to be sworn in as a citizen, children under the age of 14 do not say the oath, but the end result is the same. These teens are now citizens of the United States!



*The Constitution of the United States of America establishes and protects the citizens' fundamental rights and liberties.*

*Few rights, if any, are considered absolute.*

## Word to Know

### ► amendment

(Uh-mend-mint)

A formal or official change made to a document

*"Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the Government for a redress of grievances."*

—THE BILL OF RIGHTS

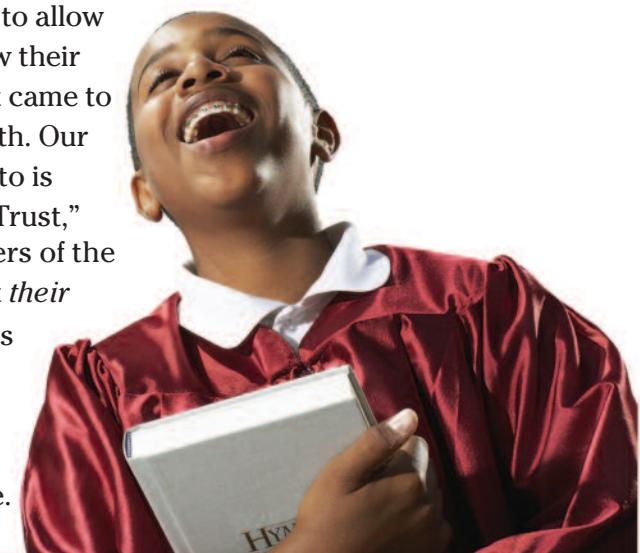
## FREEDOM OF RELIGION



## PRAY THE WAY YOU WANT

- *Government may not establish an official religion, endorse an official religion, or unduly interfere with the free exercise of religion.*

In the 1600s and 1700s, in many places in America, church attendance was mandatory. You could be jailed for not attending Sunday services. How did "church" and "state" finally separate? Throughout recorded history there have been horrible atrocities committed in the name of religion. When America became a nation, the founding leaders believed it would be better to allow people to follow their hearts when it came to matters of faith. Our nation's motto is "In God We Trust," but the framers of the Constitution put *their* trust in America's citizens to know best how to worship, or not, if they so choose.



# Five Important Freedoms

*The Bill of Rights are the first ten amendments to the U.S. Constitution. They are an extraordinary promise to all Americans. They begin with the First Amendment—a vow that we can speak, pray, and gather together without fear.*

## SPEAK FREELY

- *Individuals are free to express their opinions and beliefs.*

There are still many places in the world where you can be thrown in prison for speaking your mind in public. America is NOT one of those places. Sometimes a person will say something that you think is wrong—perhaps even cruel—but that person is still allowed to express an opinion.

## FREEDOM OF SPEECH

## FREEDOM OF THE PRESS



### FIT TO PRINT?

- *The press has the right to gather and publish information, including that which criticizes the government.*

We depend on newspapers, magazines, TV, and the Internet to provide us with up-to-the-minute news. The government cannot control the news. It cannot force a newspaper to publish information against its will, and it also cannot stop a newspaper from publishing an article that might endanger our national security. This is a very great bond of trust.

## LET'S MARCH ON WASHINGTON!

- *Individuals may gather peacefully.*

One person sharing an opinion can be a powerful force for change. Hundreds of thousands gathering together for a common cause can send a huge message. Think of Dr. Martin Luther King, Jr., sharing his dream of a better America with a quarter of a million people peacefully gathered around him, and you get the picture!



### FREEDOM OF ASSEMBLY

## HAVE A COMPLAINT?

- *Individuals have the right to make their views known to public officials.*

If a person has been elected to office but does a bad job, is there anything that can be done? What if a proposal has been made to close your school and bus you to another miles away? Sign a petition! The freedom to petition is a powerful force. Without benefit of an election, you can make your voice heard.



Although we have **First Amendment** rights, there are things we cannot do. A person cannot get on a jetliner and start talking about bombing the plane. A news source cannot print lies that hurt or ruin a private citizen. We must be civilized to be good Americans.

# Due Process

## TWO AMENDMENTS TO PROTECT US

- *The framers of the Constitution added even more ways to protect our rights.*

**Due process** is the official and correct way of doing things in a legal case. Due process means we are entitled to a fair and speedy trial, and that we must know the charges against us. Two amendments focus on due process. The **Fifth Amendment** protects citizens from unjust arrest. It says that the accused must know why he or she is being arrested. Americans are entitled to a fair trial, and a citizen's legal rights must be respected by both the state and the nation. The **Fourteenth Amendment** says that no state may deprive persons born or naturalized in the United States of equal protection under the laws. This amendment was added at a time when our nation treated African Americans unfairly. Protecting our fundamental rights and liberties is the root of our American way of life.

# The Price of Being an American



## DEATH AND TAXES

Benjamin Franklin said it best, “In this world nothing can be said to be certain, except death and taxes.” Grown-ups will grumble and complain, but without tax money our nation would have no armed forces to protect us. There would be no well-paved highways, no national parks, no homeland security forces at work keeping us safe.

States and cities also levy taxes. They, too, have things to pay for—schools, commuter rail and bus lines, parks, and roads. Taxes will always be a sore spot, but a necessary one. Best to have a sense of humor about it. As the humorist Will Rogers said, “The only difference between death and taxes is that death doesn’t get worse every time Congress meets.”

## Room for Debate

Several Virginia cities and counties require that youngsters under the age of 14 wear bike helmets. Do you think this is a fair law or does it violate your rights? Explain.

You have the right to free speech. You do not have the right to speed down a road at 90 miles an hour and put others in danger. As American citizens, we have important duties and obligations.

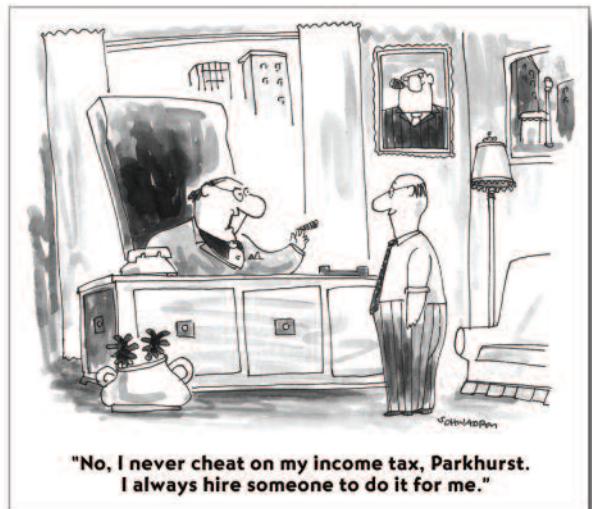
## THE LAWS OF THE LAND

The Constitution promises to promote the general welfare of the American people. But how do you balance the “wants” of individuals with the “needs” of everyone around them? What if this girl wants to drive her car too fast? States, including Virginia, use their power to enact laws to keep us safe. Obviously crime is against the law, but observing speed limits, wearing seatbelts and bike helmets, and not tossing trash on the street also help all of us to live safely.

## Four Duties OF A U.S. CITIZEN

1. Obeying the law
2. Paying taxes
3. Serving on a jury/as a witness
4. Serving in the armed forces if called

Citizens who do not fulfill these important duties face legal consequences.



Cheaters never win. What point of view does this cartoon represent?



The American court system protects us all. Not only does it punish criminals, it also protects the welfare of people who cannot take care of themselves, and prevents abuses. There are two ways you might one day help during a trial.

### **"I CALL THE NEXT WITNESS"**

If you see a crime being committed or an accident taking place, you might be called to testify in court. That means that you will tell the judge or jury what you saw. But first, you will raise your right hand and swear to tell the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth. Lying in court is a very serious crime that can lead to jail time.

## **Order in the Court**

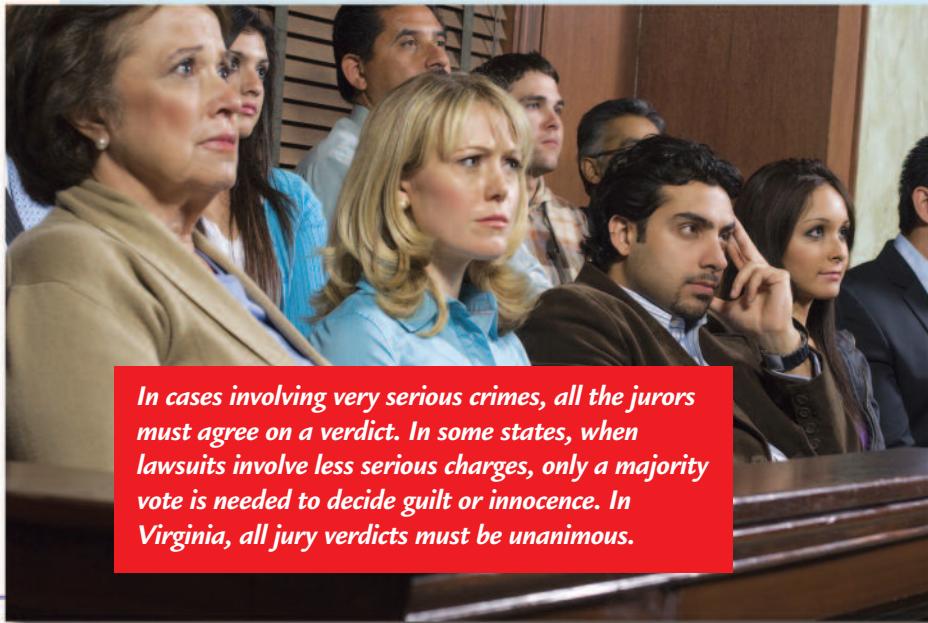
**YOU AND THE LAW**

### **JURY DUTY**

When you are an adult, you will probably be called to serve on a jury. You will join a group of other people and sit through a trial listening to witnesses and experts. It will then be up to you to decide if the accused is guilty or not guilty and, sometimes, what the penalty should be for his or her crime.

### **THE LEGAL CONSEQUENCES**

The right to have a fair and speedy trial is one of our most important rights, and being a juror or a witness is an essential civic duty. Sometimes jury duty can take weeks or months, but fulfilling your obligations to your country keeps the system working and protects our precious rights and freedoms.



*In cases involving very serious crimes, all the jurors must agree on a verdict. In some states, when lawsuits involve less serious charges, only a majority vote is needed to decide guilt or innocence. In Virginia, all jury verdicts must be unanimous.*

*For government to be effective,  
citizens must fulfill their civic duties.*

*We owe a special debt  
of gratitude to the  
women and men who  
serve, and have served,  
in our armed forces.*



# Serving Our Nation

We live in a time of relative peace, although the news might not seem that way. During past global wars, military service was required for all qualified men. Today we have an all-volunteer U.S. Armed Forces, made up of the Air Force, Army, Navy, and Marine Corps. The mission of our armed forces? Keeping us safe at home while trying to make America's foreign policy decisions a reality.

The National Guard and Coast Guard do the same thing, most often here in the United States. Helping our country through military service is a great way for young people to gain advanced technical skills, help pay for a college education, travel the world, and share in a proud tradition of service to the nation.

What if our nation were to find itself unable to get enough volunteers to serve? If you are called for military service, you are required by law to do it.

## THE NAVY

- *They say: Life, Liberty, and the Pursuit of All Who Threaten It.*

The U.S. Navy is tasked with the enormous job of keeping the world's oceans safe for travel and trade. It does this mostly at sea, but often in the air and on land, too. Aircraft carriers, submarines, battleships—all keep us safe.

## THE AIR FORCE

- *They say: Aim High Fly—Fight—Win.*

Keeping the skies safe is the job of the USAF—the nation's source of air and space power. At the helm of fast-flying jets and helicopters, or the control panels of satellite systems, these high flyers soar through the clouds to protect us all.



## THE ARMY

- *They say: There's Strong. And Then There's Army Strong.*

When it comes to major operations on land, the U.S. Army is in control. Our army is tasked with this: move into a place, secure it, then create order, stability, and safety before leaving. Army forces also help to protect U.S. properties throughout the world.



## ON THE HOME FRONT

### THE NATIONAL GUARD

Hurricanes, floods, tornadoes—the National Guard's main task is to protect us here on American soil, although recently the men and women of the Guard have also served overseas. Each state has its own Guard, and it is the only branch of the military whose existence is mandated by the Constitution.



### THE COAST GUARD

Known for spectacular rescues in storm-tossed waters, the Coast Guard's main mission is to keep domestic waterways safe. Besides rescue missions, the Coast Guard is tasked with law enforcement and drug-smuggling prevention on offshore U.S. waters. They also serve overseas in combat.



### THE MARINES

- *They say: The Few. The Proud. The Marines.*

*Semper Fi*—“always faithful.” Marines have been called the world’s fiercest warriors. They are our rapid-reaction force, trained on both sea and land. They are often the first “boots on the ground.”





*A basic responsibility of citizenship is to contribute to the common good.*

# Make Your Voice Heard

*People have risked their lives for the privilege of voting, and yet over 20 percent of Americans eligible to vote have never even registered.*

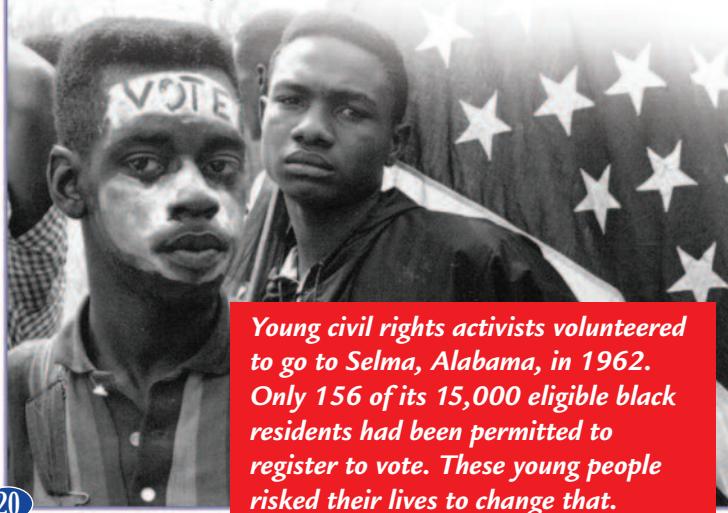
## AN AMERICAN CIVIC TRAGEDY

There are certain responsibilities that come with citizenship. Unlike civic duties—those things we MUST do—civic responsibilities are voluntary and fulfilled by choice. Voting is one of those important choices—a very precious right. So why *wouldn't* you want to get involved? The first step is simple. If you are an American citizen, you can register to vote the moment you turn 18. Do it!

## GO BEYOND THE VOTING BOOTH

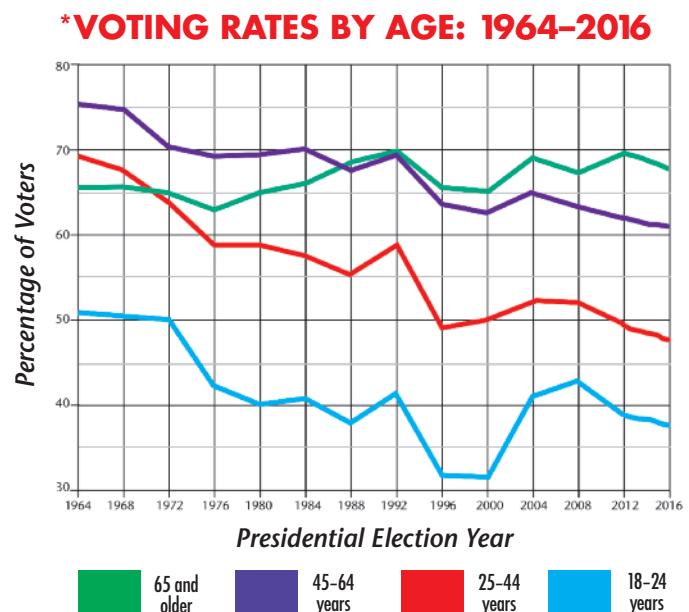
"Do I look like a politician to you?" So asks Ritchie Torres, the youngest member of the New York City Council. "I'm a 25-year-old college dropout who grew up in public housing...I'm Afro-Latino. I hardly have the characteristics people associate with a politician, but here I am." Torres is proof that you are not too young to get involved in government. Participate in political campaigns. You can hand out campaign literature at the local mall or help place signs around town. Age does not matter. Passion does.

Do you remember your right of petition? Communicate with government officials. Rally your neighbors to influence government actions. Stay informed about current issues, but always respect others' right to different opinions. Once you are 18 you can also make big contributions by serving in voluntary, appointed government positions, such as the Peace Corps, which sends people to parts of the world in dire need. Serving as a volunteer is a privilege as well as a responsibility.



**Young civil rights activists volunteered to go to Selma, Alabama, in 1962. Only 156 of its 15,000 eligible black residents had been permitted to register to vote. These young people risked their lives to change that.**

*"Democracy must be something more than two wolves and a sheep voting on what to have for dinner."* —JAMES BOVARD



## Analyze This!

Which age group's voting frequency increased over the years? Which group's voting declined the most? Which group always seems to vote the least? How might you get people who seldom or never vote to go to the polls? Create a VOTE campaign!

# Voting in America

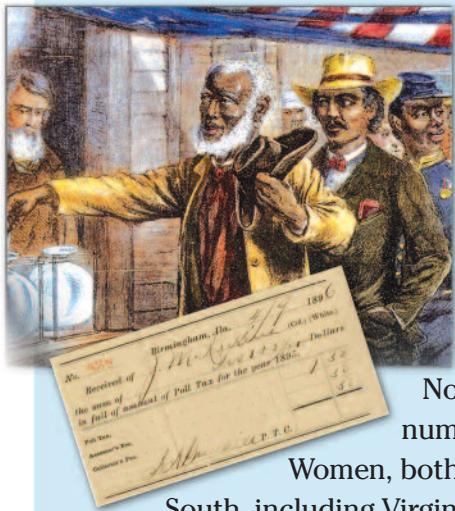
## THE WAYS IT CHANGED

### COLONIAL AMERICA

In most places, only Christian, white, male landowners could participate in politics.

### 1788–1867

The Constitution left it up to the states to determine who could vote. In the first half of the nineteenth century, state after state began permitting men who did not own land to vote. Immigrant men could vote if they became citizens, sometimes even before.



### 1868: THE 14TH AMENDMENT

The Civil Rights Act of 1866 said that all African Americans were citizens, but that did not mean they could vote. While black men had been able to vote in some Northern states for years, they could not in the South. To rejoin the Union, Congress required that former Confederate states had to ratify the 13th and 14th Amendments.

### 1870: THE 15TH AMENDMENT, POLL TAXES, AND LITERACY TESTS

Now that no state could prevent men from voting because of race, great numbers of black men began to vote, run for office, and win elections.

Women, both black and white, still could not vote. Before long, many states in the South, including Virginia, contrived ways to reduce the black vote. They demanded the payment of expensive poll taxes or gave tests with questions that were impossible to answer.

### 1879: AMERICAN INDIANS

American Indians were finally recognized as “persons” in the eyes of the U.S. government, but it would be many more years until they could vote.

### 1920: THE 19TH AMENDMENT

All women, white and black, in every state, finally could vote. Still, in states where black men faced voter suppression, black women had similar obstacles.



### 1965: THE VOTING RIGHTS ACT

With states controlling voting policy, discrimination at the polls continued. Events such as “Bloody Sunday” in Selma, Alabama, persuaded President Lyndon Johnson to propose a Voting Rights Act. It provided federal supervision of voter registration and abolished unfair literacy tests. These efforts, plus voter registration drives and rallies, tripled the number of black voters by 1968.



### 2013: THE SUPREME COURT CHANGES THE VOTING RIGHTS ACT

Some provisions of the Voting Rights Act were struck down when the court, in a close vote, let 15 states (mostly in the South) change their election laws without federal approval. Eight did. Still, the U.S. Department of Justice *can* sue states to protect a citizen’s right to vote in federal elections.

*A democratic society requires the active participation of its citizens.*

# The Good We Can Do

*You live in a land of great opportunities and freedoms. You have amazing rights and privileges. Now you can make life even better by giving back to your community.*



*This young animal lover works at a local shelter with dogs that have been abandoned.*

## WHAT CAN YOU DO?

Look around you. Is there trash on the roadside? Does an elderly neighbor's house need a fresh coat of paint? Are there kids across town who have no books or toys? There are hundreds of ways for citizens to show their concern for the welfare of the community as a whole—from the environment, to public health and safety, to education. How can you decide what to do? Begin by thinking about what you love.



*Alex Ostberg began volunteering with Post 53—a student-run EMS organization in Connecticut—when he was a high school freshman. About 70 students share ambulance shifts and respond to everything from broken bones to drug overdoses.*

## FIND YOUR PASSION AND PUT IT TO WORK

Are you a sports fan? One sports lover organized an equipment exchange. Outgrown cleats and shin guards, old ice skates, baseball gloves—all found new homes. Are you a whiz with computers? One student offered computer classes at a local senior center, helping older folks who were not comfortable with electronics. Do you want to raise money to help a worthy cause? Organize an auction or yard sale. Many smaller communities have volunteer fire departments that welcome teens. All of these volunteer opportunities build community pride and bring neighbors together!

## SUPPORT AN IMPORTANT FORCE FOR DEMOCRACY

- Check out organizations like the League of Women Voters.

It's not just for women! The league does not endorse candidates of either political party, but it does explore lots of important issues facing our nation—from climate change to gun control. It also operates one of the largest and longest-running non-partisan voter registration efforts in the nation.



## CREATE A HEALTHIER PLANET

- Think about the welfare and public safety of your entire community.

Look into working with environmental organizations, such as the Chesapeake Bay Foundation, to protect the watershed. Volunteer with the Nature Conservancy to plant new trees. It's all about helping to make a healthier, better, safer life for your community.



## 3 Ways to Volunteer

RIGHT HERE IN VIRGINIA

### ROLL UP YOUR SLEEVES

- Help make your community a great place to work and live.

There are dozens of public service organizations to choose from. You might help build a new house for a needy family with Habitat for Humanity.

Clumsy with a hammer? Try tutoring youngsters or reading to a visually impaired person at a local nursing home. Ask around. Maybe your public library or officials at a local park can use your help!

# Chapter 1 Review

*Use pages 10–11 to answer questions 1–2 in complete sentences.*

1. To become a citizen through naturalization, what six things must a person be able to demonstrate?
2. Immigration and naturalization have led to an increasingly diverse society. What examples of this do you see in your own school and greater local community?

*Use pages 14–15 to answer questions 3–6.*

3. Copy and complete the chart about the First Amendment freedoms by listing each freedom, writing an example of each one, and drawing a symbol to help you remember each one.

First Amendment Freedom	Example	Illustration/Symbol

4. In what ways are our First Amendment freedoms limited? For each of the five freedoms, list an example of something you CANNOT do.
5. The Fourteenth Amendment defines citizenship. Explain the amendment in your own words.
6. Explain how the Fifth and Fourteenth Amendments outline due process.

*Use pages 16–21 to answer questions 7–9.*

7. What is the difference between a civic duty and a civic responsibility?
8. Explain why citizens must fulfill their duty of paying taxes for the government to be effective.
9. Sort the following actions into two categories (Duty or Responsibility) and record them:

**Keep informed regarding current events** • Communicate with government officials  
Serve in the armed forces if called • Register and vote  
Obey laws • Serve on a jury if summoned  
Pay taxes • Participate in political campaigns  
Serve as a witness in court if called  
Serve in voluntary, appointed government positions  
• Respect others' rights to an equal voice in government • Hold elective office

*Use pages 22–23 to answer question 10 in complete sentences.*

10. In a democratic society, it is important to give back to your community. What are some ways you can participate in community service?

# Apply Your Learning

## 1. Civic responsibilities are fulfilled by choice; they are voluntary.

Which civic responsibility do you believe is the most important? Think about the following criteria before making your decision:

- How much time does it take?
- How much of an impact does it have?
- Does it affect a lot of people or just a few?

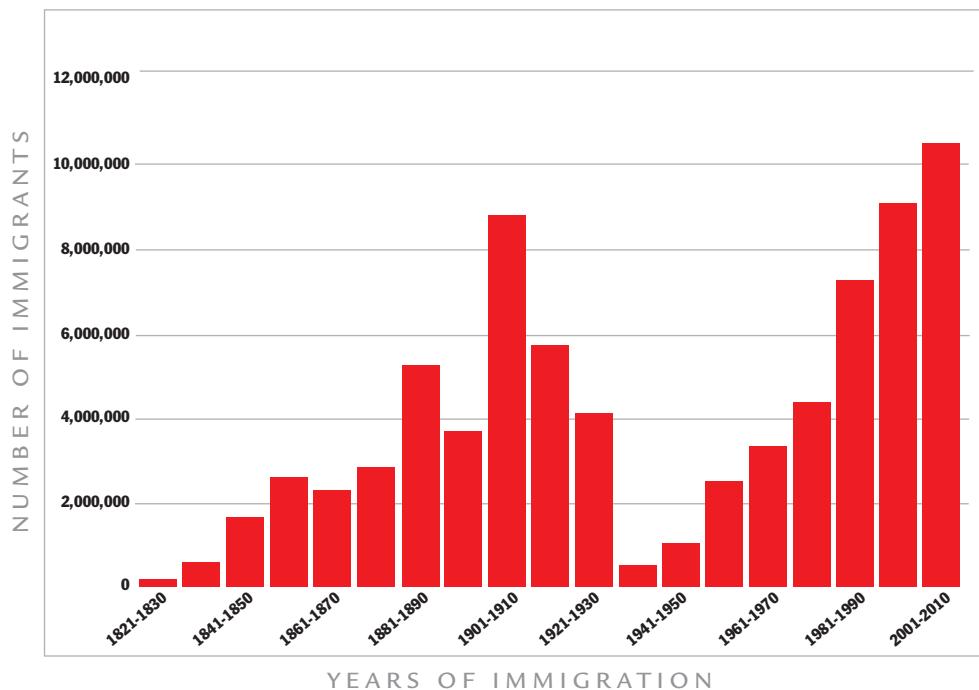
Write a paragraph to explain and justify your decision.

## 2. Immigration is a major issue with which our government must contend.

Analyze the information in the graph below from the U.S. Census Bureau to identify trends.

Then use a variety of materials and sources to conclude which international events and immigration laws were in place to account for these trends.

**IMMIGRATION INTO THE UNITED STATES, 1820–2010**



Write a newspaper article explaining the change in immigration over time based on your research and analysis. In your article, predict what type of changes could occur in the United States based on the current level of immigration.

## Imagine...

- Imagine you are an immigrant who has just become naturalized as a United States citizen after many years.

Create a small poster that illustrates which constitutional rights you are most excited to enjoy as a United States citizen.

THE HARD JOB OF FREEDOM

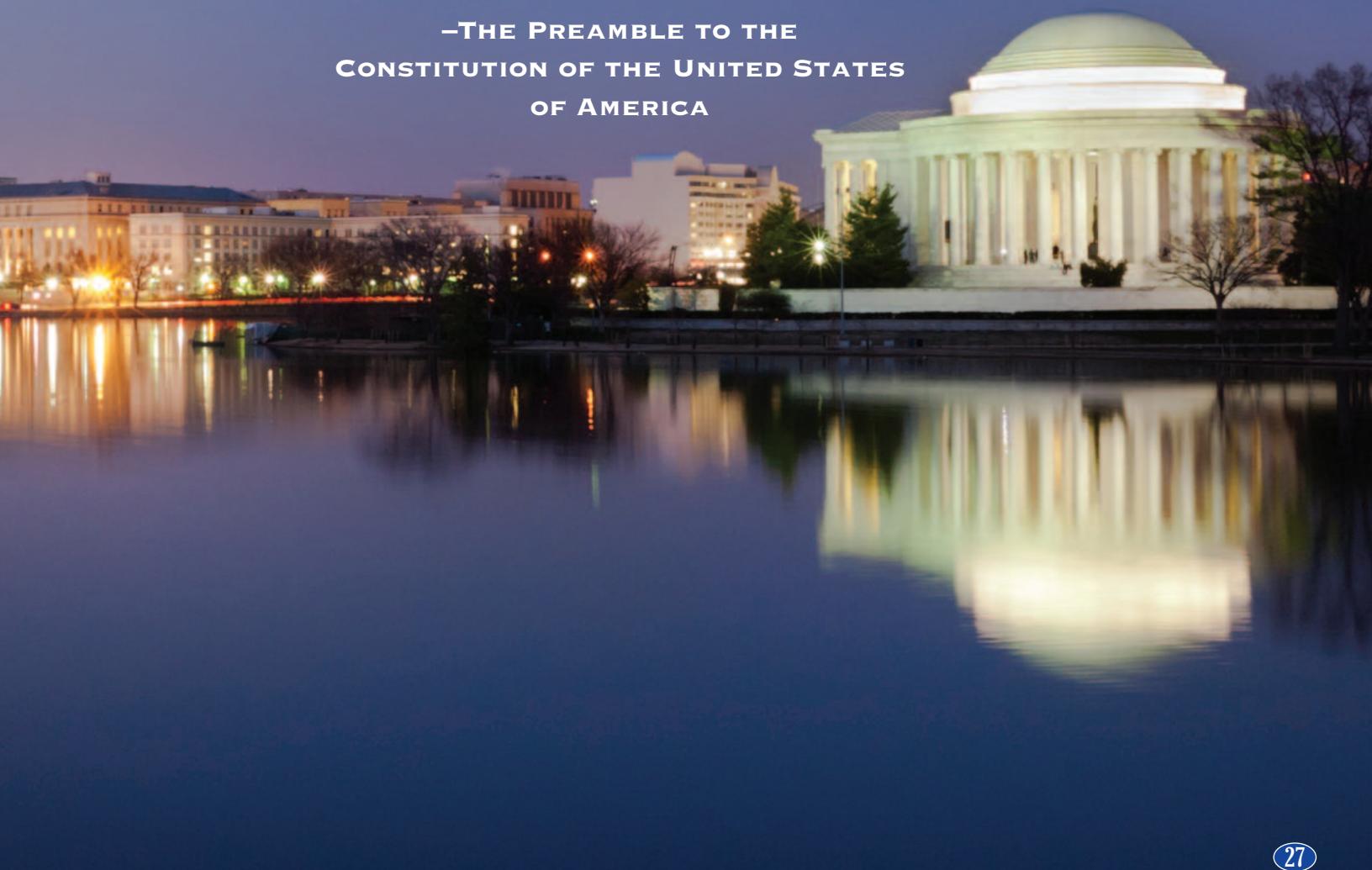
# THE WORDS WE LIVE BY



*The Washington Monument and Jefferson Memorial flank the government office buildings of Washington, D.C., where major decisions about how best to run our country are made.*

*"We the People of the United States,  
in Order to form a more perfect Union,  
establish Justice, insure domestic Tranquility,  
provide for the common defence,  
promote the general Welfare,  
and secure the Blessings of Liberty to ourselves  
and our Posterity, do ordain and establish  
this Constitution for the  
United States of America."*

**-THE PREAMBLE TO THE  
CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES  
OF AMERICA**



*Fundamental political principles define and shape American constitutional government.*

*American constitutional government is founded on concepts articulated in earlier documents.*

*In ancient Greece, Athenian men gathered to vote by a show of hands.*



# The Birth of Democracy

*By looking to the past, America learned valuable lessons about how best to build a nation.*

## GREECE AND ROME: VOICES OF THE PEOPLE

All-powerful kings and queens. Domineering emperors. Rulers with absolute control. That was the way most places were governed in the past. There were two notable exceptions. In ancient Greece in the 5th century B.C.E., free men ruled. Voters would gather in one place, and by a show of hands, make their wishes known. This is called a **direct democracy**. The system works only by physically assembling a large group at the same time, then counting their votes with a show of hands. But how can this respond to the needs of hundreds of thousands spread afar?

The leaders of the ancient Roman empire had an idea. They created a **republic**—a government in which citizens elect representatives to speak on their behalf—rather than having *every* citizen trying to govern. The Roman Republic created a senate, where senators, chosen by rich and powerful men, governed. They also formed an assembly, mostly composed of citizen-soldiers who dealt with local affairs, and chose two consuls, who ruled jointly as chief executives for a year.

A senate. An assembly.

A chief executive. A panel of high-level judges. It all sounds very familiar, but it had flaws. There HAD to be a better way.

*In this modern film re-creation, the Roman Senate has gathered to hear a senator speak. The Roman Senate had 300 members, each chosen by wealthy aristocrats, and was prone to corruption.*



## Word to Know

► **republic** (ree-pub-lick)  
A government led by elected representatives rather than by a king or queen

## MAGNA CARTA: ACTION IN THE FACE OF TYRANNY

For 16 years the people of England put up with King John's rule—his abuse of power and threats of bloody violence. Certainly a peasant would never have dared protest the king's actions, but a group of wealthy aristocrats finally had enough of the king's tyranny.

In 1215 they wrote a document and called it **Magna Carta**, which in Latin means "Great Charter." It presented a list of complaints and, for the first time, set forth the principle that everyone, including the king, was subject to the law. It gave Englishmen basic rights and freedoms. Two statements made it special.

The first said: **No freeman can be imprisoned, have land seized, be outlawed or banished "except by the lawful judgment of his peers or by the law of the land."**

The second said: "**To no one will we sell, to no one will we deny or delay, right or justice.**"

Many centuries later, these promises—a trial by jury, and the right to a speedy trial without needing to bribe someone—served as an inspiration for the Americans yearning to throw off the inequities of yet another British king, George III. It means that we, the citizens of the U.S., give authority to the government in exchange for the protection of our rights.

### A MORE PERFECT UNION

America's founders wanted a democracy. Power *had* to stay with the people. They studied the way the Roman Republic had been structured and settled on a **representative system of government**. People would elect officeholders to make laws and run the nation for them. In the days leading up to the American Revolution, the colonists also looked to the Magna Carta to justify their actions. All of these ideas were woven into the laws of the first states and, later, into the Constitution and Bill of Rights.



*Sign it, or else! A humiliated King John angrily signs the Magna Carta.*

## More Big Ideas

### OUR FUNDAMENTAL POLITICAL PRINCIPLES

#### CONSENT OF THE GOVERNED

What does that mean? Simple! **We the people** give authority to the government in exchange for the protection of our rights. Since all of the government's power comes from us, we have the power to change the government.

#### LIMITED GOVERNMENT

There are places in the world where the government controls every aspect of life, from how their citizens dress to the way they pray. Our country is not like that. Our leaders make some laws to protect us, but they are not all-powerful. They may only pass a law if the Constitution gives them the authority to do so.

#### RULE OF LAW

We cannot break the law, but citizens have a duty to protest unjust laws in a peaceful, nonviolent manner. Our government and elected representatives must also obey the laws of the land.

American constitutional government is founded on concepts articulated in earlier documents.

King James I



*"All and every Persons, being our subjects...shall have and enjoy all Liberties, Franchises, and Immunities, within any of our other Dominions, to all Intents and Purposes, as if they had been abiding and born, within this our Realm of England, or any other of our said Dominions."*

*James the first by the grace of God  
King of great Britayne ~  
Fraunce, Ireland and the  
adiacent Iſlāndes ~  
Defender of the  
Faith, &c.*

Replicas of the first colonists' ships sail toward Jamestown.



*These important documents, all linked to Virginia, helped set the stage for a new birth of freedom.*

## Virginia's Link to Independence

Imagine you are on one of these three ships. You have just crossed a storm-tossed ocean and spent months at sea. You do not know what perils await, and your heart is pounding. You are about to be part of a bold experiment—to become a colonist—thanks to the Virginia Company of London. But what will your life be like when you wade onto the shores of this strange new land?

### THE CHARTERS OF THE VIRGINIA COMPANY OF LONDON

- *Guaranteed the rights of Englishmen to Virginia's first colonists.*

How do you start a government where there is none? The Virginia Company of London financed the first permanent English settlement in the Americas, established in 1607. They named it Jamestown in honor of the king. These charters set an important precedent for later colonies by guaranteeing that settlers would have the same rights and liberties as Englishmen in England.

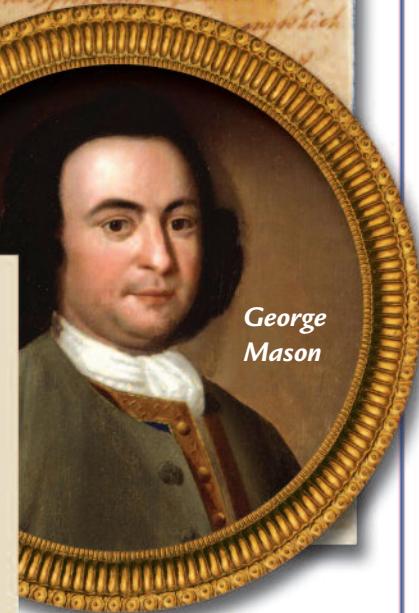
## THE VIRGINIA DECLARATION OF RIGHTS

- The model for the Bill of Rights—a key part of the Constitution of the United States of America

This amazing document was drafted by George Mason in May of 1776 in an effort to protect colonial Virginians. It was the first to press for the rights of the individual—even the right to rebel against “inadequate” government. Thomas Jefferson drew heavily from this document when he wrote America’s Declaration of Independence a few weeks later.

*“All men are by nature equally free and independent, and have certain inherent rights...namely, the Enjoyment of Life and Liberty, with the Means of acquiring and possessing Property, and obtaining Happiness and Safety.”*

*Geo. Mason.*

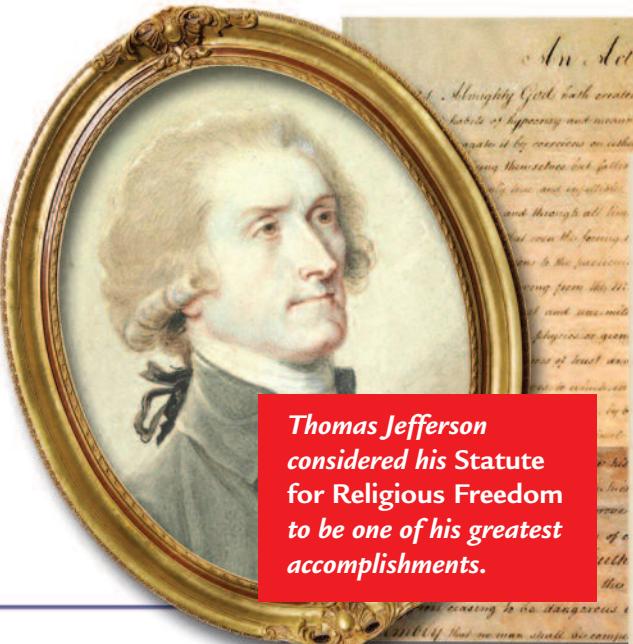


George Mason

## THE VIRGINIA STATUTE FOR RELIGIOUS FREEDOM

- Stated freedom of religious beliefs and opinions

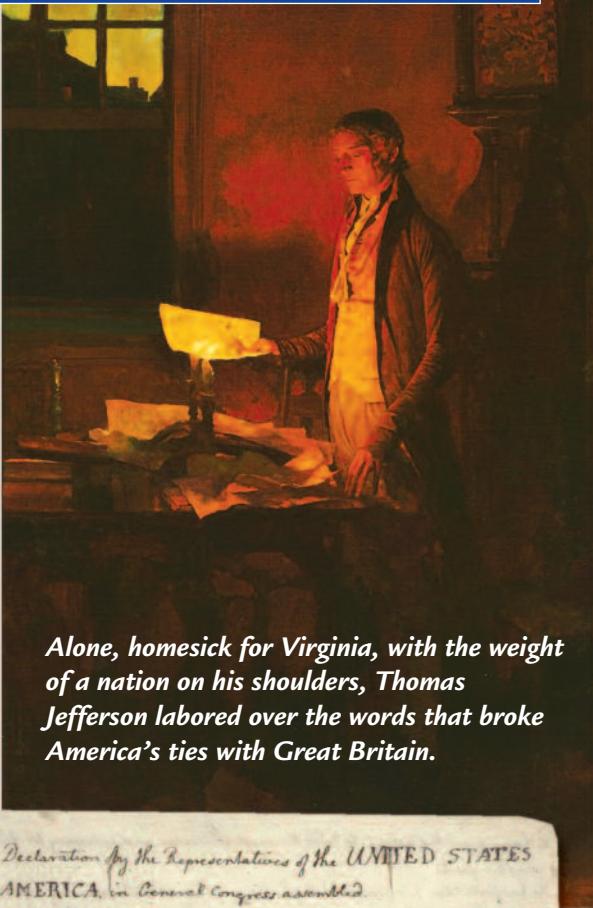
Thomas Jefferson was a brilliant thinker. He believed that a free person should have the right to decide how to worship, so he set pen to paper and wrote a document that broke Virginia’s ties with the established church, formerly the Church of England. In 1786 this new statute became a law that guaranteed freedom of religion to people of all faiths. Jefferson’s brave new idea set the stage for a new form of government—the separation of church and state—one that had never existed before in recorded history.



*“The rights [to religious freedom] are of the natural rights of mankind, and ... if any act shall hereafter be passed to repeal [an act granting those rights] or to narrow its operation, such act will be an infringement of natural right.”*

*W. Jefferson*

American constitutional government is founded on concepts articulated in earlier documents.



Alone, homesick for Virginia, with the weight of a nation on his shoulders, Thomas Jefferson labored over the words that broke America's ties with Great Britain.

# The Pursuit of Happiness

*"We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal, that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable Rights, that among these are Life, Liberty and the pursuit of Happiness. That to secure these rights, Governments are instituted among Men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed, that whenever any Form of Government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the Right of the People to alter or to abolish it, and to institute new Government..."*

## "WHEN IN THE COURSE OF HUMAN EVENTS..."

So begins the **Declaration of Independence**, one of the world's most powerful documents. The Revolutionary War had been raging for over a year when Thomas Jefferson sat down at a desk in a stuffy room in a rented house in Philadelphia and dipped his pen in ink.

## AS WAR RAGED...

There was no need for a declaration of war against Great Britain in the summer of 1776. It was *way* too late for that. What *was* needed was the very drastic step of severing America's strong ties with its motherland. Jefferson, a gifted writer, had been asked to draft a document that would declare the colonists' independence from Great Britain. He poured his heart out into his rough drafts, listing all the colonists' grievances against the king, one by one. But this declaration was going to be more than just a list of complaints. It was a call for a new world order.

IN CONGRESS, JULY 4, 1776.

## The unanimous Declaration of the thirteen united States of America,

When in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to -  
-govern among the powers of the earth, has equal and equal station to which the Laws of Nature and of Nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they  
should declare the causes which impel them to the separation. We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal. That they are endowed by their Creator  
with certain unalienable Rights, that among these are Life, Liberty, and the pursuit of Happiness — That to secure these rights, Governments are instituted among Men, deriving their just  
powers from the consent of the governed. — That whenever any Form of Government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the Right of the People to alter or to abolish it, and to institute new  
Government, laying its foundation on such principles and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their Safety and Happiness. Prudence, indeed,  
will dictate that Governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes; and accordingly all experience hath shewn, that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while  
evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by availing the power to which they are intrusted. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same Object  
render a淳ous to suppose that peaceful Appeals do longer deserve a candid consideration, and to provide new guards for their future security — Such has  
ever been the fate of free nations, who would not submit to such a state of things. — And whereas we are now engaged in a great Revolution, and must therefore, sooner or later, determine whether  
we are to be a free and independent nation, or whether we are to be slaves to Great Britain, or to be held in dependence by her. We must therefore, either submit to these oppres-  
sions, or, with a firm reliance on the protection of divine Providence, assume our Station among the Powers of the Earth. — We, therefore, the Representatives of the United  
States of America, in General Assembly, do, in Parchment, Seal, and Surety, sign and publish, to the world, the following Declaration:

### ALL PEOPLE ARE CREATED EQUAL

Inspired by the many books he had read and the ideas of fellow Virginian George Mason, especially the **Virginia Declaration of Rights**, Jefferson spent two-and-a-half weeks writing. He crossed out words and rewrote sentences, to establish the idea that we are all “created equal.” Finally, he felt he was ready to share his work. The feisty and outspoken John Adams and the wise and witty Ben Franklin made a few small suggestions to make it stronger. The Declaration was done! On June 28, 1776 the three men presented the draft to the Continental Congress.

### LET FREEDOM RING

Congress made changes to Jefferson’s draft, cutting about one-quarter of it. They deleted a paragraph that condemned slavery. Congress also added, **“That these United Colonies are, and of Right ought to be Free and Independent States.”** On July 4th delegates from twelve colonies voted for the Declaration, but it was only the beginning. A long, hard struggle lay ahead.

### Word to Know

#### ► **inalienable** (in-ah-ee-in-uh-bull)

The modern word is inalienable, whereas the Founders used unalienable. Both mean the same thing: a right that cannot be taken away from a person.

Jefferson stated 28 grievances against the king and then added:

*In every stage of these Oppressions  
We have Petitioned for Redress in  
the most humble terms: Our repeated  
Petitions have been answered only by  
repeated injury. A Prince whose  
character is thus marked by every act  
which may define a Tyrant, is unfit  
to be the ruler of a free people."*

Risking possible treason charges, Jefferson ended the declaration by writing:

*And for the support of this  
Declaration, with a firm reliance on  
the protection of divine Providence,  
we mutually pledge to each other  
our Lives, our Fortunes and our  
sacred Honor."*

America's ties with Great Britain were now officially severed.

American constitutional government is founded on concepts articulated in earlier documents.

# Rules for a New Country

*The Articles of Confederation established the first form of national government for the brand-new United States of America. Unfortunately, the plan had some very big flaws.*

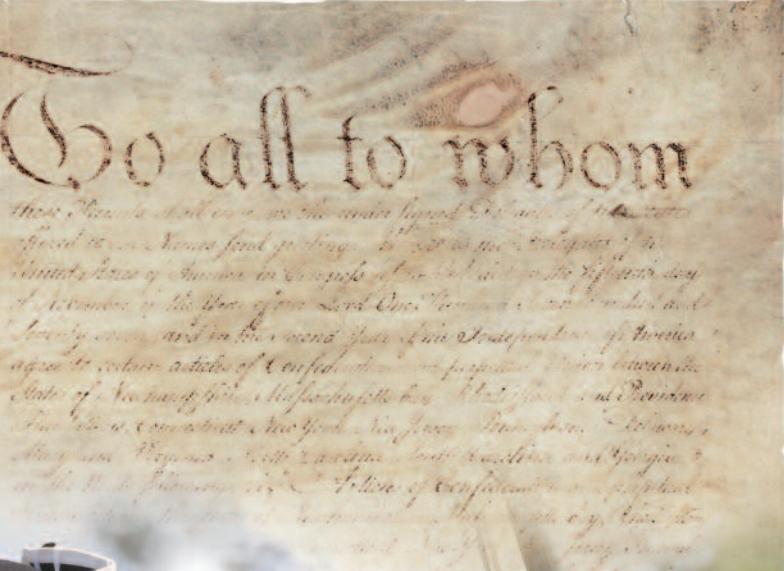
A few days after the signing of the Declaration of Independence, a committee appointed by the Continental Congress presented a plan for how our new country would work. For the next 14 months, as war raged on, the committee members argued over the details of an effective plan of government for the new nation. They called their plan the **Articles of Confederation**.

## A FEAR OF TOO MUCH POWER

The delegates were afraid to establish a central authority. After all, they had just gotten rid of their king! They rejected the idea of the states forming a republic. How would elected representatives stay in touch with the people they represented? Impossible! Instead, they gave power to the states. Each state would remain independent. We were basically thirteen “countries” that came together only if there were major disputes.

## WHAT COULD CONGRESS DO?

Not much! Congress could make treaties and alliances with other countries and open diplomatic relations with Europe. It could deal with territorial disputes and handle the increasingly fragile relationships with the Indian nations. The central government could not collect taxes and, as a result, had no way to pay for anything. Congress had no ability to enforce laws and no power to stop the states from restricting trade.



*History lovers gather to re-create the Revolutionary War's great battles.*

*What were the immediate causes and effects of the war?*



## DOOMED TO FAIL

Even getting all the states to agree to the plan was difficult. It took over three years to come up with a document that everyone would sign. In 1781 the Articles were finally approved. Two years later, the **Treaty of Paris** officially ended the American Revolution. The former colonies had stood together, united in war. Now could they stay united in peace?

# 5 Reasons for Failure

## A PLAN TOO WEAK TO WORK

### 1. A WEAK NATIONAL GOVERNMENT

None of the states wanted to lose control of their own interests. Very few laws applied to all the states, and the national government had no easy way to enforce those laws.

### 2. A WEAK CONGRESS

Congress could not collect taxes, so it had no money to do anything. The states were acting like individual nations, not a unified national economy. The best Congress could do was ask each state to chip in for its expenses.

### THE BREAKING POINT

Alexander Hamilton and James Madison, along with representatives from five states, had doubts about the new government and said so. In late August of 1786, a revolt by farmers in Massachusetts who had fallen into debt due to rising taxes, made the shortcomings of the Articles clear. In February 1787, Congress met to revise the Articles of Confederation. That meeting would lead to the creation of a brilliant new document—the **Constitution of the United States**.



*British troops, carrying a white flag of surrender, petition George Washington for a cease-fire, ending the War of Independence.*

### 3. NO NATIONAL CURRENCY

Since there was no U.S. dollar, different kinds of money were used. British and Spanish money were widely accepted, and the individual states even had the ability to issue their own currency. It was very confusing.

### 4. ONE STATE, ONE VOTE

Large states with many people, such as Virginia and New York, and tiny states with small populations, like Rhode Island, had the same say in government.

### 5. NO EXECUTIVE OR JUDICIAL BRANCHES

Who would make sure national laws were being followed? There was no executive branch and no high court to interpret and apply the laws.



*News of Shays' Rebellion, in 1786, frightened many American citizens.*

*The preamble of a constitution sets forth the goals and purposes to be served by the government.*

# We the People: A Preamble

*With these three small, yet powerful words, a new set of rules for the United States came to exist. It promised us “consent of the governed.” That meant that the power of government comes from us.*

In the minds of many Americans, the Articles of Confederation had proved inadequate. Something had to be done. James Madison, a brilliant Virginian, had some very definite ideas about how an ideal government might work. Madison was a slight man who, some said, weighed about 100 pounds soaking wet, but when it came to intelligence, he was a giant. Madison believed that a stronger central government was the solution, so he became a driving force behind the **Constitutional Convention of 1787**.

## BEGIN AT THE BEGINNING

Madison thought long and hard about what this new constitution should say. What were the most important things that needed to be achieved? There were all sorts of difficult details to work out. How would elections be held? How long would representatives serve? What if the president died in office? But before he got into the nuts and bolts of how it all would work, he wrote a **preamble** and came up with five important things he believed a government must offer its citizens.



## Word to Know

► **preamble** (pree-am-bull)

An introduction to a document that explains why it is being written and what its aims are

*“We the People of the United States, in Order to form a more perfect Union, establish Justice, insure domestic Tranquility, provide for the common defence, promote the general Welfare, and secure the Blessings of Liberty to ourselves and our Posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.”*

**More than 200 years after the Constitution of the United States was written, our federal government is still in a state of change. Our nation is still evolving!**



# Preamble Promises

## SIX JOBS OF THE UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT

### 2. TO ENSURE DOMESTIC TRANQUILITY



- *We all deserve to live in peace.*

Local and state police can, and do, protect us, but Congress can halt criminal activity across state lines. National law enforcement agencies, such as the FBI, do this job.

### 4. TO PROMOTE THE GENERAL WELFARE

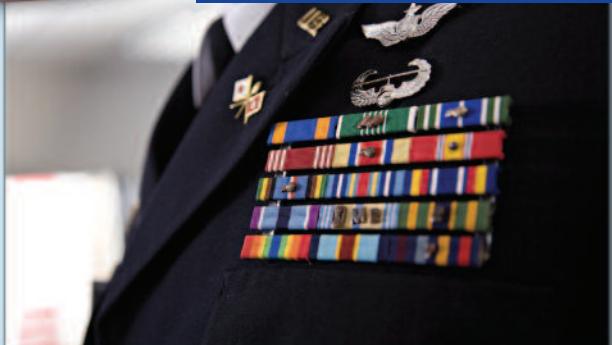
- *Tax money is put to many uses*

From a strong military to building bridges, tax dollars also go to provide a better quality of life for all Americans. These days that includes things like Social Security for older folks and Medicaid for people who cannot afford doctors. Tax dollars also support research scientists and educational programs to help lift people out of poverty.

### 1. TO ESTABLISH JUSTICE

The Bill of Rights protected citizens from the federal government violating their rights. It did not prevent states from violating a citizen's right. It would take the 14th Amendment and the U.S. Supreme Court to extend Bill of Rights protections to the states.

### 3. TO PROVIDE FOR THE COMMON DEFENSE



- *Who will defend our borders?*

When the Revolution ended, the United States had no armed forces to defend itself. The new Constitution established a military, but always under the control of elected leaders.

### 5. TO SECURE THE BLESSINGS OF LIBERTY

- *Liberty brings us the freedom to live as we choose.*

The **Bill of Rights**, ten additions to the Constitution, guarantee important freedoms, as long as we obey the laws and respect others. We have the right to vote and select people to represent us. By using the power of the vote, we can take power away from our leaders.



### 6. TO FORM A MORE PERFECT UNION

- *The hard work of governing can never stop.*

# The Constitution

*Think of this extraordinary document as the sturdy foundation of a huge building—an “owner’s manual” for the running of a new nation.*

Have you ever started a project that seemed so enormous that you thought it would never get done? To the framers of the Constitution of the United States, the task that lay ahead must have seemed almost impossible. The story of the creation of the Constitution is a tale of perseverance, determination, and—especially—compromise. Their goal was to establish a new structure of national government, to determine what powers it would have, and how they would be carried out. But there had never been a country like ours before, so the task was especially daunting.

*Every one of the 4,400 words in the Constitution was discussed, debated, and repeatedly made better.*



*“The happy Union of these States is a wonder; their Constitution a miracle; their example the hope of Liberty throughout the world.”*

*James Madison*

## MUST-HAVES!

The framers hoped to create a document that honored individual worth and the dignity of all people. They also wanted to protect the fundamental freedoms of religion, speech, press, assembly, and petition. They did not instantly achieve those goals, and the horrors of slavery continued for many years after. But today the Constitution—together with its amendments, and many U.S. Supreme Court decisions—promotes equality under the law for *all*, regardless of race, ethnicity, or gender.

## A THREE-PART SYSTEM

Having just broken ties with Britain and its king, all the delegates were afraid of too much power in the hands of one group, so Madison and his fellow delegates proposed three branches of government that would work together. To avoid abuses of power, each branch would have some control over the power of the others.

The final document had a preamble that explained what the job of government was supposed to be. It then had seven “articles” that defined how the government would work. Next came the explanation of how to make it happen.



# The Legislative Branch

## CONGRESS: THE SENATE AND HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES

*Article I-This part of the Constitution talks about:*

- How Congress will make laws
- The division into a Senate and House of Representatives
- Rules for election of members
- Some of the powers of Congress
- The limits of its powers



# The Executive Branch

## THE PRESIDENT AND VICE PRESIDENT

*Article II-This part of the Constitution talks about:*

- The powers of the presidency and vice presidency to carry out or execute the laws
- How to conduct national elections
- Other powers of the president
- What to do if the president misbehaves



# The Judicial Branch

## THE U.S. SUPREME COURT AND THE LOWER FEDERAL COURTS

*Article III-This part of the Constitution talks about:*

- The duties and powers of the Supreme Court and whatever lower federal courts Congress might establish
- Punishing treason—and those who betray the country

## STILL MORE TO DO

There were many other details to work out. Article IV talks about rules for states to get along with other states, and offers a way for new states to join the Union. Article V tackles the ways the Constitution can be changed if the need arises. Together as a whole, the articles tried to anticipate everything anyone could think of. But of course, times—and people—change. The Constitution would have to change, too.

# Congress of the United States,

begun and held at the City of New York, on  
fourth of March, one thousand seven hundred and eighty-nine.

American constitutional government is founded on concepts articulated in earlier documents.

## The Bill of Rights

*Forty-two delegates helped shape the Constitution, but Edmund Randolph and George Mason of Virginia and Elbridge Gerry of Massachusetts refused to sign. Why?*

Liberty brings us the freedom to live as we choose as long as we follow and obey the laws of the land and respect the rights of others. But the Constitution did not say that, so Randolph, Mason, and Gerry urged an addition—a Bill of Rights.

In response, James Madison took pen to paper and made ten additions to the Constitution that guaranteed important personal freedoms and placed specific limits on the power of the government.

### 1. THE FIVE FREEDOMS

- Freedom of religion, speech, press, assembly, and petition.

The essential ingredients for a free society.



### 2. THE RIGHT TO BEAR ARMS



- “A well regulated Militia, being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear Arms, shall not be infringed.”

A “well-regulated militia” was the only “army” in the 1780s—the way a community protected itself hundreds of years ago. Having proper weapons for a militia to defend its citizens in case of an attack made tremendous sense.



### Room for Debate

The framers wrote the Bill of Rights at a time when there were no semi-automatic rifles or armor-piercing bullets. Do you think the Second Amendment should or should not protect these modern weapons? Why?

### 3. SOLDIERS IN YOUR HOME



- *Soldiers cannot take over your home or move in with you.*

During the Revolution, many colonists had their homes invaded by British soldiers who moved in and then asked what was for dinner.

### 6. A SPEEDY TRIAL

- *No wasting away in jail for years waiting for trial.*



The government must provide a lawyer if the accused cannot afford one.

The accused must also know who will testify in court.



### 9. THE RIGHTS OF THE PEOPLE

- *Some decisions belong to the individual.*

Government is not allowed to interfere with a person's right to engage in certain deeply personal decisions.

### 4. SEARCH AND SEIZURE

- *Your property cannot be searched without special permission issued by a judge.*

The police must usually obtain a warrant—a special piece of paper that gives them permission to enter your home. They also cannot remove anything without following strict laws.



### 7. A TRIAL BY JURY

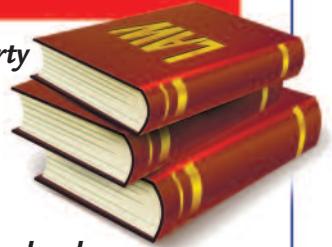
- *Criminal defendants will be judged by a jury of peers.*



A person who has been accused of a crime is, in almost all cases, entitled to a jury trial.

### 5. THE RIGHTS OF THE ACCUSED

- *Your property and freedom cannot be taken away without due process. Proper legal procedures must be followed.*

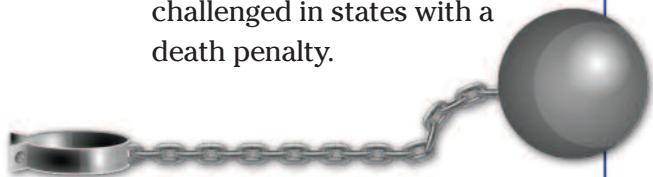


You also cannot be forced to be a witness against yourself. Sometimes people "plead the Fifth" by saying, "I will not answer on the grounds that it may incriminate me."

### 8. NO CRUEL PUNISHMENTS

- *Excessive bail or unreasonable fines, as well as physically abusive punishment, are unconstitutional.*

No stocks or pillories. No punishing physical labor. This is still a right that is being challenged in states with a death penalty.



### 10. THE RIGHTS OF THE STATE

- *The states also have the power to write laws for the state.*

The Constitution is only one part of government.



*The Constitutions of Virginia and the United States can be amended through processes outlined in the Constitutions.*

*The Virginia and United States Constitutions have been amended and revised several times.*

## Words to Know

### ► **ratification**

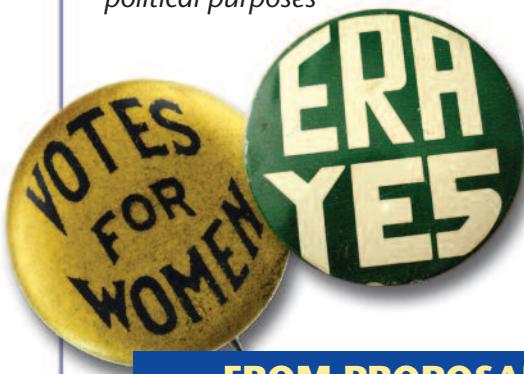
(Rat-uh-fick-kay-shun)

*The formal consent or approval of something*

### ► **convention**

(Cun-ven-shun)

*A gathering of people for political purposes*



# A More Perfect Union

*Things change. Life changes. The Constitution has had to change, too.*

The U.S. Constitution is a fairly short document written more than 230 years ago, but our country is a collection of living, breathing, human beings whose needs, desires, and lives keep changing. James Madison and his co-writers could not have envisioned our modern world, but they knew the Constitution had to change sometimes if it was to survive the test of time.

## THE AMENDMENT PROCESS: MAKING THE CONSTITUTION FIT THE TIMES

Some amendment struggles, such as the ones that dealt with the aftermath of slavery, have been bitter and hard-fought. Some, like the battle for equal rights for women, did not succeed. Some changes were fairly easy to make. But every change to the Constitution has a story to go with it.

The amendment process is complicated. There have been only 27 changes in the more than two centuries of the document's existence. There are two ways to make a change. Congress may send proposed amendments to the states, or states may vote to call a constitutional convention. **Ratification**—the approval of three-quarters of the states—is needed for amendments to become laws.

### FROM PROPOSAL...

### ...TO RATIFICATION

- If two-thirds of both houses of Congress want an amendment...



- If at least 34 states (two-thirds of all states) request a national convention...



- An amendment becomes law if at least 38 states (three-quarters of all states) vote to ratify it.



- An amendment becomes law if at least 38 states ratify it at state conventions.



## SEVENTEEN AMENDMENTS THAT CHANGED THE U.S. CONSTITUTION

**11th** Protects states from being sued by out-of-staters.

**12th** Clarifies the election of the president.

*Until this amendment, the person with the most votes became president and the runner-up was vice president, but in 1800 there was a tie.*

**13th** Abolishes slavery.



**14th** Defines who a citizen is and guarantees all residents equal protection under the law.

**15th** Prohibits the denial of a man's right to vote based on race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

**16th** Authorizes an income tax.

**17th** Provides for the direct election of U.S. senators by popular vote.

**18th** Prohibits the sale of alcohol.

**19th** Gives women the vote.

**20th** Changes the date the president starts serving a term.

*The fight for women's right to vote was an epic struggle.*



**21st** Repeals the 18th Amendment. *The only time an amendment has been revoked.*

**22nd** Limits the number of times a person can be president. *Added after FDR was elected to four terms. He died soon after his fourth term began.*

**23rd** The District of Columbia is now a part of the Electoral College.

**24th** Prohibits poll taxes. *This stopped states from discrimination in federal elections.*

**25th** If the president cannot serve...

*After one president had a heart attack in office and another had to resign, this dealt with replacing a vice president and dealing with presidential disabilities.*



**26th** Lowers the voting age.

*In respect for the service of so many young people in the armed forces, the voting age was lowered from 21 to 18.*

**27th** Keeps congressional salaries from going up until after the next election. *It's not fair to give yourself a raise without letting the voters decide.*

## Changes in Virginia

### OUR STATE'S CONSTITUTIONAL AMENDMENT PROCESS

- States also have constitutions. In Virginia, this is how we amend ours:

**First:** An amendment is proposed by Virginia's General Assembly or by a **constitutional convention**. If approved by a majority, it sits until the next session following a general election to the House of Delegates. If, in that next session, the proposed amendment is agreed to by a majority, it then goes to the state's voters.

**Second:** If a majority of Virginia's voters ratify it, the amendment becomes part of the state's constitution.



*DEMOCRACY  
IN  
ACTION:  
A CLOSER LOOK*



## "AM I NOT A MAN AND A BROTHER?"

### THE 13TH, 14TH, 15TH, AND 24TH AMENDMENTS

After the Civil War, new amendments to the Constitution brought slavery to an end, established citizenship for African Americans, and told states they could not use race to keep black men from voting.

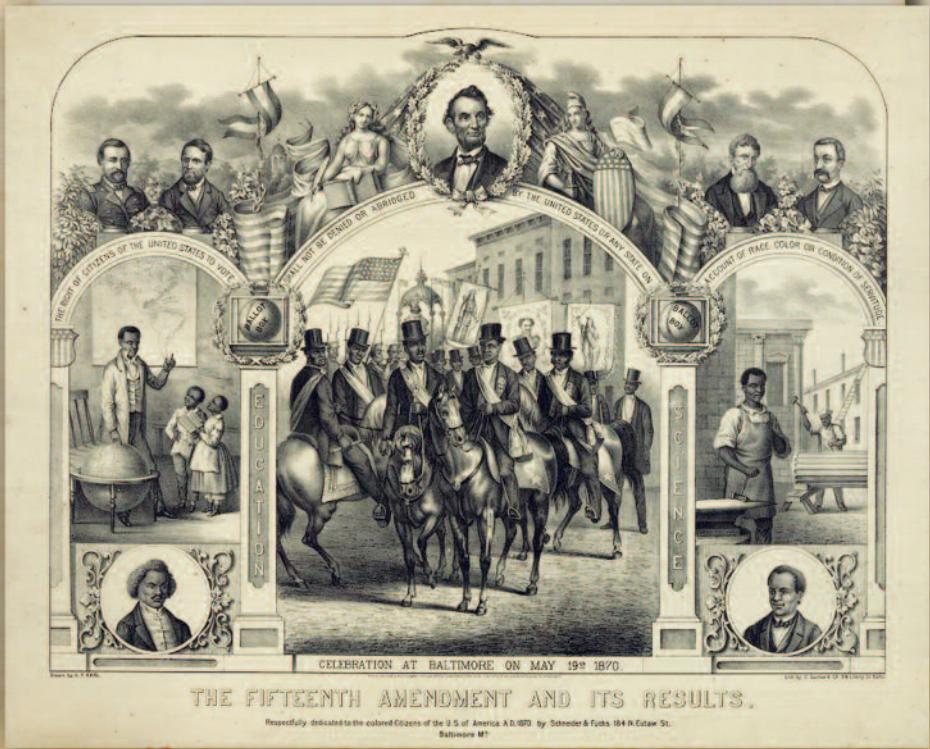
The Thirteenth Amendment ended slavery. The Fourteenth declared that anyone born in the United States was a citizen, and it spoke of the rights that former slaves *must* have. When the states found ways to subvert the Fourteenth Amendment, Congress tried again.

The Fifteenth Amendment promised the right to vote to *all* men, regardless of race. African Americans could now vote in huge numbers. They ran for political office and built schools and universities, but by the end of the 1870s, some states passed laws denying black men the right to vote. Not until 1965, and the passage of the *Voting Rights Act*, did African Americans in southern states reacquire the right to vote, as unfair poll taxes (large sums of money that had to be paid in order to cast a ballot) were abolished by the Twenty-fourth Amendment.

*Silenced voices  
struggled to be heard.*

*Native  
Americans  
were not  
considered  
citizens until  
1924 and,  
even then,  
were unable  
to vote in  
many states.*

*Women in many states had to  
wait until 1920 to vote in  
national elections.*

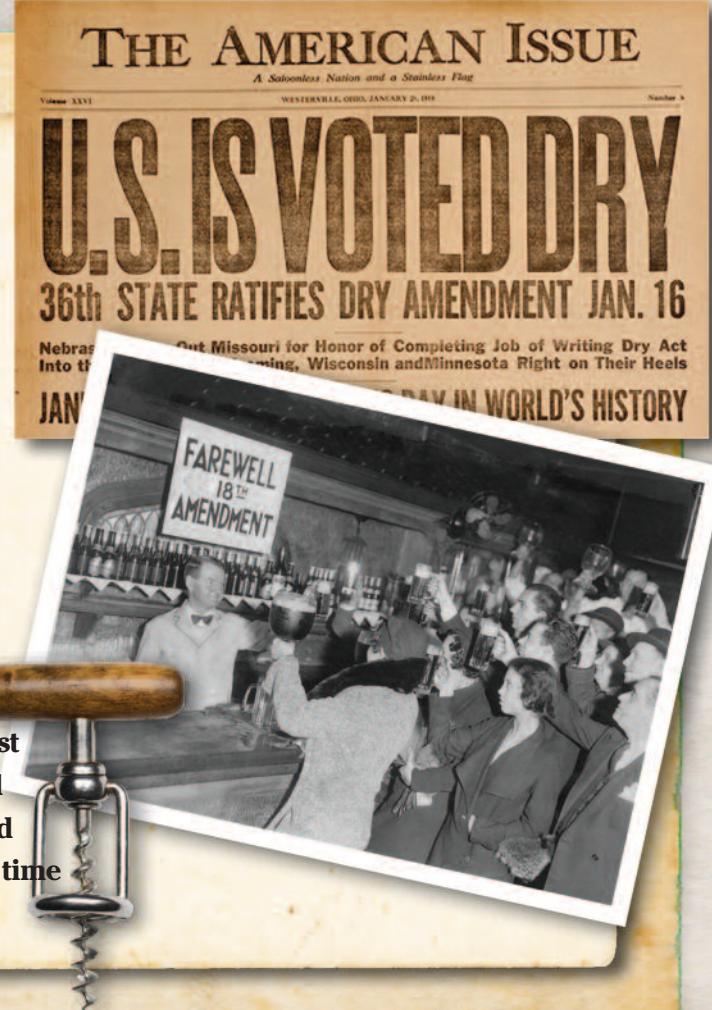


## DID WE MAKE A MISTAKE?

### THE 18TH AND 21ST AMENDMENTS

The subject of alcohol consumption might not seem all that important, compared to human injustices, but in America in the late 1800s, public drunkenness was being called “a national curse” by many religious groups that demanded a solution.

In 1919 Congress proposed the Eighteenth Amendment, which prohibited the making, transportation, and sale of intoxicating drinks. Instead of solving the problem, crime increased and the law was widely ignored. The Twenty-first Amendment, proposed by Congress in 1933 and quickly ratified, ended Prohibition and returned the regulation of alcohol to the states—the only time an amendment has ever been undone.



EQUAL RIGHTS AMENDMENT  
SIMPLE JUSTICE...  
LONG OVERDUE



## ARE MEN AND WOMEN EQUAL?

### THE 19TH AMENDMENT AND A FAILURE FOR THE ERA

Earning the right to vote in 1920 was a huge achievement for America’s women.

Fifty years later there were still many inequalities, so the movement for an Equal Rights Amendment (ERA) began. The amendment passed in both the U.S. Senate and House of Representatives, and in March 1972 it was sent to the states for ratification. But soon scare tactics ran rampant. Ads said that women would have to use men’s bathrooms and

that they would be sent to the front lines in combat. It was alleged that the ERA would end a woman’s right to be supported by her husband.

Some groups were very much against the ERA, arguing that states would not be able to grant women any special protection. ERA supporters argued that *only* a constitutional amendment would ensure true and permanent equality for women all across America. While the debate raged on, the time limit for state ratification passed, and the amendment simply ran out of time.

# Chapter 2 Review

*Use pages 28–29 to answer questions 1–2.*

1. Why is a representative government more practical than the government of ancient Greece?
2. Copy and complete the chart.

Fundamental Principle of Government	Main Idea
1. DEMOCRACY	
2. REPRESENTATIVE GOVERNMENT	
3.	
4.	
5.	

*Use pages 30–31 to answer question 3 in complete sentences.*

3. Virginia greatly influenced the founding documents of the United States. Explain the impact each document outlined on pages 30–31 had on the U.S. Constitution.

*Use pages 34–35 to answer questions 4–5 in complete sentences.*

4. What circumstances led the delegates to create a government that had no central authority?
5. Explain the major problems under the Articles of Confederation.

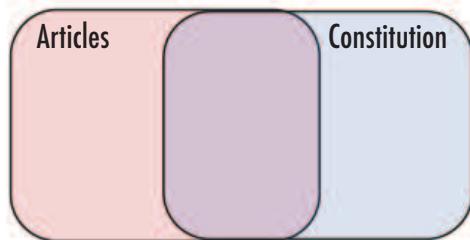
*Use pages 36–37 to answer question 6.*

6. Copy and complete the chart stating the purposes of the United States government as explained in the Preamble to the Constitution.

Purposes of the U.S. Government	Main Idea
ESTABLISH JUSTICE	CREATED A SYSTEM OF COURTS

*Use pages 34–35 and 38–39 to complete question 7.*

7. Copy and complete the Venn diagram comparing and contrasting the Articles of Confederation and the U.S. Constitution.



*Use pages 42–43 to answer questions 8 and 9 in complete sentences.*

8. Explain, in your own words, one way the U.S. Constitution can be amended.
9. Explain the amendment process of the Constitution of Virginia.

# Apply Your Learning

1. In the Declaration of Independence, the colonists stated their grievances against Great Britain and cited what they believed to be a more ideal form of government.

Copy and complete the chart below as you review the Declaration of Independence found on pages 196-198. When you find evidence of a fundamental principle, record it on your chart. Tally how often each political principle is found.

Fundamental Principle	Evidence	Frequency
Democracy		
Consent of the Governed		
Limited Government		
Rule of Law		
Representative Government		

When finished, create a graph to show how often each fundamental political principal appears in the document. Which one appears most often? Why do you believe the ideas of that fundamental principle appear more frequently than the others? Draw conclusions and make inferences about the significance of the political principle that appears most frequently.

2. The Constitution of the United States of America, including the Bill of Rights, affirmed the individual worth and dignity of people. The Bill of Rights initially only applied to actions by the federal government. Examine the Bill of Rights found on page 206.

Answer the following questions to analyze the source:

- Who wrote the source and when?
- Whose point of view does this document represent?

After analysis, select three rights. Using a variety of materials, locate news articles and examples in current events of how each right is implemented in our lives today. Display your selected rights and gathered research, along with a concluding paragraph explaining if the Bill of Rights is still applicable today. Remember to properly cite each source used on your display.

## Imagine...

Imagine that the Founding Fathers did not include a way for the Constitution to be amended. How would our country be different? Write a letter from your perspective to those Founding Fathers explaining why having a Constitution that can be changed is so important.

*“Never doubt that a small group of thoughtful, committed citizens can change the world. Indeed, it’s the only thing that ever has.”*

—MARGARET MEAD

Anthropologist

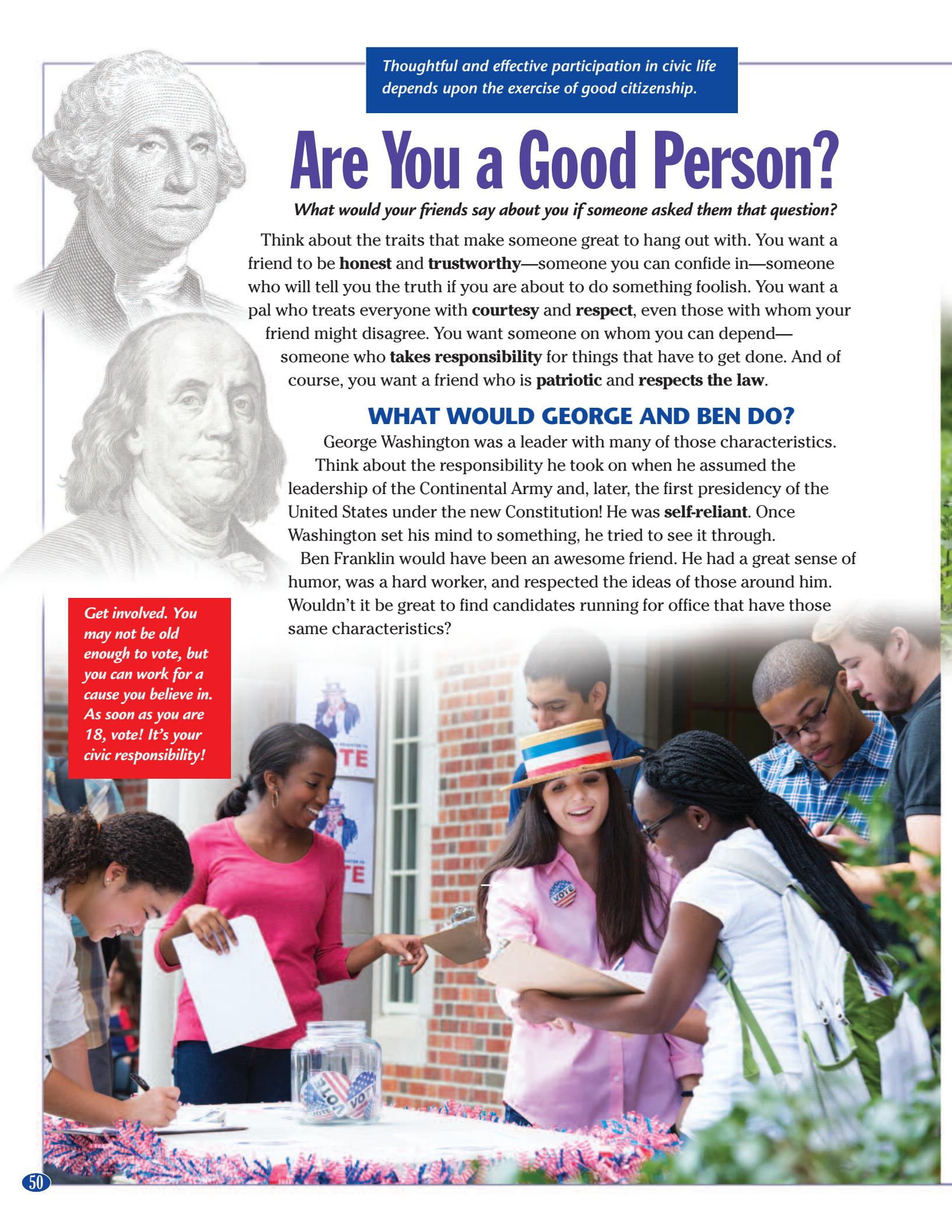
# A VOTE FOR DEMOCRACY

MAKING  
YOUR VOICE HEARD



A collage of political campaign buttons and an American flag. The buttons include a large red one with white stars and the word 'VOTE' in black, a blue one with white stars and the word 'VOTE' in white, and a red one with white stars and the words 'INDEPENDENT VOTER' in white. There are also smaller buttons with the letters 'F' and 'REPUBLICAN'. An American flag is visible in the background.

*Republican, Democrat, Independent —  
no matter your political leanings, get  
out and vote!*



*Thoughtful and effective participation in civic life depends upon the exercise of good citizenship.*

# Are You a Good Person?

*What would your friends say about you if someone asked them that question?*

Think about the traits that make someone great to hang out with. You want a friend to be **honest** and **trustworthy**—someone you can confide in—someone who will tell you the truth if you are about to do something foolish. You want a pal who treats everyone with **courtesy** and **respect**, even those with whom your friend might disagree. You want someone on whom you can depend—someone who **takes responsibility** for things that have to get done. And of course, you want a friend who is **patriotic** and **respects the law**.

## WHAT WOULD GEORGE AND BEN DO?

George Washington was a leader with many of those characteristics.

Think about the responsibility he took on when he assumed the leadership of the Continental Army and, later, the first presidency of the United States under the new Constitution! He was **self-reliant**. Once Washington set his mind to something, he tried to see it through.

Ben Franklin would have been an awesome friend. He had a great sense of humor, was a hard worker, and respected the ideas of those around him. Wouldn't it be great to find candidates running for office that have those same characteristics?

**Get involved. You may not be old enough to vote, but you can work for a cause you believe in. As soon as you are 18, vote! It's your civic responsibility!**





## I CAN FIX THAT!

Do you have some ideas about ways to make your school or community a better place? One student was determined

to turn a run-down lot into a great community garden. She began by asking a lot of basic questions. "How do I go about doing something like this? Who can offer advice?" She gathered information from a variety of sources, such as her town hall and neighbors in the area. She spoke to local businesses and visited a nearby plant nursery.

When she felt she was well-prepared, she went to a local town council meeting and proposed her idea along

with a step-by-step plan to make it happen. She even wrote a budget for what it would cost. With the support of people in the neighborhood and a careful plan, complete with projected costs, she convinced the town's representatives to green-light her idea. Today, the community garden is a popular gathering place and a source of neighborhood pride—not to mention luscious tomatoes.

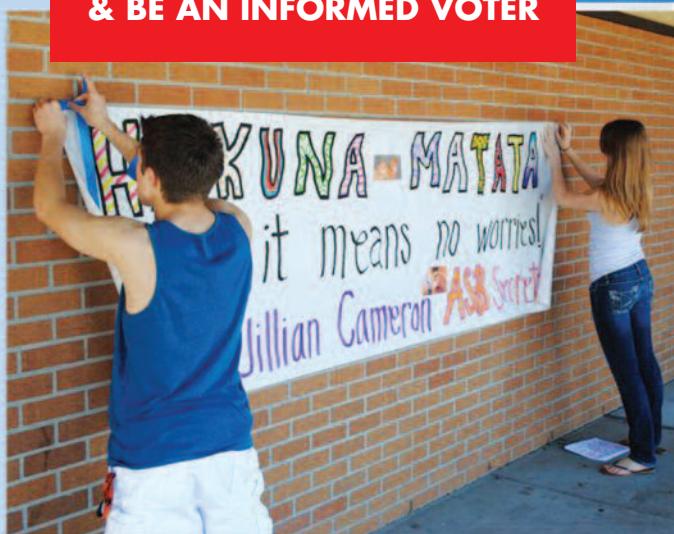
Civics in action!

*• Running for class officer or student council is a wonderful way to flex your civics muscles, but there is more to getting elected than just being popular or putting up clever posters. Try these:*

1. Learn more about your school and some of the challenges it faces. Go to a PTA meeting. Interview some teachers or the principal. Think of ways to contribute.
2. Get to know as many classmates as possible, but always be yourself. Don't be fake!
3. Ask friends to help. Have pals help hang posters that share your ideas, or hand out fun, little reminders, like popcorn balls or fortune cookies, with your name on them.

## It's Fun to Run

**PARTICIPATE IN ELECTIONS & BE AN INFORMED VOTER**



*Whatever happens, have fun and learn from the experience!*

*Political parties play a key role in government and provide opportunities for citizens to participate in the political process.*

*By the time a person runs for mayor or governor, senator, or president of the United States, he or she has already put in a lot of hard work.*

# How to Get Elected

Are the grown-ups in your life Democrats or Republicans? Perhaps they are neither, and call themselves Independent. Do you have a political opinion? When it comes to choosing someone to represent you, the starting point is to figure out what ideas are important to you. People in both major parties love our country. Both want America to be a wonderful place in which to live, but they often disagree on how best to run it.

Democrats, Republicans, and Independents recruit and nominate candidates who will work to make their ideas reality. They support candidates who share their political beliefs—people who they believe are smart, hard-working, and trustworthy. Then they support them on the path to election.

## HOW POLITICS WORKS

Let's say you want to run for political office. How do you begin? Campaigns and elections are all about educating voters about the issues and letting them know about your candidacy. That involves a lot of time spent getting your face and your message before the **electorate**. They have something you need—votes. You must get on a **ballot**, either with help from a political party or by collecting a certain number of signatures from fellow citizens or fellow students. Your political party might help you with the money needed to get your message out. They will arrange meet-and-greets and introduce you to the press. You will shake hands, visit with senior citizens, factory workers, and go to dozens of picnics. You might even have to kiss a baby or two.

## IT TAKES MORE THAN ENTHUSIASM

Winning a national or statewide election involves a lot of money. In order to get their candidates elected, political parties must raise a lot of cash. There are some rules involved in how to do this, depending on whether it is a local, state, or national election. We do not want a candidate who is getting wads of cash from a contributor who might want favors in return.



*Some people work their way up from local politics to high office.*

## A LEVEL PLAYING FIELD

There is a lot at stake when we elect someone to represent us, so great care is taken to keep an eye on the actions of all our elected representatives. Political parties keep a close watch on the opposing side, making sure that no laws are broken and taking note of inappropriate comments.

Running for political office can be a bruising experience. Every word and action counts.

# The Road to the Presidency

## HOW FIVE PEOPLE GOT THERE

*There is no one path to the highest office in the land.*

### FRANKLIN D. ROOSEVELT

- State senator, governor, assistant secretary of the navy, a failed vice-presidential candidate

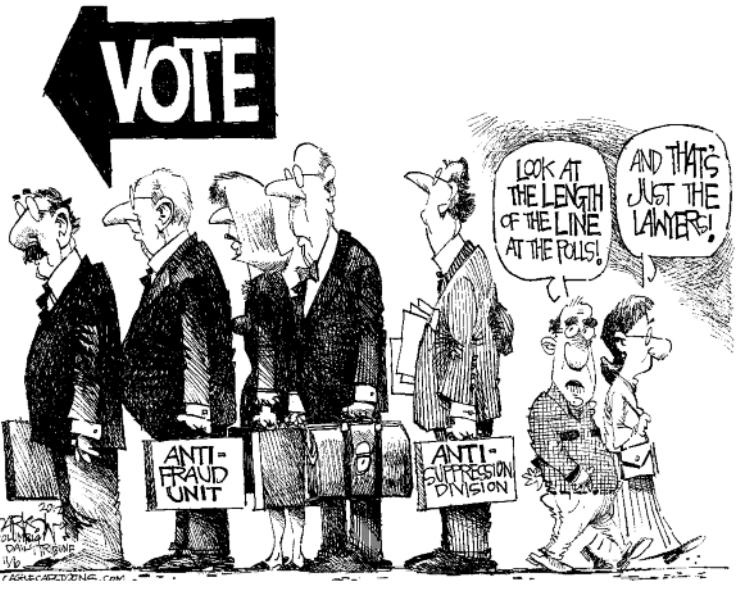
Roosevelt served as a New York State senator and then governor, but never held an elective office at the national level until winning the presidential race in 1932.



### RONALD REAGAN

- Radio sports announcer, movie star, governor

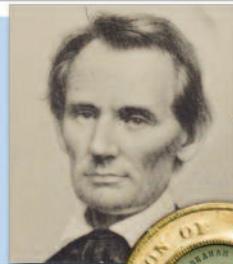
A famous Hollywood film star, Reagan went straight to the California governor's office and then on to the White House.



### ABRAHAM LINCOLN

- Shopkeeper, militia captain, lawyer, state legislator, U.S. congressman

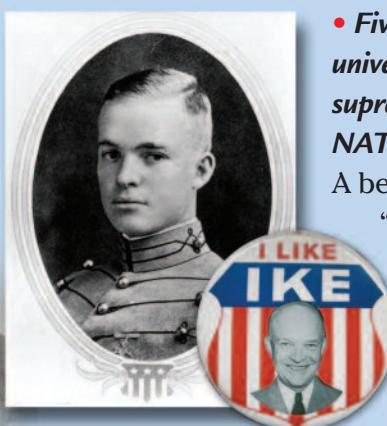
This extraordinary leader never had any formal schooling and held a variety of odd jobs before getting involved in local politics.



### DWIGHT EISENHOWER

- Five-star general, university president, supreme commander of NATO

A beloved war hero, "Ike" never held an elected public office before his run for the presidency.



### BARACK OBAMA

- Community organizer, law professor, state senator, U.S. senator

Our nation's first African American president started with a church youth group and served as a state representative and a U.S. senator.



A two-party system characterizes the American political process.

# Elephants and Donkeys



*Think about the last election. The candidates wanted very different things for the nation, but their political parties wanted exactly the same thing: to win and take office.*



## Words to Know

### ► **liberal**

(lib-ur-el)

*A person who believes that government action is the best way to achieve equal opportunity, protect civil rights, and help those in need*

### ► **conservative**

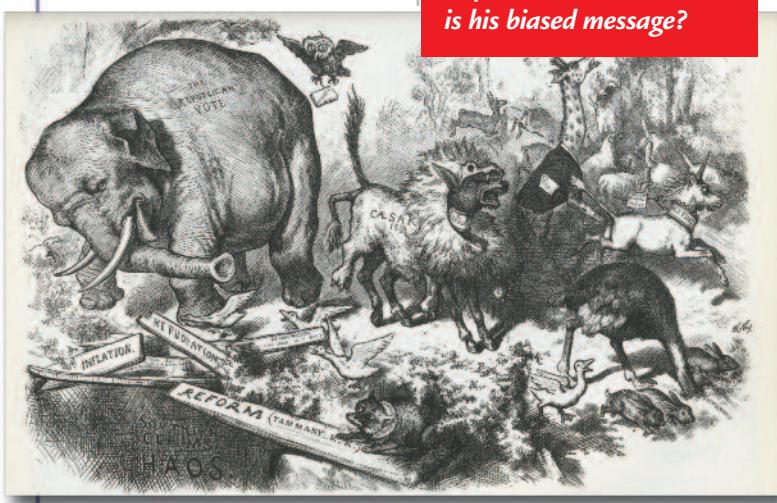
(cun-ser-vuh-tiv)

*A person who believes that limited government is best, with little oversight of businesses, plus strong support for traditional lifestyle choices*

The Republican and Democratic parties have a lot in common. Both parties seek peace and prosperity, but they define those goals differently, and they have different ways of achieving those goals. Both parties must organize to win elections. They both will take steps to influence public policy through speeches, meetings, and the media. Both parties try to appeal to *all* their supporters—to find a middle ground that will satisfy both **liberals** and **conservatives** in each party. We call this a **political spectrum**. Think of a seesaw. On the left side sit the liberals. On the right, the conservatives. Ideally the goal is to get the seesaw to balance by appealing to the center, which is not an easy task.

There are, of course, big differences between Democrats and Republicans. How can you find out what each party believes? Read the “mission statements” from their party platforms and compare their plans for America. Because they see America’s future in very different ways, conflict between the two parties can lead to some very real difficulties. The spirit of compromise can sometimes be in short supply.

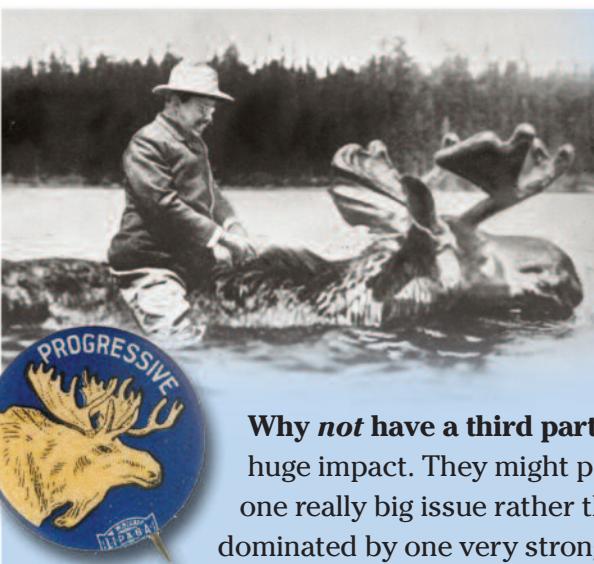
*Nast's first Republican elephant cartoon. What is his biased message?*



## THE POLITICAL ZOO

Why are Democrats “donkeys” and Republicans “elephants”? The first donkey made its appearance in 1828 when Democrat Andrew Jackson ran for president. His opponents called him a “jackass,” but instead of getting angry, Jackson pointed out that donkeys were very steadfast and determined.

In 1874, Thomas Nast, a brilliant political cartoonist, decided that the elephant—a big, powerful creature that tends to frighten easily—reminded him of the Republicans. Nast’s menagerie was a hit and the critters became enduring political symbols.



Although third parties rarely win elections, they can play an important role in public politics.

# Third Parties

## A FORCE FOR CHANGE

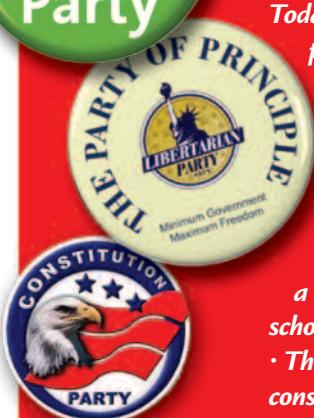
**Why not have a third party?** Third-party candidates rarely win but can have a huge impact. They might push for a new way of thinking, or they may focus on one really big issue rather than a whole slate of ideas. Third parties are often dominated by one very strong personality and that person *can* affect an election.

### THEODORE ROOSEVELT: THE BULL MOOSE PARTY

Teddy Roosevelt was a dynamo—a Harvard-educated, Wild West rancher turned war hero. He earned a reputation for honesty and fairness while governor of New York, and in 1900 was elected vice president under William McKinley. Ten months after the election, McKinley was felled by an assassin and Roosevelt became president. He took on big business and busted up big corporations that were gaining too much power. After winning re-election easily and serving a full term as president, he left politics behind for a life of adventure. A few years later, he decided he still had ideas for the nation. The Republicans and Democrats had their presidential candidates lined up for the 1912 election so Roosevelt, nicknamed “Bull Moose” for his swagger, ran on the Progressive Party ticket. Roosevelt got 27 percent of the popular vote. Because he split the Republican vote, Democrat Woodrow Wilson won with only 42 percent of the popular vote. Had Roosevelt not run, the Republicans would have easily won.

### ROSS PEROT: AFFECTING POLICY

Can Democrats or Republicans change their thinking? They can if they think it will win votes! Ross Perot, a billionaire businessman, was a third-party candidate who lost the presidential election but whose ideas were very sound. When he ran in 1992, he got 18.9 percent of the vote. When he ran again in 1996 he only got 8.4 percent because the major parties had adopted a lot of his ideas about dealing with the federal budget.



*Today, the Libertarian, Green, and Constitution parties are the biggest third parties in America.*

*These parties gained a lot more attention in the 2016 presidential election.*

- *The Green Party works for a peaceful, healthy planet and social justice.*
- *Libertarians believe in very little government. Their current platform calls for a repeal of the income tax and closing public schools to allow the private sector to run them.*
- *The Constitution Party reflects extremely conservative Christian views.*

### Room for Debate

*Third-party candidates are usually not invited to take part in the presidential debates, so they do not get the same chances to talk to the voters. Do you think this is fair? Why or why not?*



*Voters evaluate information presented in political campaigns to make informed choices among candidates.*

*The media play an important role in the political process.*

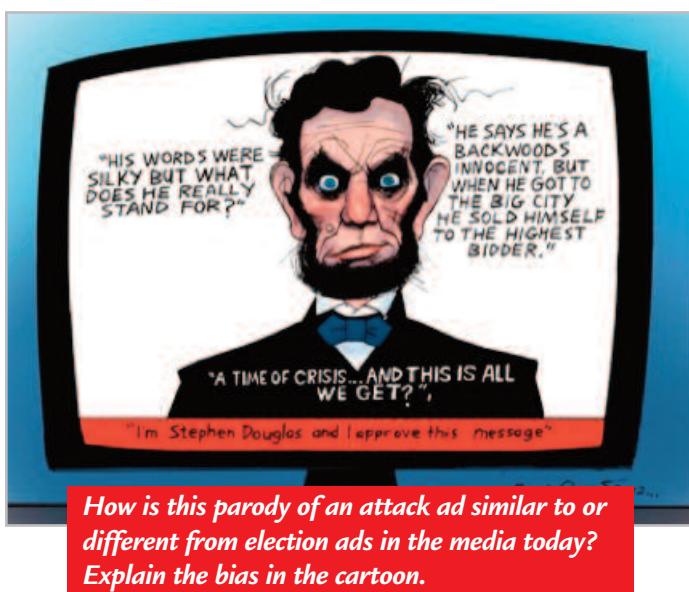
# On the Campaign Trail

*In the weeks leading up to a big election, the phones do not stop ringing. Facebook and Twitter go wild. A click of the TV remote turns up endless political ads. In a country with over 300 million people, how do you get your message across? How do you know what to believe?*

America's founders actually disliked the idea of a two-party system. Instead, they hoped to create a government in which ideas could be discussed without the interference of power-hungry factions. In 1780, John Adams wrote, "There is nothing which I dread so much as a division of the republic into two great parties, each arranged under its leader, and concerting measures in opposition to each other. This, in my humble apprehension, is to be dreaded as the greatest political evil under our Constitution." What would Adams think of our current campaign practices?

## IS IT A FACT OR AN OPINION?

Turn on a TV during campaign season and be prepared for endless 30-second ads filled with creepy music, spooky lighting, and a deep-voiced narrator warning of impending doom if you vote for the wrong person. How can you believe what you are seeing? How do you listen to a campaign speech, read a Twitter feed, or look at advertisements and know what is true and what is simply **propaganda**?



*"The idea that you can merchandise candidates for high office like breakfast cereal... I think is the ultimate indignity to the democratic process."*

**—ADLAI STEVENSON**, presidential candidate in 1952 and 1956

## Words to Know

► **propaganda**  
(prop-uh-gan-duh)

*Misleading information, used to promote a political cause or point of view*

► **bias**  
(buy-us)

*Being in favor of, or against, a person or group, in an unfair, one-sided way*

## YOUR JOB AS A VOTER

Candidate A says that Candidate B is a crook. Is he really? What source was cited for the information? Does that particular source have a **bias** toward the candidate? Who is actually paying for the ad? Check several sources, such as respected news agencies. Political advertising is an enormous business. Literally billions of dollars are spent trying to win each election cycle. Using freedom of speech as a shield, people can, and do, create ads that are misleading and sometimes full of outright lies.

The donors for more than half of the TV ads are not fully disclosed. Some of them are billionaires trying to get their candidate elected at any cost. So the next time an attack ad comes on the air, or you see a particularly nasty billboard, investigate who paid for it. Research that group. That is every voter's homework.

## MASS MEDIA AND OUR ELECTIONS

Each candidate has a core belief. Each candidate believes his or her way is the right way to do things. A candidate running for political office has to connect with the voters to get that message across. To do that, candidates depend on the media—newspapers, TV and radio stations, email, and now more and more, social networks like Twitter, Facebook, YouTube, and Instagram.

The media have a huge responsibility as well as a great deal of power. The media can emphasize selected issues and focus on certain candidates. They can publish **op-ed pieces**—articles that do not report facts, but, instead, offer a writer's personal opinions. They might run **editorials**—writings that reflect the opinion of the newspaper itself. Some newspapers and magazines feature **political cartoons** that make fun of the candidates while sharing razor-sharp observations.



## PARTISAN NEWS

These days some critics argue that several cable news networks strongly favor one particular political party. Make sure you understand who owns those TV stations. The owners' beliefs can often lead to bias in reporting of "news." It's your job to sort through all the conflicting reports and root out the truth.

## OUR CHANGING POLITICAL ADVERTISING

### FUNNY



◀ 1952: Eisenhower vs. Stevenson—*"I Like Ike"*

Cute cartoon characters prance across the screen as chirpy music plays.



### SCARY

► 1964: Johnson vs. Goldwater—*"Daisy Girl"*

A little girl plucks daisy petals, then a countdown ends with a nuclear bomb blast.



### OPTIMISTIC

◀ 1984: Reagan vs. Mondale—*"It's Morning in America Again"*

The sun rises on brides, firemen, farmers, and happy Americans.



### DISTORTED

► 2004: Bush vs. Kerry—*"Swift Boat Veterans"*

An attack ad called "one of the ugliest smears in modern U.S. politics."

## Room for Debate

Most European democracies, including England, France, Germany, and Switzerland, ban political advertising on TV. Is this a good idea or bad? Why?



*Running for political office  
can be very expensive.*



# The High Cost of Politics

*Want to run for office? On the local level, it's not impossible to be an unknown and get elected. But on the state or national level, the stakes are high and the costs even higher. You need money and lots of it!*



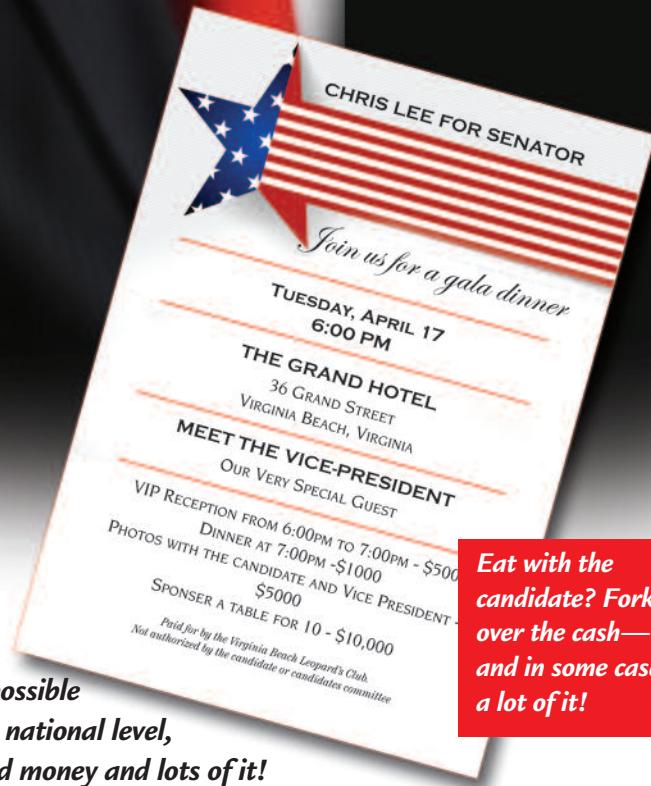
## THE PRICE OF VICTORY

From ordering pizzas for the volunteers who work for you to printing signs and placing ads on TV and getting to six cities in one day—every part of a political campaign comes with a big price tag. Candidates have to spend huge amounts of time raising funds. If they already hold a political office, or have another career, it means that they are doing two big jobs at once.

There is a big advantage for a candidate who can personally pay for all the items needed to create “buzz” without having to ask for donations. It is hard for someone with no money to get a foothold, because running for public office, especially at the national level, can cost millions of dollars. Congress has enacted laws to regulate spending in federal elections. States are responsible for regulating money in state and local elections.

## CAMPAIGNING FOR CASH

How do you share your political message with the public? You need help! You might need to hire people to run your campaign and manage your volunteers. You need someone to design a website and all your campaign literature. It cannot be done without money. So you attend fund-raising dinners (\$1,000 per dinner and up are not uncommon at the higher levels of politics). Does someone want a photo with you, the candidate? That's going to cost the person a lot more! The amount of money involved in getting elected at the state or national level is enormous.



***Eat with the candidate? Fork over the cash—and in some cases a lot of it!***

## WHERE'S THE MONEY?

The **FEC—Federal Election Commission**—monitors donations to candidates for federal offices, such as the president and U.S. Congress.

- **Individuals**

As of 2016 you can donate up to \$2,700 per election directly to a candidate.

- **Political Action Committees (PACs)**  
You can give \$5,000 a year to each PAC, which are often run by corporations, unions, and others.

- **527 Groups**

Very powerful! A 527 can raise unlimited funds from anyone. 527s must simply register with the IRS (the tax service) and file full financial disclosures.

# The PAC Problem

## POLITICAL ACTION COMMITTEES AND UNREGULATED SPENDING

- PACs are special-interest groups—private organizations, groups of individuals, businesses, and unions or trade groups—that raise and spend huge sums of money in the hopes of influencing an election.

The FEC monitors a PAC's spending, but it's easy enough to simply form new ones to get around the rules. TV, radio, and print campaign ads from PACs will clearly state who paid for the ad. Some of the nastiest political TV ads have been created by PACs.

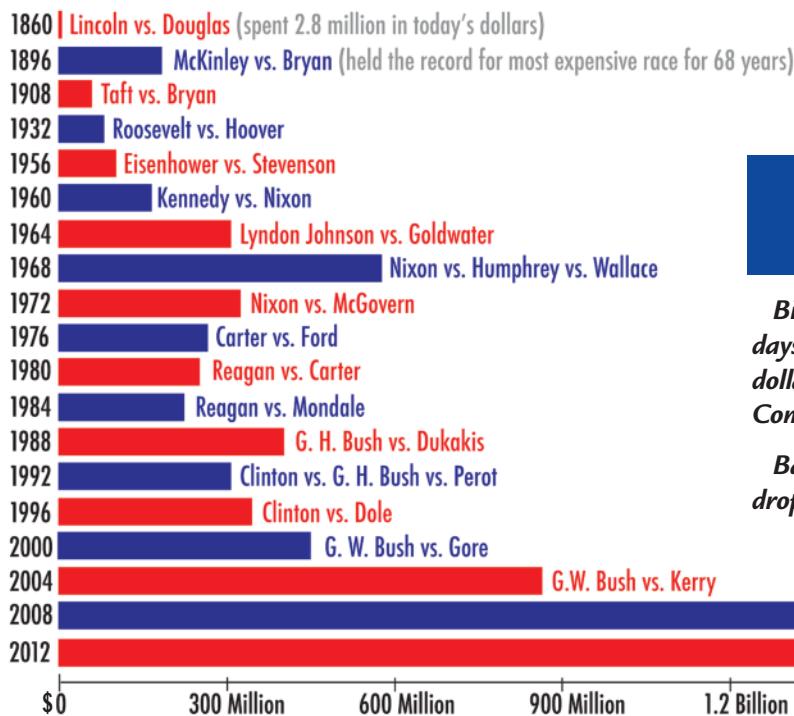
Super PACs are a new way to try to get around the FEC rules. There are no limits on who can contribute to a super PAC or how much they can give. They can raise money from many sources and spend unlimited amounts to get their candidate elected or the opposing candidate defeated.

PACs, super PACs, and 527s have a big impact on our elections, so it's nice to know that in the 2012 presidential election, most of the money raised for each candidate came from individuals.



### HOW TO SLOW SPENDING

There is a big cry for campaign finance reform, and some states and cities are writing their own laws to rein in the costs. In 2002 both major political parties got together to set limits to the spending, but in 2014, in a case called *Citizens United v. Federal Election Commission*, the Supreme Court ruled that Congress cannot limit corporate contributions to independent groups because placing limits on donations violated the First Amendment's freedom of political speech. So ignore the ads. Listen to what your candidate is saying. Check the facts. After all, a vote is not something to be "bought."



### Room for Debate

Many super PACs and 527 groups are bankrolled by America's wealthiest people. Some have business interests at stake in the outcome of an election. Should these groups be required to identify their biggest donors? Why or why not?

### CAMPAIGN SPENDING: THEN AND NOW

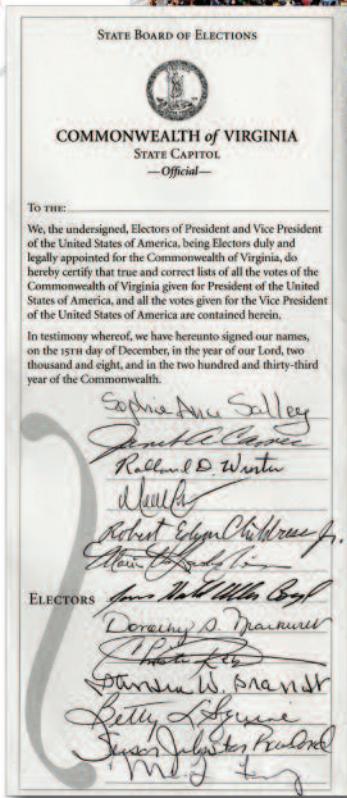
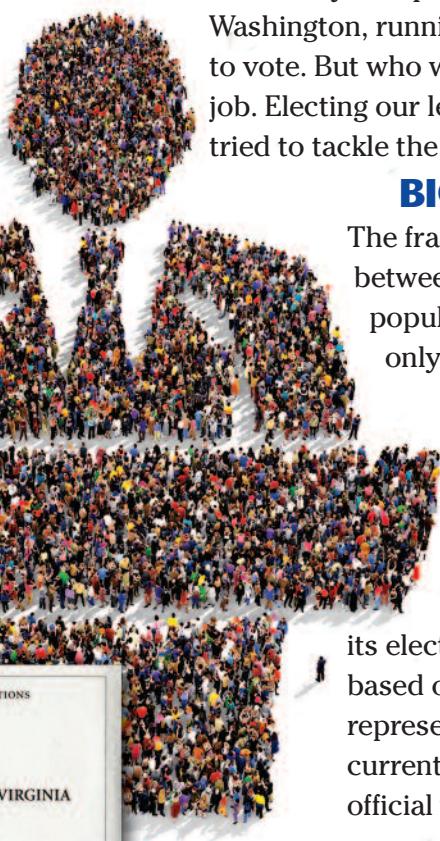
Billions of dollars are being spent on elections these days. In the 2012 election, spending topped 7 billion dollars when the races for president and members of Congress were added together.

Based on this graph, in which elections did spending drop compared to the previous election?

*The Electoral College process is used to select the president and vice president of the United States.*

*It's not a place you go after high school, not a group of buildings, not a place for more schooling. It's a process!*

**Our president and vice president win as a result of a combination of votes from voters and electors.**



*The Electoral College does not officially make its decision until the Monday following the second Wednesday of December.*

# The Electoral College

The very first presidential election took almost four weeks. George Washington, running unopposed, won. The general public did not get to vote. But who would be vice president? Nine people wanted *that* job. Electing our leaders was not a simple task, so the Constitution tried to tackle the problem.

## BIG STATES, SMALL STATES

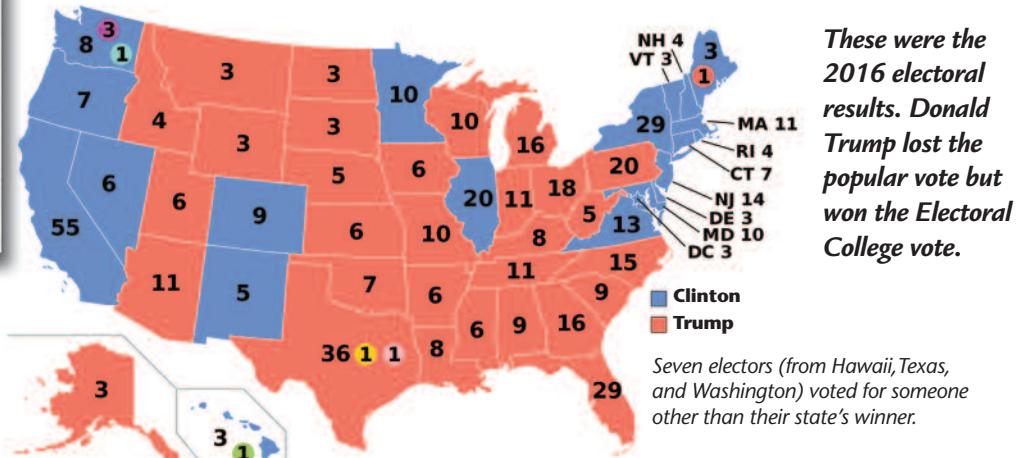
The framers of the Constitution tried to find a compromise between Congress choosing a president and the general population making the decision. They worried that if only members of Congress chose a president, it could get very clique-y. If the citizens got to vote, large regional population areas might easily overpower smaller regions.

## THE SOLUTION

When people vote in a presidential election they are telling the state how they would like it to use its electoral votes. The number of electors of each state is based on its congressional representation—the number of representatives in the House and its U.S. senators. Virginia currently has 13. The Electoral College then casts the official vote for president and vice president.

## WHO ARE THE "ELECTORS"?

Generally each political party nominates a group of loyal, hardworking people to be its slate of electors. They do this at their state party conventions or by a vote of the party's central committee. The electors, in turn, get to cast the official vote for their candidate, based on the popular vote in their state. These folks have been chosen because of their service and dedication. They hold all sorts of jobs, but they are passionate about politics and have worked for their party's candidates with great energy. Being an elector is an honor and a reward.



## Word to Know

### ► **popular vote**

The total number of votes a candidate gets from individual voters

- *Can you win the popular vote and still lose the election?*

That very thing happened in 2000. And it was not the first time—or the last.

Candidates need 270 electoral votes to win. Al Gore, the vice president at the time, had more popular votes than George Bush—the governor of Texas. No one disputed that. But in Florida, the vote was so close that no winner could be declared. Whoever won the state would get all of its 29 electoral votes. At that point Gore had 266 votes to Bush's 248. The results of the popular vote were so close that a partial recount was ordered. The ballots were gathered and recounted. But that was not the end of the story.

### **WHO DID I VOTE FOR?**



In Florida, each county designed its own ballot, and in Palm Beach County—a place with many older voters—the ballot was particularly confusing. It was quite easy to think you were voting for the Democrats when in fact you were voting for someone else. In addition, the technology used at the time involved punching out small holes called “chads” in a piece of cardboard, and sometimes the punch did not work. In the end, the Supreme Court declared Bush the winner by under 600 votes in a state with a poorly designed ballot, where over a million people had voted. But the law is the law. The Electoral College votes went to the winner, and with it the presidency.

### **DOES THE SYSTEM WORK?**

Swing states have become a focal point in close elections, but candidates still must pay attention to the less-populated states to gain electoral votes. The requirement for a majority vote to win the Electoral College vote also favors a two-party system. Third-party candidates might get a sizeable popular vote, but not get the winner-takes-all electoral votes of any state.

## SWING STATES

In 48 states,\* being an elector means that if your party’s candidate wins the popular vote, you are expected to vote for that person. It’s winner-take-all. Some states, such as New York and California, generally vote for Democratic candidates, while Texas is a Republican stronghold. Recent elections have seen a smaller and smaller number of “swing states,” such as Ohio, Florida, Pennsylvania, and Virginia, determine the outcome of an election. The electoral votes from just one swing state may change everything, so a great deal of attention is paid to swing states in presidential elections.

# Who Really Won?

## THE BIZARRE ELECTION OF 2000



### **Room for Debate**

*In the 2000 presidential election, electors from one state decided the outcome of the election. The victorious candidate had not won the popular vote. Should the Electoral College be eliminated and only the popular vote be counted?*



*Voting is a basic responsibility of citizenship.*

*Voter registration is required before a citizen may vote.*

*Through legislation and constitutional amendments, different American citizens have been granted the right to vote at different times.*

# Please Vote!

*In the 2000 election, the presidency of the United States was decided by about 600 votes. Every vote DOES count.*

*Every vote matters!*

## JUST A FEW MORE YEARS...

When you are 18 years old, you will be able to do something really important. Vote! You must register to participate in primary and general elections, but it's easy to do. Simply complete a voter registration application by producing these documents:

- **Proof that you are a U.S. citizen**—a birth certificate, U.S. passport, or naturalization certificate will do.
- **Proof that you are a resident of Virginia**—such as a school ID card or driver's license.
- **Proof of age**—you must be 18 or older on the day of the election.

## WHERE TO REGISTER?

In Virginia you can register to vote in person, by mail, or online. The Department of Motor Vehicles, public libraries, and state/local government offices all have applications. Sometimes a civic group or political party will hold a voter registration drive. You can even mail in an application or register online at the voter registration site operated by the Virginia State Board of Elections. Just be sure you register no later than 22 days before an election.

*Casting your ballot in an election is a powerful right and a great privilege.*



*You might have to wait in line, especially during a presidential election. It's worth it!*

## PROTECTING YOUR RIGHTS

There have been several laws and constitutional amendments that deal with the act of voting. See pages 43–44 for more details.

**15th Amendment:** Race is no bar to vote

**19th Amendment:** Women can vote

**23rd Amendment:** Washington, D.C. residents can vote for president and vice-president

**24th Amendment:** No poll taxes

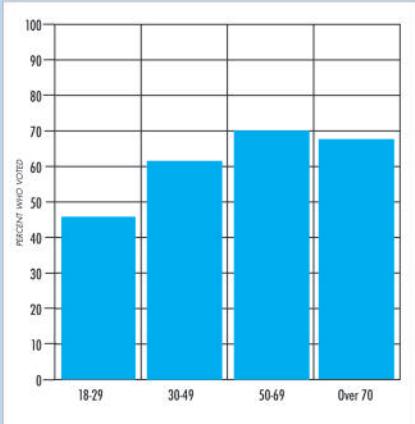
**26th Amendment:** Lowered the voting age to 18

**Voting Rights Act of 1965:** No difficult literacy tests that were used to restrict African American voters

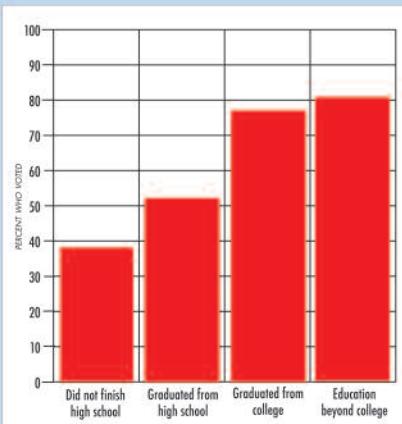
# Who Votes the Most?

MORE PEOPLE SHOULD!

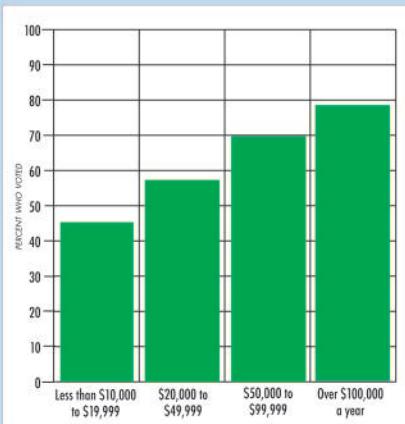
## Vote by Age



## Vote by Education



## Vote by Income



## WHY CARE?

Voter apathy—a seeming lack of interest in the running of our communities, state, and nation—is a real danger to our democracy. So many excuses! “I’m not interested in the candidates or the issues.” “I am too busy!” “One vote does not matter.” “I forgot to register.” Don’t make excuses! VOTE!

## VOTE RIGHT NOW!

Even if you are too young to vote, you can still be a part of the democratic process. Is there a candidate who inspires you? Volunteer to help. Stuff envelopes, hand out literature, pick up pizzas for the volunteers—any help will be welcome. As elections draw near, learn about other issues on the ballot. Often there are **propositions** to vote for—proposed changes that might impact your community or your school. Voting is about more than just picking a person to represent you!

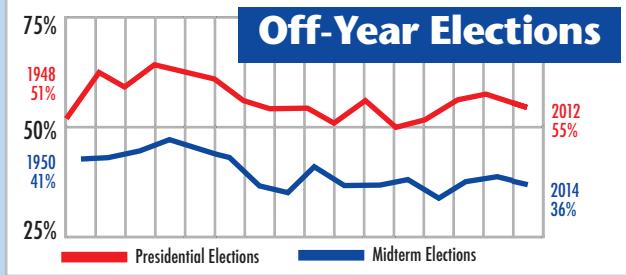
Some schools hold mock elections after studying the candidates and issues. In some Virginia voting districts, children can go to the polls with parents and cast their ballot. It does not count, but it serves as a “dress rehearsal” for the democratic practice of voting. Do it! Research the candidates and issues. Then see how your “votes” compare with the actual results.

Unfortunately, too many people squander one of their greatest rights—the right to vote in free elections. Our nation’s founders risked their lives and fortunes to earn a say in how they were governed, yet today over 20 percent of eligible voters cannot be bothered to take the time to register to vote. We must do better! So when you are 18, go register! Then VOTE!

## OLDER? WISER?

Age, income levels, education—all these things affect who takes the time to go to the polls. Hot-topic issues, from new taxes to Social Security to health care reform, can also send people to the polls in greater numbers on election days. Study these graphs from the 2012 presidential election. What conclusions can you draw?

## Off-Year Elections



## Word to Know

### ► **proposition**

(prop-uh-zhun)

*A suggested idea or plan of action*

**When you do not vote, or fail to get involved in the election process, you have silenced yourself.**



# Chapter 3 Review

*Use pages 50–51 to answer question 1 in complete sentences.*

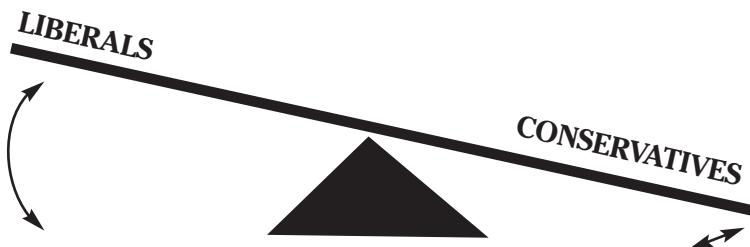
1. What character traits and actions make someone a good citizen?

*Use pages 52–53 to answer questions 2–3 in complete sentences.*

2. What are some functions of political parties before and during an election?
3. After an election, what role do political parties play?

*Use pages 54–55 to answer questions 4–6 in complete sentences.*

4. Explain, in your own words, similarities between **liberals** and **conservatives**.
5. Draw and label the seesaw below at the correct angle to illustrate the goal of how each political party tries to define itself in order to win majority support.



6. What role do third parties play in elections?

*Use pages 56–57 to answer questions 7–8 in complete sentences.*

7. What is the role of the media in an election?
8. As a voter, what are strategies for evaluating campaign speeches, literature, and advertisements?

*Use pages 58–59 to answer question 9 in complete sentences.*

9. What are some effects of rising campaign costs? Explain limits that have been placed on money contributed by individuals, businesses, and labor unions.

*Use pages 60–61 to answer question 10 in complete sentences.*

10. Write a paragraph explaining the Electoral College process.

*Use pages 62–63 to answer questions 11–13 in complete sentences.*

11. What are three qualifications to register to vote in Virginia?
12. List and explain three factors that help predict which citizens will vote.
13. Explain whose voting rights were impacted by legislation and the constitutional amendments listed below.

**15th Amendment • 19th Amendment • 23rd Amendment • 24th Amendment**

**26th Amendment • Voting Rights Act of 1965**

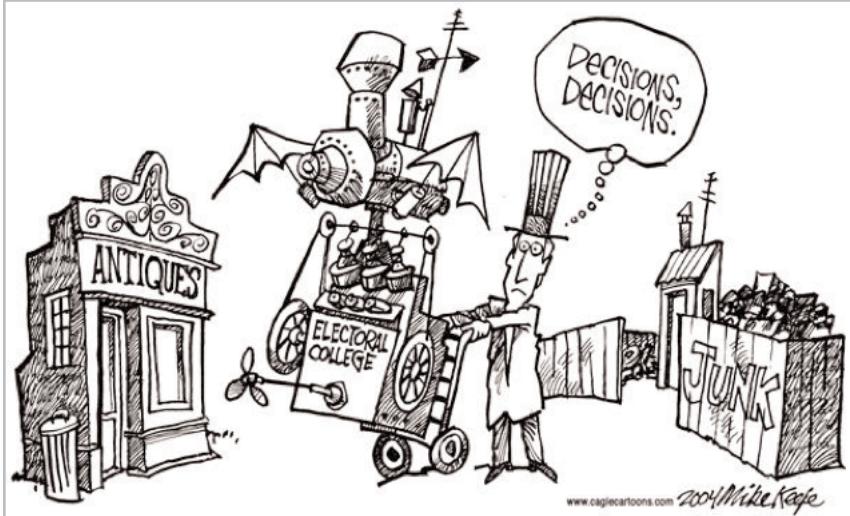
# Apply Your Learning

1. The Electoral College was designed to cast the official vote for president and vice president. Should the Electoral College system still be used to select the president of the United States?

- What images do you see in this political cartoon and what do they represent? What decision needs to be made?
- Changing the Electoral College system would require making an effective decision. To do this, citizens and lawmakers need to weigh the costs and benefits of the change and then

recommend solutions after their analysis.

- Create your own decision-making model to help make this decision. In your model, list three specific costs and three benefits to changing the Electoral College. After analyzing your model, write a blog entry for a political column about what you think the future of the Electoral College system should be.



2. Voters evaluate information presented in a political campaign to make informed choices among candidates.

Create a checklist or guide for voters to help them know how to evaluate campaign speeches, literature, and advertisements. Consider these topics when making your checklist or guide:

- Trustworthiness of the ad
- Dangers of bias and propaganda
- Source of the ad

## Imagine...



Imagine that all political campaign financing comes from a government fund. How would that change the actions of candidates? How would that impact the voice of the American people?



*“There must be, not a balance of power, but a community of power; not organized rivalries, but an organized, common peace.”*

—WOODROW WILSON, 28th president of the United States



# HOW DOES IT ALL WORK?

THE FEDERAL  
GOVERNMENT:  
BALANCING  
POWER



*The U.S. Capitol in Washington, D.C.*

*The Constitution of the United States defines the structure and powers of the national government.*

*The powers held by government are divided between the national government in Washington, D.C., and the governments of the 50 states.*

## Words to Know

► **bicameral** (by-cam-er-ul)

Having two branches, houses, or chambers

► **bureaucracy** (byour-ock-ruh-see)

A large group of people who are appointed, rather than elected, to take part in running a government

► **budget** (buuh-jit)

An estimate of how money will be spent



### THE LEGISLATIVE BRANCH

- **Makes the laws of the nation**

Immigration reform, tax changes, and environmental actions are a few of the things currently being worked on.

- **Approves the annual budget**

America spends a lot of money. Can we agree on how much we will need?

- **Raises revenue through taxes and other levies**

Will we have enough money to pay our bills?

- **Regulates trade**

Both interstate and foreign trade have controls.

- **Confirms presidential appointments**

The president gets to choose federal judges and many other key people, but the Senate must agree.

- **Declares war**

READ MORE ON PAGES 70–71

# Our Federal System

*Running a country as large as the United States is a complicated business.*

The Constitution laid out a plan for the governing of our nation—a plan we use to this day. In it, power is divided between a national government and the governments of the states.

### THREE PARTS = ONE GOVERNMENT

Based in part on the ancient Roman Republic, the Constitution set up a division of power within the federal government. A legislative branch, an executive branch, and a judicial branch are each distinct and independent branches of government. The power is shared, but it is also balanced.

### PASSING NEW LAWS

The U.S. Capitol—a sprawling complex—has become a symbol of our nation. It is where Congress, our nation’s legislature, does its work. It is a **bicameral** legislature, and the building reflects this.

On one side sits the **House of Representatives**. There are 435 members. Each state gets a specific number of representatives based upon its population. On the other side is the **Senate**. There are always 100 senators, two from each state, no matter how big or small the state.

### CARRYING OUT THE LAWS

Inside the White House and in hundreds of other locations, the executive branch does its work. The president of the United States is the “boss,” but there are thousands more that are part of a federal **bureaucracy**. Their goal? To try to keep our nation strong and see to it that our citizens are safe and the laws are carried out.

### MAKING SURE OUR LAWS ARE CONSTITUTIONAL

All across the country, federal court judges hear lawsuits involving any crime that violates a national law. The nine justices of the Supreme Court have the final say on a law’s adherence to the Constitution.

*The U.S. Capitol in Washington, D.C., has two wings joined by a spectacular rotunda.*

*The White House is the heart of the presidency. The First Family lives there, and the president works there.*



## THE JUDICIAL BRANCH

- *This includes the U.S. Supreme Court and the lower federal courts.*

The Supreme Court is the highest court in the land.

- *The Supreme Court reviews some cases that are being disputed.*

If a person is not happy with a verdict in a lower court, it can be appealed.

- *The federal courts try cases involving federal law.*

These courts also settle disputes over different interpretations of the Constitution.

READ MORE ON  
PAGES 82–83

## THE EXECUTIVE BRANCH

- *Headed by the president of the United States*

Hail to the nation's chief executive officer!

- *Carries out the laws of the land*

A law has passed. Now it has to be put into action.

- *Prepares the annual budget for congressional action*

What programs will best help the country? Should money go to health care, the military, the infrastructure, or other programs?

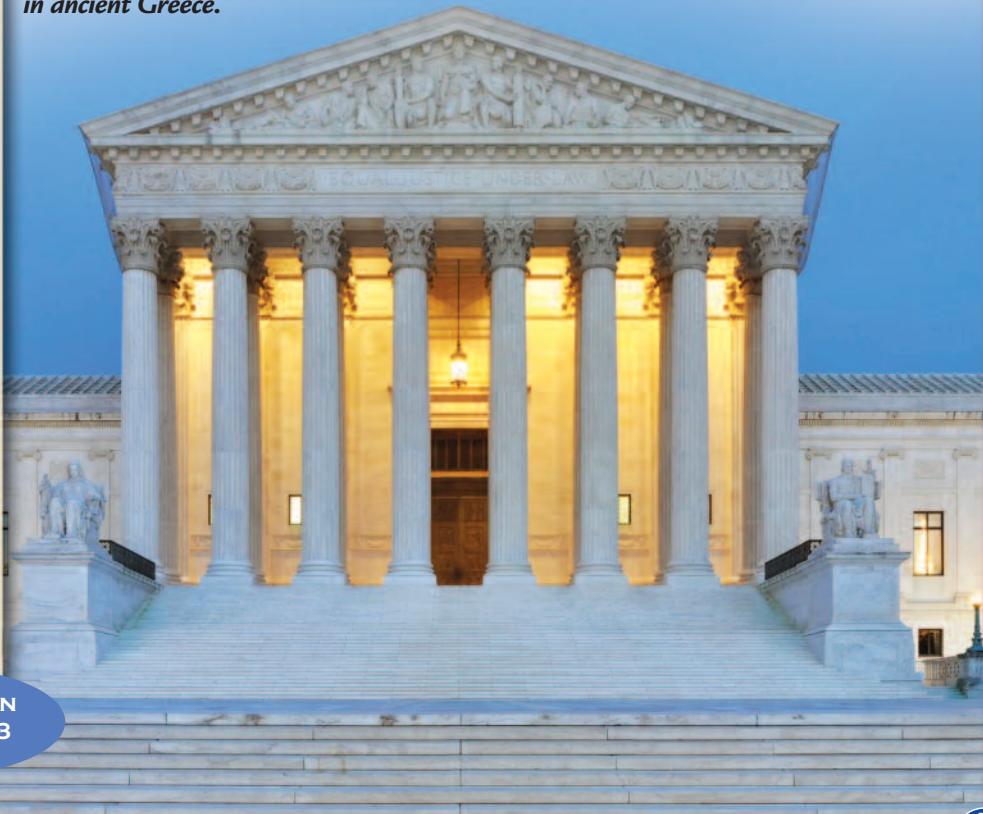
- *Appoints Cabinet officers and ambassadors. Nominates Supreme Court justices and lower federal court judges*

The presidency is a big job.

- *Oversees executive agencies and departments*

READ MORE ON  
PAGES 74–75

*The Supreme Court's architecture honors the roots of our democracy in ancient Greece.*



The lawmaking process requires collaboration and compromise.

National laws are made by Congress.

# The Legislative Branch

What goes on inside the Capitol when Congress is in session?

## Word to Know

### ► bill

A draft for a proposed law to be shared for discussion

The number of representatives in the House is fixed by law at 435 people, proportionally representing the population of each state. Representatives serve for a two-year term. There are also 100 senators—two from each state—who serve for six years. So 535 people are tasked with the job of serving over 320 million people. Their biggest challenge is the making of laws for the nation.

## 10 STEPS FROM IDEA TO LAW

Laws are written to solve problems or protect us from harm. How do ideas become federal law? It can take years! Here is how the process happens.

### 1. PROPOSE A BILL

- *Anyone can propose a bill. Even you!*

Most bills can start in either the House or Senate, but tax bills must start in the House.



Thousands of ideas are submitted, but most are rejected.

### 3. TO THE HOUSE SPEAKER

- *Being Speaker of the House is a powerful position. That person represents the majority party and runs things in the House.*

The Speaker sends the bill to one of 20 possible committees, depending on its subject matter.

### 5. TO THE RULES COMMITTEE

- *Very powerful people!*

After making it through a committee, this group sets a date on the calendar and makes “special” rules that might make the bill easier or harder to pass—such as saying that the bill must be voted upon *exactly* as it is written.

### 2. PUT IT IN THE HOPPER

- *Next stop? This small box! The bill is officially in the system.*



The bill goes into this “hopper” and gets assigned a number. A bit old-fashioned perhaps, but still a cherished tradition.

### 4. IN COMMITTEE LIMBO

- *Many bills die in committee.*

The committees can decide whether to go forward or ignore the bill. If they go ahead, a lot of changes will be made. You can count on that!



### 6. TO THE “FLOOR”

- *Time to vote!*

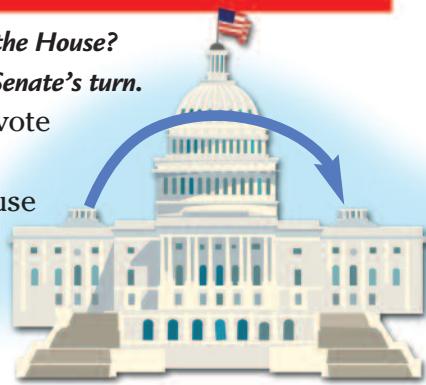
The Speaker of the House sets a time limit for debate, makes sure people stick to their limits, and then calls a vote.



## 7. OFF TO THE SENATE?

- Did the bill pass in the House?  
If it did, now it's the Senate's turn.

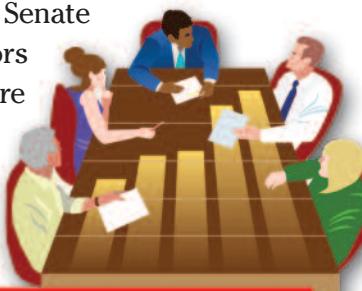
A simple majority vote allows a bill to move from the House side to the Senate side.



## 8. BACK TO A COMMITTEE

- The bill is evaluated again... and changed.

There are many different Senate committees. Most senators serve on at least five. More changes to the bill are made here. A simple majority moves the bill along for a vote.



## 9. SENATE "FLOOR" ACTION

- Lots of drama here. More debating the bill.

A senator can filibuster (try to stop) a bill by talking and talking. Until 60 other senators vote to stop, that person has the floor. The record is 24 hours and 18 minutes! If the Senate finally approves the bill by a simple majority...

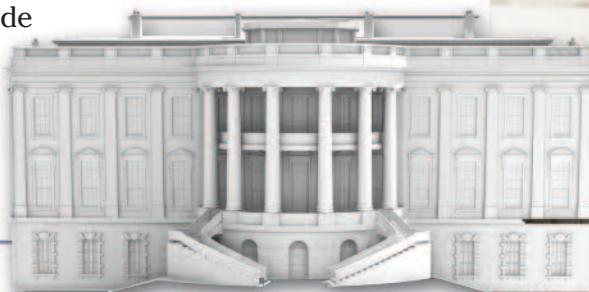


## 10. IT GOES TO THE PRESIDENT

- It's not over yet. The president has 10 days to sign it into law.

If the president does not like the bill, it can be vetoed (rejected). When that happens, it takes a two-thirds majority in both the House and Senate to override the veto.

Not an easy thing to do!



# Congress at Work

THERE'S MORE TO DO!

## APPROVING THE BUDGET

Just like your family, the government has a budget. The president prepares it and the House and Senate get to approve it—or not. Sometimes budget fights lead to a government shutdown.

## CONFIRMING PRESIDENTIAL APPOINTMENTS

The Senate has the power of “advice and consent.” It approves the president’s choices for Cabinet secretaries, federal judges, ambassadors, and more. Selecting Supreme Court justices is sometimes difficult. In 2016, a Republican Senate refused to vote on President Obama’s nominee. Congress can also discipline or remove judges and justices who misbehave or break the law.

## RAISING TAXES

In order to pay the government’s expenses, taxes and other levies must be collected.

## REGULATING TRADE

There are government regulations regarding business dealings with other countries. The same thing holds true for companies that do business across state lines here in America.

## DECLARING WAR

This is the most difficult task for Congress. It has formally declared war 11 times in U.S. history.



On a “date which will live in infamy,” President Franklin Roosevelt asks for a declaration of war from Congress after the bombing of the U.S. naval base at Pearl Harbor in Hawaii.

Senators? Representatives? What's the difference?

# Who's Who on Capitol Hill

Walk into the U.S. Capitol when Congress is in session and you will often see a mad rush of people moving swiftly from here to there. The people who work here—legislators and staffers, representing the voters of their state—know that the stakes are high.

## ON ONE SIDE OF THE BUILDING—THE “HOUSE”

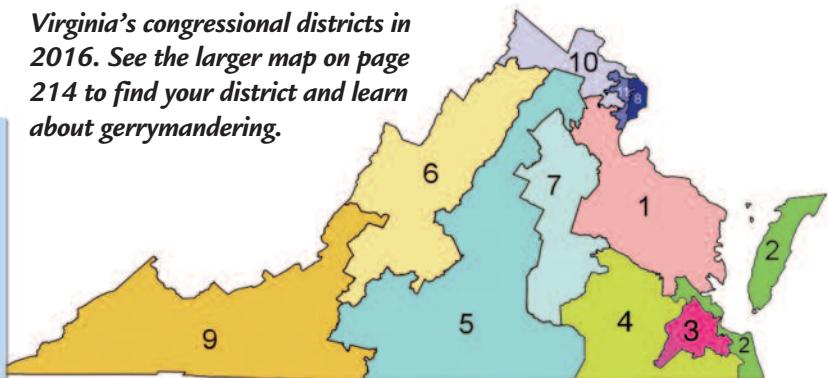
The House of Representatives takes up one side of the Capitol building. Its heart is a huge blue and gold chamber where congresspeople gather to make new laws for the

country. Getting elected to the House is hard work! Every two years, on an even-year cycle, *every* member must run for re-election. Many come back again and again, but sometimes there is a great turnover. Getting elected is a time-consuming task, and half of a congressperson’s time is spent raising money for re-election.

## WHO THEY REPRESENT

The number of people a state sends to the House depends on its population. Delaware has only one representative in Congress. Virginia has 11. California has 53! The formula for each state is based on population, as determined every 10 years by a census. The Democratic and Republican parties try to control the outcome of congressional elections through “gerrymandering”—drawing and redrawing congressional district lines to their advantage.

*Virginia’s congressional districts in 2016. See the larger map on page 214 to find your district and learn about gerrymandering.*



## MAJORITY POLITICS

Obviously, you want your political party to win the most seats. Having a majority in the House gives you a great deal of control in deciding what kinds of bills become law. But every two years, the tide can turn.



# House V.I.P.s

*There are three important leadership roles.*

## THE SPEAKER OF THE HOUSE

Chosen by the majority party, this person presides over the meetings and is the “face” of the House.

## MAJORITY LEADER

When will meetings take place? Which bills will come to the floor? This person decides.

## MAJORITY WHIP

Is a bill going to pass? Who is actually voting for it? This person gets the inside scoop.



## WANT TO RUN?

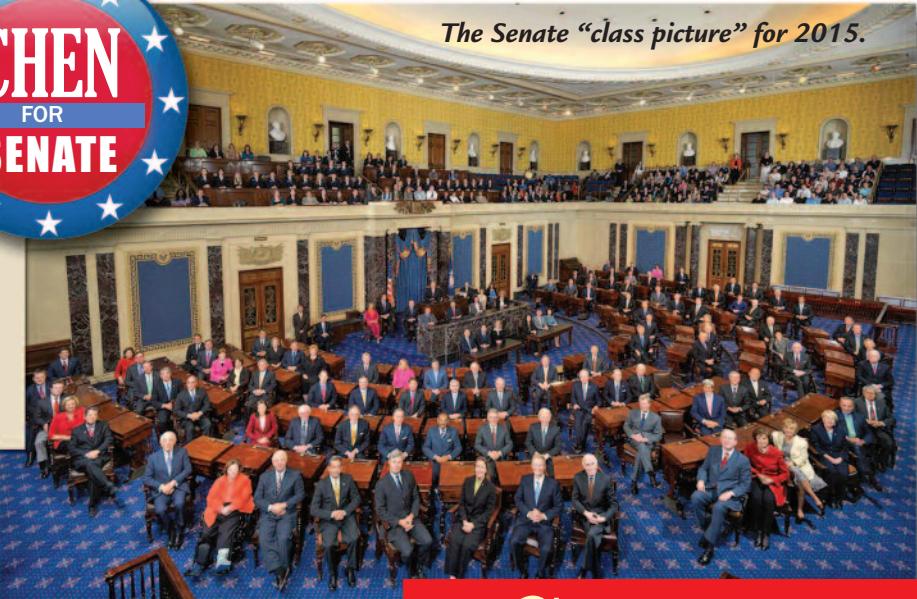
- You must be 25 years old.
- You must be a U.S. citizen for at least seven years.
- At the time of election, you must be a resident of the state you represent.
- The House has 435 members.
- Your term lasts two years.

## WANT TO RUN?

- You must be 30 years old.
- You must be a U.S. citizen for at least nine years.
- At the time of election, you must be a resident of the state you represent.
- The Senate has 100 members.
- Your term lasts six years.



The Senate “class picture” for 2015.



## ON THE OTHER SIDE— THE SENATE

Life in the Senate is a bit less frantic. For starters, there are only 100 senators, two from each state, regardless of size. Because they are elected to a six-year term, senators can better focus on lawmaking, instead of getting re-elected. Elections are staggered over even years, so that only about a third of the Senate is up for re-election at one time.

### WHAT DO THEY DO?

Besides writing and voting for new legislation, a senator's day starts as early as 7:00 a.m. with a morning staff meeting, and runs late into the night with evening fund-raisers. Money is behind every upcoming election—even those still a few years off.

Throughout the day, a senator might dash off to a committee meeting or meet with people called “lobbyists,” who represent different special-interest groups, such as supporters of gun control or the dairy industry. Lobbyists often visit to talk about a bill that will affect their particular “interest.”

In addition to writing new laws, from time to time the Senate is charged with confirming presidential choices for certain important jobs, such as justices of the Supreme Court and judges for the lower federal courts.

### AN IDEAL POLITICIAN

All senators and representatives have strong opinions about what they think is best for the country. As a result, sometimes *nothing* gets done because no one is willing to compromise. There is frequently a lot of tension in the House and the Senate due to hard-line party politics. Who is your representative in Congress? Who are your U.S. senators? Write or email all three and encourage them to learn to compromise!

## Senate V.I.P.s

*The leadership of the Senate is mandated in the Constitution.*

### THE VICE PRESIDENT

The vice president has an important role. In the event of a tie vote in the Senate, which happens every so often, the vice president gets to cast the deciding vote.

### PRESIDENT “PRO TEMPORE”

If the vice president is busy, this senator steps in “for the time being.”

### MAJORITY LEADER & WHIP

Much like the House, the Senate also has a majority leader and a whip who try to persuade people to vote along party lines.

### Room for Debate

*Presidents have “term limits.” They may serve no more than two four-year terms. Members of Congress have no such limits. Should they? Defend your opinion.*



*The Constitution of the United States defines the structure and powers of the national government.*



*The desk of presidents was a gift from Queen Victoria in 1880—made from wood from a British ship, the HMS Resolute. To this day it is known as the Resolute Desk.*

*What does it feel like to sit behind this enormous desk—a desk that presidents have been using for more than 135 years? How many difficult decisions have been made? How many sleepless nights have passed?*

# The Executive Branch

The president of the United States—the chief executive officer of the nation—has an enormous job. He oversees the executive branch. If you include all the people serving in the armed forces, the executive branch includes about four million people. Naturally, a person cannot do a job this big without a *lot* of help.

## FROM THE MOON TO SESAME STREET

The executive branch is the largest of the three branches of our government, and it is a very complex operation. This branch is tasked with interpreting and enforcing all the laws written by Congress. To do that, hundreds of federal agencies, Cabinet departments, and regulatory groups have been created. Think of them as lots of different groups that each deal with very specific concerns of the nation. The heads of federal departments and independent agencies serve at the pleasure of the president. Members of independent regulatory commissions do not.

Federal agencies and commissions handle all sorts of responsibilities. Some are charged with protecting us from harm, such as the armed forces, or the FBI. Some deal with caring for our day-to-day needs, such as health care and job safety. Some look to the future with scientific research and space exploration, such as NASA. And some just bring us some small moments of joy, like the government programs that funded the creation of Elmo and Big Bird.



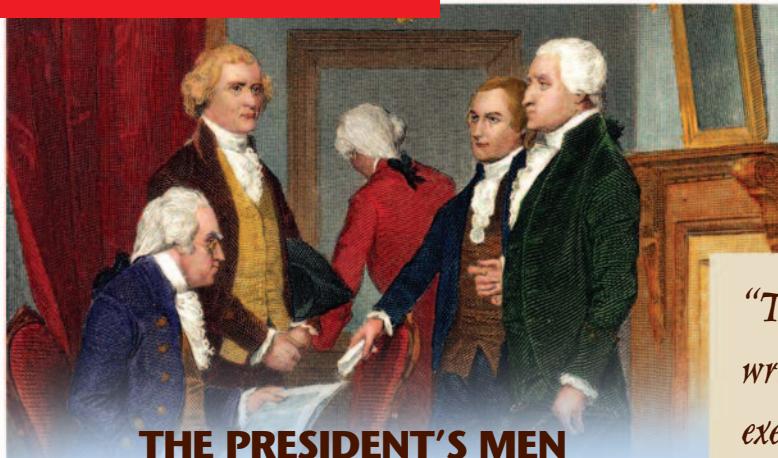
## Word to Know

### ► Cabinet

*A group of advisors to the president. Each heads up one of the executive departments of the government.*

# The Advisors

## HELP FOR A PRESIDENT



### THE PRESIDENT'S MEN

When George Washington took the oath of office as our nation's first president, he knew he could not do the job by himself. The writers of the Constitution had anticipated that problem and added a paragraph allowing the president to bring in helpers. Washington thought about the parts of governing that were of the utmost importance, then asked four trusted people to advise him.

Thomas Jefferson became his secretary of state, dealing with relations with foreign countries. Alexander Hamilton, who championed a national banking system, became the secretary of the treasury. Henry Knox, a Revolutionary War hero, became the head of the War Department. Edmund Randolph—a brilliant lawyer who had introduced the *Virginia Plan* (which served as an outline for the Constitution)—became attorney general. Attorney generals advise on legal matters.

### A JOB TOO BIG FOR ONE PERSON

There are 15 special groups that are responsible for the truly critical aspects of running the country. The men and women who head these departments are called the **Cabinet**. That word comes from an old French word that means a “small room.” But in that small room very big decisions can sometimes be made.

Cabinet heads, sometimes called “secretaries,” are chosen to advise the president. They are joined by the vice president and the president’s chief of staff. Problems are discussed, ideas are exchanged, and important choices are made.

*“The President...may require the Opinion, in writing, of the principal Officer in each of the executive Departments, upon any subject relating to the Duties of their respective Offices.”*

—ARTICLE II, SECTION 2

*The Constitution of the United States*

### PEACEFUL PLACES AND WAR ZONES

Our nation is a powerful presence all across the globe, so there are **embassies**, consulates, and missions in many foreign countries. The president must choose people to be **ambassadors** to run those embassies. Some diplomatic postings are delightful, some can be unstable, and others are downright dangerous.

U.S. embassies assist our citizens living abroad. They also help people who want to emigrate to the U.S., and coordinate U.S. foreign policy.

### Words to Know

#### ► **ambassador** (am-bass-uh-door)

A person sent by the president as the official representative to a foreign country

#### ► **embassies** (em-buh-sees)

The official residences or offices of ambassadors

*The U.S. embassy in Nairobi, Kenya, is a place that has been subject to terrorism.*



# Cabinet Dossier:

A CLOSER LOOK



## THE DEFENSE DEPARTMENT

ESTABLISHED 1789

**Mission** - "To provide the military forces needed to deter war and to protect the security of our country"

Originally called the War Department, this is the biggest department. The secretary of defense manages all the armed forces of the United States, including the *joint chiefs of staff*—senior uniformed officers who advise the president on military matters.

## THE JUSTICE DEPARTMENT

ESTABLISHED 1870

**Mission** - "To enforce the law and defend the United States, to ensure public safety against threats foreign and domestic, to prevent and control crime, to seek just punishment for those guilty of unlawful behavior, and to ensure justice for all Americans"

The attorney general heads this department, which oversees the FBI, the U.S. Marshals Service, the U.S. Attorneys, and many more divisions.



## THE STATE DEPARTMENT

ESTABLISHED 1789

**Mission** - "To shape and sustain a peaceful, prosperous, just, and democratic world and foster conditions for stability and progress for the benefit of the American people and people everywhere"

It really could be called the

Department of Foreign Affairs!

When trouble brews in far-away places, the secretary of state will work for peace or, sometimes, prepare for war.

This is one of the most important Cabinet positions.

## THE TREASURY DEPARTMENT

ESTABLISHED 1789

**Mission** - "To promote economic prosperity and ensure the financial security of the United States"



From printing money and collecting taxes to going after forgers, this Cabinet department is in charge of managing federal finances.



## THE AGRICULTURE DEPARTMENT

ESTABLISHED 1862

**Mission** - "To provide leadership on food, agriculture, natural resources, rural development, nutrition, and more"

Safe, dependable food is a must for national security. The USDA monitors this.



## THE DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR

ESTABLISHED 1849

**Mission** - "To protect America's natural resources and heritage, honor our cultures and tribal communities, and supply the energy to power our future"

First established to try to improve our nation's terrible treatment of America's first peoples, now it also works to preserve our cherished natural wonders.

## VETERANS AFFAIRS

BECAME A CABINET POSITION IN 1989

### Mission - To fulfill President

*Lincoln's promise "to care for him who shall have borne the battle, and for his widow and his orphan" by serving and honoring the men and women who are America's veterans*



Caring for the people who have served their country is a top priority. This agency provides everything from medical care to home loans to education.

## HOUSING AND URBAN DEVELOPMENT

ESTABLISHED 1965

### Mission - To help Americans with their housing needs, including affordable homes



A safe place to live is a basic human necessity. This agency tries to help.

## DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY

ESTABLISHED 1977

### Mission - To advance the energy security of the nation, develop new sources of energy, and monitor our nuclear weapons

A critical part of our national security! We need our own dependable, affordable energy sources.

## CONFIDENTIAL INFORMATION



## THE COMMERCE DEPARTMENT

ESTABLISHED 1903

### Mission - To create jobs, promote economic growth, and improve the standard of living

Business is front and center here. It includes the Patent Office, the Census Bureau, and more.



## THE LABOR DEPARTMENT

ESTABLISHED 1913

### Mission - To improve working conditions and opportunities for jobs

Minimum wage issues, protecting against job site abuses, and job training for new technologies.

## HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES

ESTABLISHED 1953

(ORIGINALLY HEALTH, EDUCATION, AND WELFARE. EDUCATION WAS SPLIT OFF IN 1979.)

### Mission - To protect the health of all Americans and provide essential services, especially for those who are least able to help themselves

Between Medicare, Medicaid, and funds for health research, this huge department is responsible for about one-quarter of the federal budget.



## DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION

ESTABLISHED 1979

### Mission - To serve America's students and foster educational excellence

America's schools are the key to our future.



## DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

ESTABLISHED 1966

### Mission - To ensure fast, safe, efficient, accessible transportation

This is a big country and it needs dependable ways to move people and goods.



## HOMELAND SECURITY

ESTABLISHED 2002

### Mission - To protect the United States and its territories and respond to terrorist attacks, man-made accidents, and natural disasters

Our newest Cabinet department was created in response to the 9/11 attacks on New York's World Trade Center and the Pentagon in Virginia.



*The executive branch plays a key role in the policymaking process.*

*Presidential power has grown in the years since the Constitution was ratified, but there are limits on what the president can and cannot do.*

Lots of kids dream of being president one day, and why not? You get to live in the White House and zoom around on Air Force One. But those are the fun parts. The truth is, it is a brutally difficult job. With power comes great, sometimes crushing, responsibility.

In the years since the Constitution was ratified, the power of the presidency has grown, but so has the job. As head of the executive branch, the president juggles dozens of tasks. A president must appoint officials to make sure the laws of the land are being followed. Along with that big Oval Office comes the job of managing the Cabinet departments, agencies, and regulatory groups that interpret and carry out the laws. There are hundreds of agencies, and the president must know what's going on with each one.

## THE STATE OF THE UNION

The Constitution demands a dialogue between the president and Congress, so every January, our president tells Congress (and the nation) how we are doing. This **State of the Union** address lets the president use the media to speak directly to the American people, sharing a vision of what might be accomplished in the coming year. All year long, the president often speaks directly to the nation using media. This can be as formal as a press conference or as informal as a tweet.

## YES OR NO

Throughout the year, new bills will make it through Congress and come to the president for approval. A president can either decide to sign the bill, officially making it a law of the land, or say no and veto the bill. A presidential veto can be overridden, but it is difficult. There are limits on what a president can accomplish if Congress does not agree with his ideas for the nation. Sometimes a president will issue executive acts or orders to get something done quickly—such as Franklin Roosevelt's actions to create relief programs during the Great Depression.

*Inauguration Day—January 20 (or 21st if the 20th is a Sunday) ushers in a new four-year term. Throngs gather at the Capitol, filled with high hopes for the future of our nation.*

*It is the most important job in the country, and some would say, in the world. Still, there are limits as to what the president can do.*

# A President's Power

*"You know, it's easy for the Monday morning quarterback to say what the coach should have done, after the game is over. But when the decision is up before you—and on my desk I have a motto which says 'The Buck Stops Here'—the decision has to be made."*

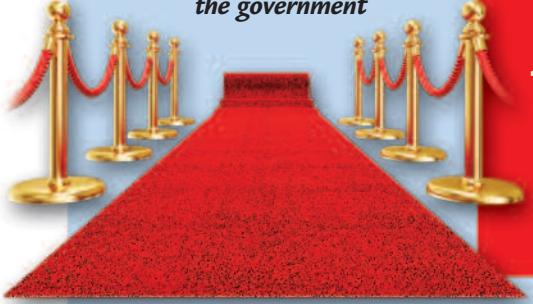
—HARRY TRUMAN

*33rd president of the United States*



## CHIEF OF STATE

*• Ceremonial head of the government*



Meeting with kings, queens, prime ministers, and dignitaries from around the world is often part of the day's work.



## CHIEF LEGISLATOR

*• Proposer of the legislative agenda*

Education? Health? A strong national defense? A balanced budget? Presidents propose new legislation.

## CHIEF DIPLOMAT

*• American foreign policy leader*

Maintaining good relations with allies, and mending fences with less friendly nations are key. Peace is the goal.



# Hail to the Chief

## HOW THE PRESIDENT EXERCISES POWER

### CHIEF EXECUTIVE

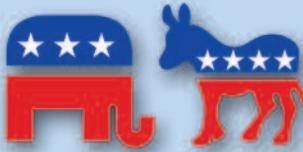
*• Head of the executive branch of government*

As President Truman said, "The president ... has to decide. He can't pass the buck to anybody. No one else can do the deciding for him. That's his job."



### CHIEF OF PARTY

*• Leader of the political party that controls the executive branch*



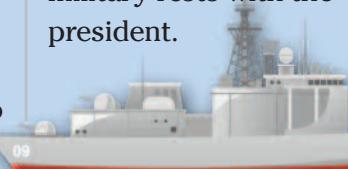
Republican or Democrat, presidents carry the weight of their party on their backs.

## COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF

*• Head of the nation's armed forces*



The authority to command every soldier, sailor, marine, and pilot in the military rests with the president.

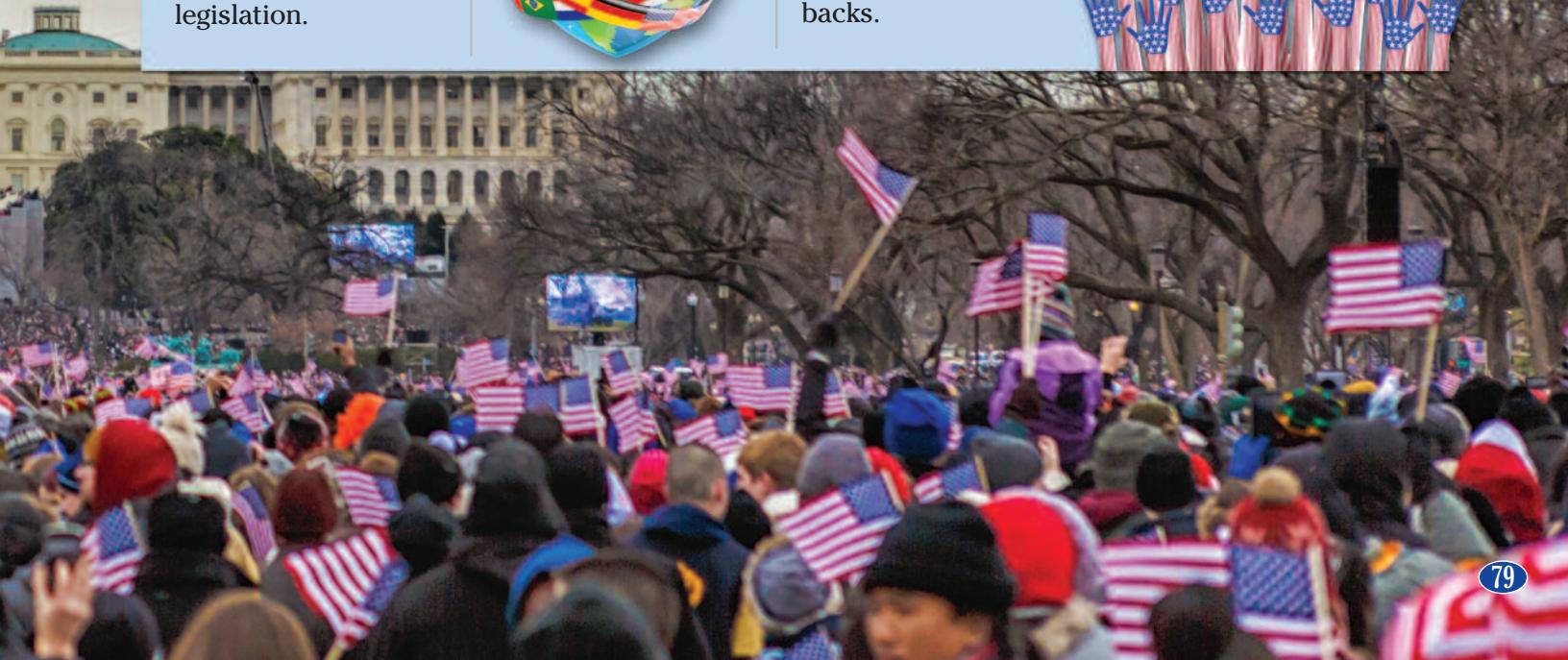
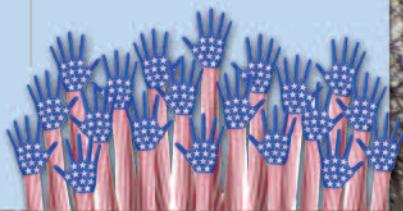


09

## CHIEF CITIZEN

*• Representative of all Americans*

In difficult times—through destructive storms or national tragedies—the president is there to reassure us that we are not alone.



*The Constitution of the United States defines the structure and powers of the national government.*

# So Much to Do!

*What would George Washington think if he could see all of the things our modern-day president is responsible for?*

The job of being president has grown more and more difficult with each passing year. Our world grows more complicated, technologies change all the time, and we face natural disasters that strain our resources. Nations that were enemies become friends, and friendly countries become mortal enemies. The stresses of running the country can seem overwhelming.

## A GREAT TASK

The executive branch's job is so big that even the Cabinet departments cannot handle it all, so additional federal agencies have been created. Unlike a Cabinet position, which must be approved by a Senate vote, the heads of some federal agencies are not under direct presidential control, but their responsibilities can be just as daunting.

The people who work for all these many different agencies make up a huge bureaucracy. Sometimes folks complain about government "red tape" but the truth is, these are enterprises on a vast and complex scale!

## Word to Know

### ► **entitlements**

(en-tie-tull-ments)

*Government programs that provide benefits to a specific group, such as retirement benefits or health care*

# Federal Agencies

**THE "ABCs" OF  
SOME IMPORTANT  
GOVERNMENT AGENCIES**

The people who wrote the Constitution could not have imagined the world we live in today. Over time, these independent extensions of the U.S. government have been created. Each helps to fulfill the executive branch's job.

Here are a few of the really important ones.

### AMTRAK

- *National Railroad Passenger Corporation*

Helps keep America's passenger trains moving



### CIA

- *Central Intelligence Agency*  
Gathers "intel" from around the world to help keep us safe



### NASA

- *National Aeronautics and Space Administration*  
Explores space—to the moon and beyond



### USPS

- *The U.S. Postal Service*  
Delivers the mail through rain, snow, sleet, and hail



## HOW MUCH IS ALL THIS GOING TO COST?

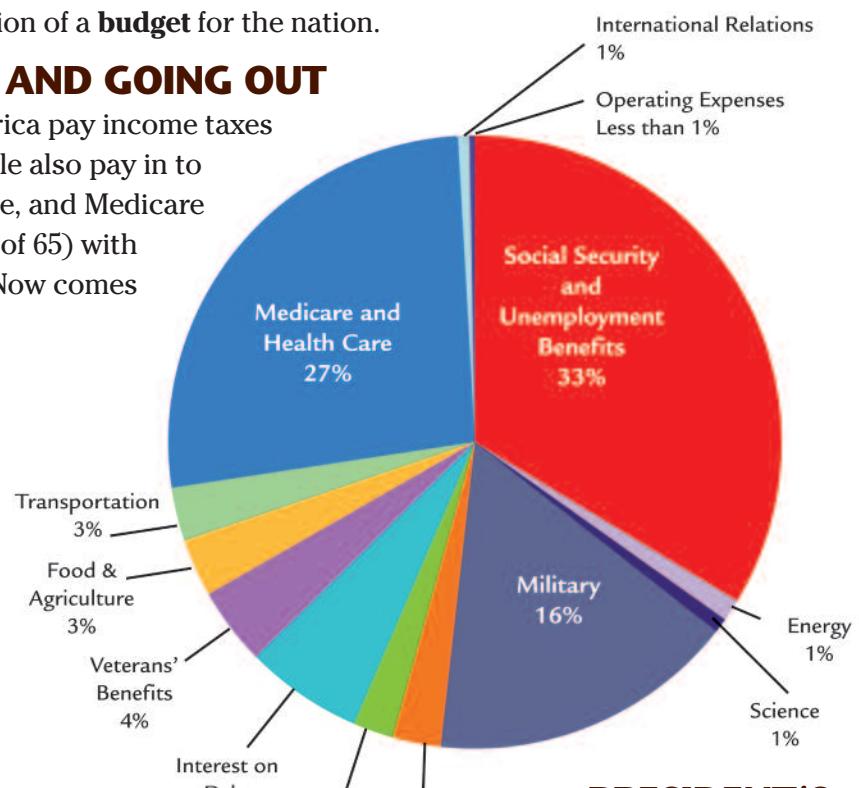
Four million “employees.” Tanks and armor and uniforms. Thousands of buildings to light and heat. Equipment, office supplies, and computers. Roads to maintain. Bridges to paint. Health initiatives. All that adds up. One of the most difficult tasks for the executive branch is the preparation of a **budget** for the nation.

*Here's what a typical federal budget might look like.*

## THE MONEY COMING IN ... AND GOING OUT

People and businesses all across America pay income taxes each year based on their earnings. People also pay in to Social Security, unemployment insurance, and Medicare (health care for Americans over the age of 65) with deductions taken from each paycheck. Now comes the hard part.

Medicare, Medicaid, and Social Security are called **entitlements**, or mandatory spending. The government *must* fund these programs. Everything else, even national defense, must get in line behind these programs, and the remaining costs are often more than the nation's tax revenue. The federal government must borrow billions of dollars a year to cover the difference. Although the president proposes the budget, only Congress can authorize spending, and spirited disagreement—to put it politely—is common.



## PRESIDENT'S PROPOSED BUDGET

### THE "FED"

- *The Federal Reserve*  
Regulates banking and the supply of money



### EEOC

- *The Equal Employment Opportunity Commission*  
Makes sure there is no job discrimination



### FCC

- *The Federal Communications Commission*  
Regulates radio, TV, satellite, and cable



### FDIC

- *The Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation*  
Insures the money we keep in U.S. banks against loss



### EPA

- *The Environmental Protection Agency*  
Oversees clean air, clean water, and the fight against global warming



### NRC

- *The Nuclear Regulatory Commission*  
Monitors nuclear power plants



### SEC

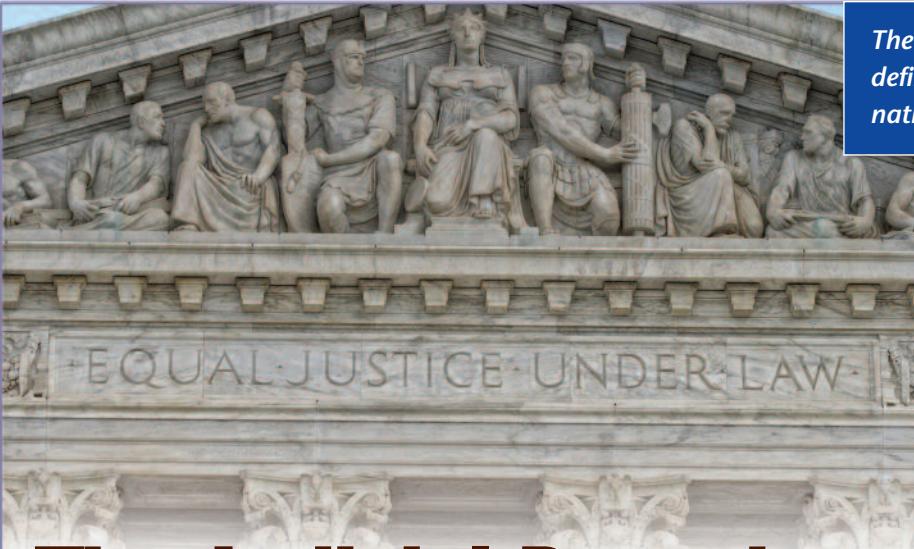
- *The Securities and Exchange Commission*  
Oversees the stock and bond markets



### SSA

- *The Social Security Administration*  
Helps our senior citizens and disabled Americans





*The Constitution of the United States defines the structure and powers of the national government.*

*"If the provisions of the Constitution be not upheld when they pinch as well as when they comfort, they may as well be abandoned."*

—CHARLES EVANS HUGHES

*Chief Justice of the U.S. Supreme Court*



# The Judicial Branch

*Walk under this carved marble portico and you will enter the chambers of the U.S. Supreme Court—the highest court in the land. It is a place where the upholding of the Constitution in ever-changing times is all that matters.*

## THE FEDERAL COURT SYSTEM

You do not go to a federal court to deal with a speeding ticket or to sue a neighbor with a nasty dog. Federal courts are different from state courts. Federal courts can only hear cases that involve the U.S. government, the Constitution, federal laws, and cases involving two parties not from the same state or country. There are two kinds of cases. In a criminal lawsuit, the government brings the charge: for example, a hacker has stolen credit card numbers. In a civil lawsuit, any person can claim wrongdoing: for example, you bought a bike from a company in another state and it fell apart while you were riding it, leading to a back injury.

## THE FEDERAL DISTRICT COURT

If you've ever seen a movie with a courtroom scene, the action in a federal district court will seem familiar to you. Each district has at least one district judge, appointed by the president and confirmed by the Senate for a life term. Lawyers from the U.S. Attorney's office present the government's side of the case. Sometimes the losing side in federal district court will ask a federal Court of Appeals to review the decision. If that happens, it goes to a higher court.

## THE CIRCUIT COURT OF APPEALS

There are 13 federal circuits: 12 federal circuits that divide the country into different regions and a Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit in the District of Columbia. Virginia is in the Fourth Circuit, along with Maryland, North and South Carolina, and West Virginia. Cases on **appeal** from the district courts of those states all end up in Richmond. Each circuit court has multiple judges, anywhere from 6 to 29. These courts hear death penalty appeals from states with a death penalty, as well as appeals from people who believe they were wrongly convicted. If *their* decision is appealed, it goes to...

## Word to Know

► **appeal**

*(uh-peel)*

*Ask a higher court to reverse a decision of a lower court*



*The U.S. Court of Appeals in Richmond, Virginia*

## THE SUPREME COURT

The men and women of the U.S. Supreme Court, led by a chief justice, make up the highest court in the land. Some say they have the most powerful jobs a U.S. citizen can have. Appointed by the president and confirmed by the Senate for a life term, they never have to run for re-election and can be removed from office only under extraordinary circumstances.

The “Nine,” as they are sometimes called, have a lot to say about how this country is run because the court exercises the power of **judicial review**. That means that something that the executive or legislative branch does can be overturned by the judicial branch. That is a lot of power to have!

## THE POWER OF DISSENT

The Supreme Court has made some controversial decisions, but each justice gets to justify his or her opinion after every vote. And sometimes, even when things don’t go their way, their voices still are heard. *“Dissents speak to a future age. It’s not simply to say, ‘My colleagues are wrong and I would do it this way.’ But the greatest dissents do become court opinions and gradually, over time, their views become the dominant view. So that’s the dissenter’s hope: that they are writing not for today but for tomorrow.”* So wrote Supreme Court justice Ruth Bader Ginsburg.

A justice of the Supreme Court is supposed to be above political party allegiances, but as someone leaves, a new justice will be appointed by the current president. Presidents try to nominate someone who views the Constitution in the same way. Since Republican and Democratic presidents have different ideas about whom to choose, there is a lot of drama under that “Equal Justice Under Law” portico!



# Landmark Decisions

## UPHOLDING THE CONSTITUTION

*Some Supreme Court decisions have had a huge impact on American life. Here are three:*

### **MARBURY v. MADISON (1803)**

This important decision established the Supreme Court’s authority—some even say its obligation—to review any acts of Congress to make sure they do not go against the U.S. Constitution. *Read more on page 136.*

### **PLESSY v. FERGUSON (1896) AND BROWN v. BOARD OF EDUCATION (1954)**

In *Plessy v. Ferguson* the court had ruled in favor of the terrible doctrine of “separate but equal.” The reality was that African Americans were forced into underfunded schools and in many places kept out of public parks.

By the 1950s, it was very clear that separate schools were NOT equal. A civil rights group, the NAACP (National Association for the Advancement of Colored People), challenged the constitutionality of segregation, naming the Topeka, Kansas, school system as an example. In 1954 the court reversed its Plessy decision, declaring that separate schools are “inherently unequal.” It was a major victory for equality, although the promise of truly integrated schools took many more years to achieve.

*Thurgood Marshall, Sandra Day O’Connor, and Sonia Sotomayor are all trailblazers. As the first African American justice, the first woman justice, and the first Latina justice, they brought much-needed diversity to the Supreme Court.*



*The powers of the national government are separated among the three branches of the government to limit any one branch from abusing its power.*

# Checks and Balances

*Imagine a game with three separate teams. Each has certain powers and each can block the other teams' actions if they wish. Running our country is not a game, but power plays are not uncommon.*

The Constitution carefully spells out the duties of each of the three branches of our government—**separation of powers**. It also cleverly weaves in ways for each branch to limit the powers of the other two branches so that one branch does not abuse its power—**checks and balances**.



## THE PRESIDENT CHECKS CONGRESS

- Can propose new laws, or veto laws proposed by Congress
- Prepares the budget
- Can call special sessions of Congress

## CONGRESS CHECKS THE PRESIDENT

- Can confirm or refuse to confirm federal judges/justices
- Can override a presidential veto
- Can impeach and convict a president
- Approves presidential nominees
- Approves the budget

## THE COURTS CHECK CONGRESS

- Judges and justices can declare acts of Congress to be unconstitutional
- Can narrow the application of laws



## CONGRESS CHECKS THE COURTS

- Can refuse to confirm judges
- Can impeach and convict judges
- Can propose constitutional amendments

## Words to Know

### ► **impeach** (im-peach)

Officially charge a person who holds a public office with misconduct

### ► **executive actions**

Legally binding orders given by the president to federal administrative agencies

## THE PRESIDENT CHECKS THE COURTS

- Appoints new judges and justices
- Grants pardons and reprieves

## THE COURTS CHECK THE PRESIDENT

- Can declare executive actions to be unconstitutional

# Power and People

## WHO IS IN AND WHO IS OUT?



Suppose the president has a person in mind for a Supreme Court seat or a Cabinet position. These are positions of great power. The people who wrote the Constitution had several thoughts about this.

## NO WAY TO PLAY FAVORITES

Imagine that a president chooses a close friend for a seat on the Supreme Court. That person might feel like a favor or two were owed to the president, right? Worse—what if the president committed a crime, or did something improper? How can you discipline the head of the United States?

The system of checks and balances protects us from exactly those sorts of abuses of power. Unfortunately sometimes, due to party politics, it keeps qualified people from getting jobs where they would excel.

## BAD BEHAVIOR

Two presidents have been impeached by the U.S. House of Representatives but acquitted by the Senate. Another, Richard Nixon—heeded for probable impeachment in the House and conviction in the Senate—resigned before charges could be filed. The system of checks and balances definitely works.



National laws are made by Congress.

Citizens learn the lawmaking process and influence public policy through direct participation and/or simulation.

The lawmaking process requires collaboration and compromise.

*"The Congress shall have Power... To make all Laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into Execution the foregoing Powers, and all other Powers vested by this Constitution in the Government of the United States, or in any Department or Officer thereof."*

#### —ARTICLE I, SECTION 8

*The Constitution of the United States*

### Words to Know

#### ► **expressed powers**

The powers of Congress that are listed in the Constitution

#### ► **implied (im-ply-d) powers**

The powers of Congress to carry out expressed powers; powers suggested without actually being said

- **The power to coin money.**

The U.S. Mint can strike coins and print bills.

### EXPRESSED



# Necessary and Proper

How does the Constitution—a document written more than 200 years ago—still manage to serve us? Simple! It “stretches.”

The men who wrote the Constitution were very clever. The formal powers of Congress are limited and are clearly defined with a list of 27 things they can do. There are five big ones: the power to tax, to regulate commerce between the states, to coin and print money, to declare war, and to maintain an army and navy.

#### CONGRESS ALSO HAS THE POWER TO:

- Set policies for immigrants to become U.S. citizens
- Deal with people who run out of money and cannot pay taxes
- Punish counterfeiters
- Establish a national post office
- Create a patent office to protect the work of inventors and artists
- Build a federal court system below the Supreme Court
- Punish pirates
- Send out our own “pirates” to attack enemies at sea if needed
- Regulate the conduct of the armed forces
- Call up a militia to defend our country from attack
- Organize and discipline the militia
- Govern our federal capital (Washington, D.C.)
- Ask for lands from the states for use by the federal government

And, finally, in a clause that has become known as the **elastic clause**—because it can stretch to cover just about any situation that might arise—the Constitution gave Congress the power to do anything necessary to make all 27 **expressed powers** possible.

#### EXPRESSED AND IMPLIED

The “necessary and proper” clause gave Congress many **implied powers**. Here are some examples of how the clauses can stretch.

### IMPLIED

- **The power to change the look or denominations of money**

This \$100 bill was re-designed in 2010 to try to make it more difficult to forge. In 2020 Harriet Tubman, chosen by the public, will replace Andrew Jackson on the \$20 bill.





## EXPRESSED

- **The power to run a post office**

In the beginning, the sender did not pay. The person who received the mail paid the postman.

## IMPLIED

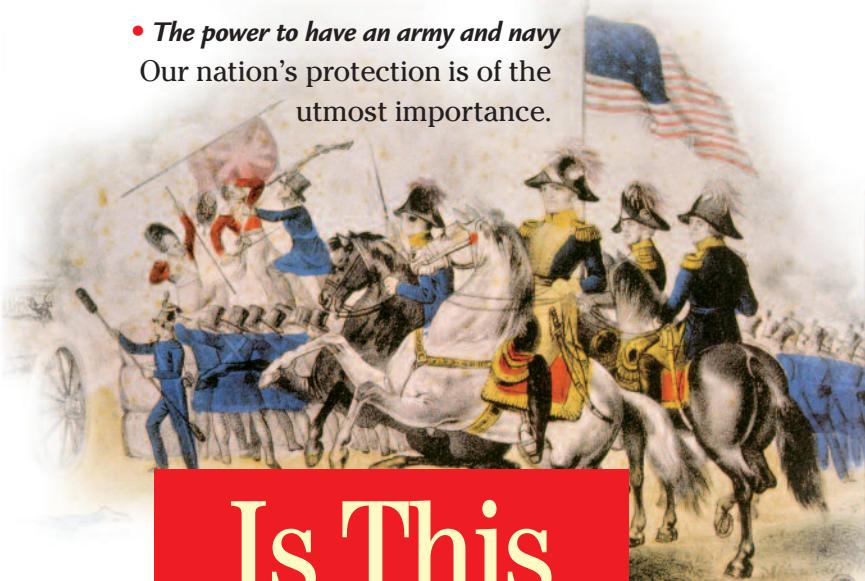
- **The power to create stamps or raise the price of stamps**

Because the cost to deliver the mail keeps rising, the post office can charge more for its services or change the services it provides.

## EXPRESSED

- **The power to have an army and navy**

Our nation's protection is of the utmost importance.



## IMPLIED

- **The power to fund the invention of new weapons**

From building new shipyards to designing new fighter planes—Congress can do things to keep the armed forces well equipped.



# Is This Proper?

## THE POWER OF SPECIAL-INTEREST GROUPS

Elected officials in Congress write laws and take whatever action is necessary when there are problems, but there is a lot of pressure on them from outside sources. Special-interest groups can put a lot of pressure on politicians.

They represent large groups, each one linked by a single common ideal, such as AARP, which speaks for Americans over 50, or MADD—Mothers Against Drunk Driving. These groups help fund campaigns.

People from these groups often come to speak before congressional committees to focus attention on an issue that is important to them in the hopes of pushing Congress to vote a specific way. If you are passionate about something, research special-interest groups and know there is power in numbers.



## GET INVOLVED

*Even students can be a part of the legislative process. Make your voice heard! Here's how.*



# Chapter 4 Review

*Use pages 68–69 to answer question 1.*

1. Copy the following on your own paper. Match each branch of government with its main job.

- |                                      |                       |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Judicial    | A. Carry out the laws |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Executive   | B. Interpret laws     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Legislative | C. Make laws          |

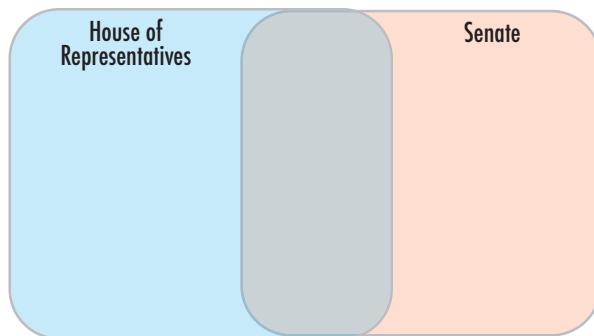
*Use pages 70–71 to answer question 2.*

2. Write a paragraph or draw a graphic organizer to explain the lawmaking process in Congress.

Make sure to include the following words: **committee, veto, debate, president, Senate, House of Representatives, override.**

*Use pages 72–73 to answer question 3.*

3. Copy and complete the Venn diagram comparing and contrasting the House of Representatives and the Senate.



*Use pages 74–77 to answer question 4 in complete sentences.*

4. The executive branch, with around four million members, is the largest branch of government. Discuss at least three groups that make up this branch.

*Use pages 76–77 to answer question 5.*

5. Copy and complete the chart by giving a description of the department and its importance to the United States.

DEPARTMENT	DESCRIPTION	IMPORTANCE
Homeland Security		
Health & Human Services		
Justice Department		
State Department		

*Use pages 78–79 to answer question 6 in complete sentences.*

6. How does the president influence lawmaking?

*Use pages 80–81 to answer question 7 in complete sentences.*

7. Based on the descriptions, explain how the FCC and EPA have an impact on your everyday life.

*Use pages 82–83 to answer questions 8–9 in complete sentences.*

8. Explain how judicial review is related to checks and balances.
9. Describe the types of cases heard in federal courts.

**Use pages 84–85 to answer question 10 in complete sentences.**

10. Explain how the system of checks and balances ensures the fundamental principle of limited government.

**Use pages 86–87 to answer questions 11–12 in complete sentences.**

11. What is the difference between an expressed and an implied legislative power?  
12. How can individuals and special-interest groups participate in the policymaking process?

---

# Apply Your Learning

- 1. The structure of the U.S. government can be explained by determining cause-and-effect relationships.** Examine the following cause-and-effect example stemming from one event.

*Example:*

CAUSE	EVENT	EFFECT
Debates between the Federalists and anti-Federalists about the Constitution's specific limits on government power	Bill of Rights added to the United States Constitution	Individual rights are guaranteed. State and federal governments cannot infringe upon those individual rights.

Following the model above, create a cause-and-effect chart for each event listed below:

- A system of checks and balances was created.
- Congress was given the power to tax.
- Article I, Section 8, the necessary and proper clause, was written.

- 2. Virginia has 13 seats in Congress, two in the Senate and 11 in the House of Representatives.** Analyze the Virginia Congressional District Map found on page 214 and answer the following questions:

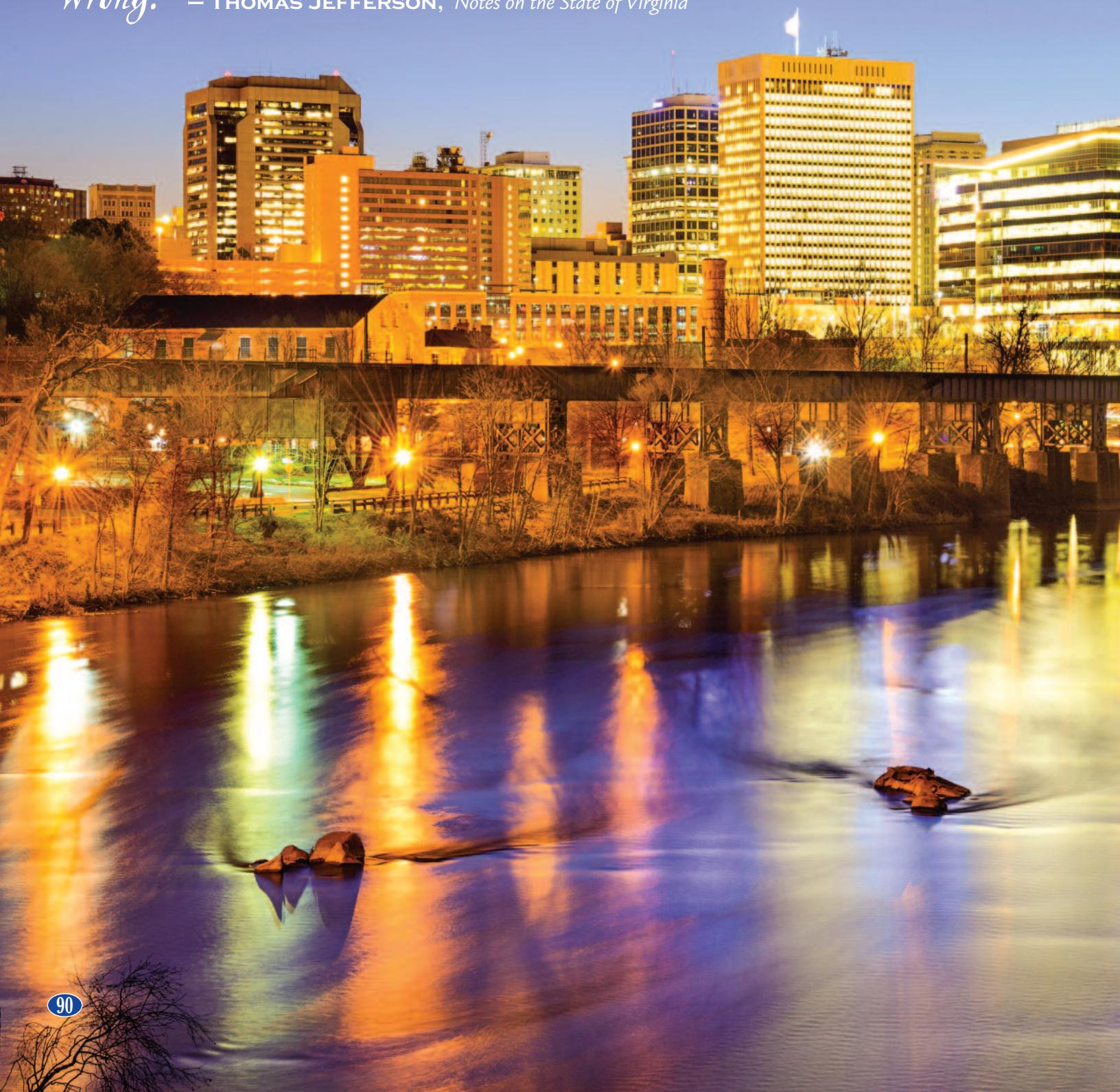
- In which congressional district do you live?
  - Does your congressional district have an odd or notable shape or size? Why do you think that might be?
  - What type of area (geographic and economic) do you live in? Describe particular concerns the constituents in your area might have as a result of the location.
  - What would be an example of a law your congressional district might be in favor of? Against? Research your U.S. representative. With which political party is he/she affiliated? Why do you think people in your district elected someone from that political party?
- Prepare a two-minute speech to educate your family about your U.S. representative. In your speech, summarize what you learned and use content-specific vocabulary.

---

## Imagine...

Imagine you are qualified to hold a position within the federal government. Which position would you most like to have: president, representative, senator, or Supreme Court justice? Why would you choose that job? What qualifications would you need? What would you have the power to do? Describe three issues that would be important to you.

*“Ignorance is preferable to error, and he is less remote from the truth who believes nothing, than he who believes what is wrong.”* — THOMAS JEFFERSON, *Notes on the State of Virginia*

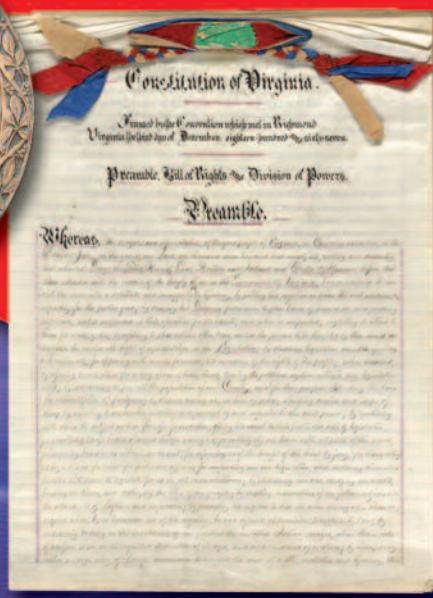


*Richmond, our state capital, glows at dusk on a crisp winter's day.*



HOW  
VIRGINIA WORKS

# OUR COMMONWEALTH



*The form of government of  
the Commonwealth of  
Virginia is established by  
the Virginia Constitution.*

*In a General Convention,  
and Holden at the Capitol, in the City of  
on Monday the sixth day of May, one thousand  
and seventy six, and continued, by Adjournment,  
of the following.*

*A Constitution, or form of Government,  
agreed to and resolved upon by the Delegates and Representatives  
of the several Counties and Corporations of Virginia.*

*Whereas George the Third, King of Great Britain and*



*American democracy was born in the meeting halls of Virginia.*

## Virginia Led the Way

Virginia is a state of many firsts—from Jamestown, the first permanent English colony in the Americas, to the House of Burgesses, the first democratically elected legislative body in English North America. The Virginia General Assembly is the oldest continuous lawmaking group in America. Our state has a long and proud tradition.

*Thomas Jefferson's  
Monticello*



### FIRST THINGS FIRST

There was one very big first. During the dawn of our new American republic, Virginia's leaders stepped up to guide the fragile union of states on a path to democracy. New ideas were discussed and, sometimes, argued over. And in this exciting atmosphere, Virginia became the first state to adopt its own constitution. The **Virginia Constitution** would greatly impact the Constitution of the United States.

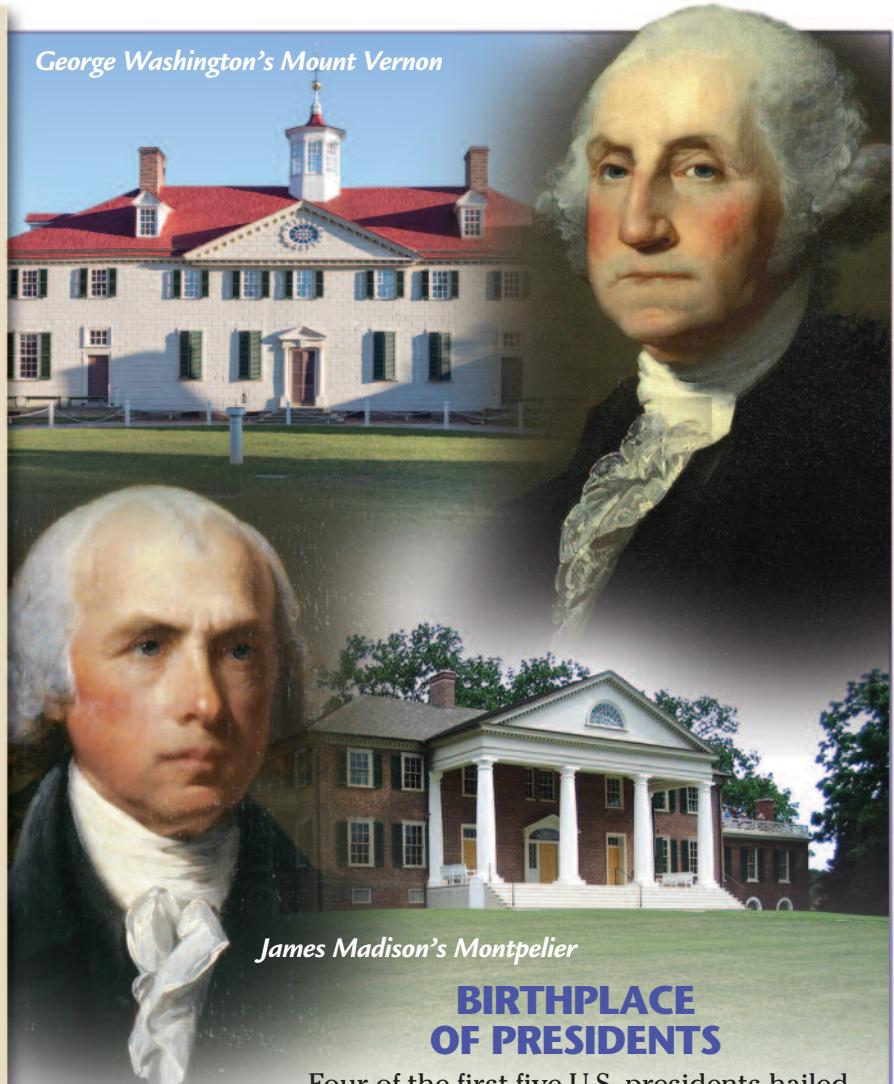
*"We therefore, the Delegates and Representatives of the good People of Virginia, having maturely considered the Premises, and viewing with great concern the deplorable condition to which this once happy Country must be reduced, unless some regular adequate Mode of civil Polity is speedily adopted, and in Compliance with a Recommendation of the General Congress, do ordain and declare the future Form of Government of Virginia..."*

**—THE CONSTITUTION OF VIRGINIA June 29, 1776**

*Virginia's seal celebrates our freedom. Our state's motto, "Thus always to tyrants," shows Virtue with her foot on Tyranny.*



*George Washington's Mount Vernon*



*James Madison's Montpelier*

## BIRTHPLACE OF PRESIDENTS

Four of the first five U.S. presidents hailed from Virginia, and Virginians took center stage in the early days of our brand-new national government. Thomas Jefferson's Declaration of Independence, drawn in large part from Virginian George Mason's Declaration of Rights, set us on the road to independence. Virginians, led by James Madison, were instrumental in writing the United States Constitution and the Bill of Rights—which were both based on documents that were already in use in Virginia.

## A TIME UNLIKE ANY OTHER

Try to imagine what it must have been like in those early days—all the excitement, the energy, and the enthusiasm. The people who laid the foundations for our freedom and our American way of life are owed a great debt of gratitude.

Over the next two centuries, these lofty ideals would be tested. Difficult times would sometimes overwhelm our state. But the ideals of our state's great thinkers still live on—tested by time, yet still enduring.

*Legislative, executive, and judicial powers are separated at the state level of government.*



*The Virginia Capitol, designed by Thomas Jefferson and completed in 1788, has served as a model for countless other important buildings in America.*

## THE GENERAL ASSEMBLY: THE LEGISLATIVE BRANCH

- This is a bicameral legislature. The two chambers are the House of Delegates and the Senate.



The **House of Delegates** has 100 members. Each delegate is elected for a two-year term from districts across the state. Each delegate represents about 80,000 Virginians.

The **Senate** has 40 members. Senators serve for a four-year term, and all senators' terms start and end at the same time. A senator represents about 200,000 Virginians.

# Virginia's Government

*Our state has a lofty goal:  
to be recognized as the best-managed state in the nation.*

The majestic Capitol building is the heart and soul of the **Commonwealth of Virginia**. Our state is one of only four in the United States that uses the term “commonwealth” to describe itself. It means that the prime concern of Virginia’s leaders is protecting the common “wealth,” meaning the well-being of all its citizens.

## A THREE-WAY SPLIT

How is our state governed? Much like the United States Constitution, the Virginia Constitution divides control between three different branches. The legislative branch writes the laws; the executive branch, led by the governor, carries out the laws; and the judicial branch makes sure those laws are upheld.

Our state’s system of government has a lot in common with the federal government, but it also has some differences. For example, Virginia Supreme Court justices serve for 12-year terms, not life. Our governors cannot serve more than one four-year term at a time, so there are no consecutive terms. But despite the differences, the bottom line is the same—helping the citizens of Virginia to thrive as they pursue life, liberty, and happiness.



The Governor's Mansion in Richmond sits near the Capitol.

## THE COURT SYSTEM: THE JUDICIAL BRANCH

- Four levels of courts of law protect the citizens of our state.

Our state **Supreme Court** has the last word on decisions being appealed from the lower courts (unless a ruling by that court goes to the U.S. Supreme Court).

The **Court of Appeals** rules on disputed verdicts from circuit courts and district courts.

There are **circuit courts** in each city and county. Circuit courts are trial courts and hear all types of major cases.

**District courts** deal with things like small claims and traffic violations. **Juvenile and domestic relations courts** deal with teenage offenders and family issues.

### SUPREME COURT

A chief justice and 6 justices.  
Located in Richmond.

### COURT OF APPEALS

11 judges. Located in Richmond.

### CIRCUIT COURTS

31 different locations

### DISTRICT COURTS

32 different locations

### JUVENILE/FAMILY COURTS

32 different locations

## THE GOVERNOR'S OFFICE: THE EXECUTIVE BRANCH

- Virginia's governor, like the nation's president, heads the executive branch.
- Elected for one four-year term.
- Appoints a Cabinet.



Governor Terry McAuliffe (2014–2018) takes to the sky to study a rail accident.

Virginia's **lieutenant governor** and **attorney general** are also elected for a four-year term to help run this branch. Since they are elected separately, it is not uncommon to have a governor from one party and an attorney general and/or lieutenant governor from another party.

A Cabinet with 12 departments helps with the work of running the state.

The City of Chesapeake's modern circuit court offices.



*The Constitution of the United States of America establishes the principle of federalism, which is the division of power between the states and the national government.*

*The expansion of the national government's powers into areas traditionally reserved to the states has altered the relationship of states to the national government.*

## Word to Know

### ► **federalism** (fed-ur-uh-liz-um)

A way to distribute power in government between a central authority and a state

*The Federalists aimed for dual federalism. Picture a cake with two layers. One belongs to the federal government and the other to the states. These days we seem to have more of a marble cake!*



*"If men were angels, no government would be necessary. If angels were to govern men, neither external nor internal controls on government would be necessary. In framing a government which is to be administered by men over men, the great difficulty lies in this: you must first enable the government to control the governed; and in the next place, oblige it to control itself."*

—THE FEDERALIST PAPERS

*The relationship between the states and the federal government has always been complicated.*

# The Federalists: Sharing the Power

Soon after the Constitutional Convention finished its work in 1787, James Madison and two friends, Alexander Hamilton and John Jay, wrote a series of essays to convince their fellow Americans to support ratification by the states. They published the collection as *The Federalist*. Today it is known as *The Federalist Papers*—a powerful effort to explain their ideas for America's future.

## DIVIDING THE POWER

Our U.S. political system evolved from a philosophy called **federalism**. Madison and his colleagues believed that they had divided power in a way that kept the entire nation safe but allowed each state to keep its unique identity.

Our national government has been given very specific powers in the Constitution. There are things that only it can and should do. Take foreign policy. You would not want 50 separate states trying to negotiate a peace treaty with a foreign country! The framers were also mindful of states' rights—for example, states are responsible for public education. They decide what students should be taught. But sometimes tensions arise when federal mandates require a state to take action on clean air, clean water, or solid waste disposal, and pay for it out of state funds.

## AS THE BILL OF RIGHTS SAYS...

...in the 10th Amendment, "*The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.*" That means that some power belongs to the federal government and some lies with the state. Often both the federal and state governments have similar powers. Shared power between the national and state governments is called **concurrent power**. Both federal and state police can arrest criminals. Both build roads. Both collect taxes. Both operate court systems. Both work to protect your health and safety and both can write laws trying to do exactly that.

# Nation & State

## SOME COMPARISONS



EXCLUSIVE FEDERAL POWERS



### MINT COINS & PRINT MONEY



### FOREIGN TRADE & INTERSTATE COMMERCE

Regulating interstate commerce is one of the most important powers exercised by Congress.

### FOREIGN POLICY



### MAINTAIN AN ARMED FORCES

*The defense of our nation and its citizens is foremost.*

### RUN A POST OFFICE



### COLLECT TAXES



CONCURRENT POWERS (BOTH)



### MAKE LAWS



### OVERSEE PUBLIC HEALTH & SAFETY

### HAVE COURT SYSTEMS

### PROVIDE FOR THE COMMON GOOD

### PUBLIC SAFETY



State troopers and snowplows for interstate highways are just a small part of this division.



### DRIVER'S & OTHER LICENSES

Teachers, hairdressers, and other professionals need licenses to do their jobs.



### CONDUCT ELECTIONS

Each state decides its own voting process, including what the ballot looks like.



Public schools and state universities are guided by each state.

### STATE POWERS



*The expansion of the national government's powers into areas traditionally reserved to the states has altered the relationship of states to the national government.*

# Federalism in Action

*Sharing power between nation and states is a balancing act.*

## DIVIDING THE POWER

Think about America at the time the Constitution was written. Back then, most Americans lived and died within a 30-mile radius. Local or state government was the *only* government people really knew. Most had little or no dealings with the federal government.

All that has changed. The U.S. Supreme Court can intervene by using the U.S. Constitution to overturn discriminatory state laws.



Marriage is one example. States grant marriage licenses, but, in 1967, citing the Equal Protection Clause of the 14th Amendment, the court ruled that states could not outlaw marriage between a white person and an African American. In 2015, the court ruled that states could not prevent same-sex couples from being wed.

## ACROSS STATE LINES

From educational mandates to highway safety to political elections—there are *many* places where national and state governments overlap and sometimes clash. Trade is one of the biggest.

The Constitution gave Congress the power to regulate interstate and international commerce. Trade within a state was outside of the federal government's power. But what exactly is *commerce*? Who owns a river or a bay? Where do you draw the line between trade inside a state and trade that crosses state lines?

Suppose you owned a factory in Virginia in the 1930s that sold its product only within the state borders. How could Congress tell you what to do? Here's how. Citing the **Commerce Clause**, Congress wrote a law that said workers had the right to form labor unions. In 1938 they passed a law forbidding child labor. Congress also set maximum work hours and minimum wage standards.

Even civil rights violations fell under the Commerce Clause. When Congress passed the Civil Rights Act in 1964, a lawsuit swiftly challenged it. The case went to the Supreme Court, which cited the Commerce Clause as a way to forbid racial discrimination in motels and restaurants used by travelers from other states.

*"Some men look at constitutions with sanctimonious reverence, and deem them... too sacred to be touched. They ascribe to the preceding age a wisdom more than human, and suppose what they did to be beyond amendment. I know that age well; I belonged to it and labored with it.*

*But I know also, that laws and institutions must go hand in hand with the progress of the human mind."*

—THOMAS JEFFERSON

## THE POWER OF THE PURSE

Critics say an elastic interpretation of the Commerce Clause allows Congress to exert undue control over a state.

The "power of the purse" is a way to make a state do something it might not want to. For example, when Congress wanted to raise the drinking age to 21 from 18 to reduce auto accidents caused by young drivers, they threatened to withhold federal highway funds from states that did not change their state laws.

**Title IX**, a law that gave girls as many opportunities to play a sport as boys had, used the threat of cuts to schools that received federal funds if they did not comply.

Quality-of-life and equal opportunities in school, on the job, and in the voting booth—all have been required by the federal government and then enacted by the states.

## *Yosemite—the beginning of the park system*

### THE NATIONAL PARKS

John Muir was a remarkable man. He gloried in nature and shared his passion for the outdoors through his writings. One of his readers was President Lincoln. In the midst of the Civil War, Congress took time to pass the Yosemite Grant Act to create the very first protected park in America. Eight years later, a new type of park was created—a national park.

Thanks to an act of Congress, spectacular Yellowstone became America's first official national park. In 1890 Yosemite, too, became a national park, and in 1916 Congress established the National Park Service. Today 59 national parks, as well as hundreds of national monuments and national historical parks, celebrate America's most special places.



### VIRGINIA'S STATE PARKS

In 1936 Virginia opened six state parks in some of our state's most splendid areas. Today there are 36 state parks in Virginia, and no Virginian lives more than an hour's drive from the nearest one. There are lush river valleys, sacred battlefields, historic farms, eerie land formations, and pristine seashores. Each park allows Virginians to see the state in a way that would make John Muir happy. Find your nearest park and visit it often!

# For Body & Mind

**STATE AND NATION TOGETHER**



*Beginning in 1872, Virginia had two land-grant colleges, one for white men, and the other for black men and black women. Today the state's two land-grant schools are Virginia Tech and Virginia State University.*

### STATES AND THE SCHOOLS

When it came to education, state and local governments looked after the schools. Until well after the Civil War, most students ended their schooling by 8th grade, but all that began to change when the federal government stepped in. By the early 1900s, Congress was urging the teaching of home economics and agriculture in a new kind of school—high school! In the 1960s the federal government passed laws requiring equal opportunities for all students.

### A NEW IDEA FOR EDUCATION

Until 1862, colleges in America were mostly for white males. That year, Congress approved legislation to create another level of schooling. Federal land grants of thousands of acres were offered free to each state if that state would build a college. There were three goals. Higher education should be available to the working class, not just the wealthy. Eventually, these colleges would be open to all people—black and white, male and female. Useful subjects, such as engineering and farming skills, would be taught, not just traditional subjects like ancient Greek or Latin. Later on, research and public outreach became key parts of what the land-grant colleges did, sharing their discoveries with people across the state so that everyone could benefit.

Members of the Virginia General Assembly are elected to make state laws.

Citizens learn the lawmaking process and influence public policy through direct participation and/or simulation.

The lawmaking process requires collaboration and compromise.



### GENERAL ASSEMBLY DETAILS

- **MISSION:** Senators and members of the House of Delegates are there to write laws and take action in response to problems or issues.
- Bills can originate in either the Senate or the House of Delegates.
- The state constitution specifies that the General Assembly meets annually. Its regular session is a maximum of 60 days in even-numbered years and 30 days in odd-numbered years, unless two-thirds of the members of both houses vote to extend it. The governor can also call for a special session if there is an emergency.
- Sessions begin on the second Wednesday in January, but there is a lot of work to do all year long. It's important to get all Virginians involved in the process!

## AT WORK IN THE VIRGINIA GENERAL ASSEMBLY



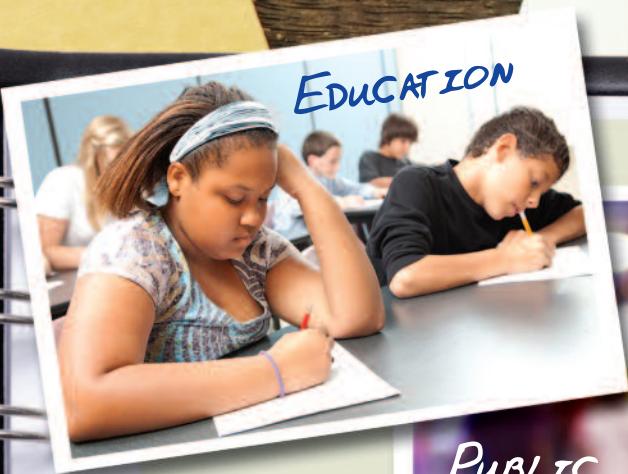
MET WITH A CONSTITUENT WITH A GREAT IDEA FOR A BILL. WE ALL LOVE FIREWORKS, BUT NOT THE NOISE LATE AT NIGHT. PROPOSE A BAN ON FIREWORKS AFTER MIDNIGHT.

### LET'S MAKE THIS A BILL!!

1. PRESENT THE IDEA TO BE DRAFTED INTO A BILL.
2. THE BILL IS READY TO BE SENT TO A COMMITTEE. INVITE THE PUBLIC TO COMMENT AT THE MEETING.
3. FIRST READING! THE BILL IS UP FOR DEBATE ON THE FLOOR OF THE HOUSE.
4. SECOND READING! THE BILL IS ON THE CALENDAR. ANY MORE CHANGES? MAKE THEM NOW.
5. THIRD READING! TIME FOR A VOTE! THE BILL PASSED! NOW ON TO THE OTHER HOUSE FOR THEIR VOTE.
6. SAME PROCEDURE IN THE OTHER HOUSE. A BILL WILL GO TO COMMITTEE, HAVE THREE READINGS, THEN A VOTE.

notes/notes

HOPEFULLY THE FIREWORKS BILL WILL GO TO THE GOVERNOR FOR HIS SIGNATURE IN THIS YEAR'S SESSION. SOON THE BILL WILL BECOME A LAW! VIRGINIANS CAN SLEEP EASY!



EDUCATION



PUBLIC  
HEALTH



ENVIRONMENT

## IMPORTANT AREAS FOR THE GOOD OF THE STATE

- Some key issues to deal with at the state level.

**EDUCATION** – We need to make sure our citizens have the skills needed to do well in today's economy.

**GOAL:** Establish minimum standards for all local schools.

**PUBLIC HEALTH** – Protecting the health of all Virginians is vital.

**GOALS:** Ensure food and water safety, prepare for emergencies, and provide health services for those in need.

**ENVIRONMENT** – We must look after our natural resources.

**GOAL:** Improve the water quality in the Chesapeake Bay.

**BUDGET** – How do we allocate money to pay for state programs?

**GOAL:** Approve a biennial (two year) budget after it is proposed by the governor.

**REVENUE** – Where will we get the money to pay for all this?

**GOAL:** Look into raising taxes, cutting spending, or finding other sources of revenue to balance the budget.

## IT'S MEETING TIME

Members of the General Assembly often deal with lobbyists, who are paid to represent an organization, business, or other group, in the hopes of persuading a lawmaker to vote a certain way.

Meeting with lobbyists is very much a part of the legislative process, and Virginia law requires them to register with the Office of the Secretary of the Commonwealth and file annual reports of their activities. Virginia law also restricts the amount and types of gifts lobbyists may give to Virginia officials.

Meeting with voters is another part of the job. Helping the people they represent is often the best part of a day in the life of Virginia lawmakers.

Senior Director  
Government Relations

**LOBBY LINKS**

Mel Harris  
Director, Government Affairs

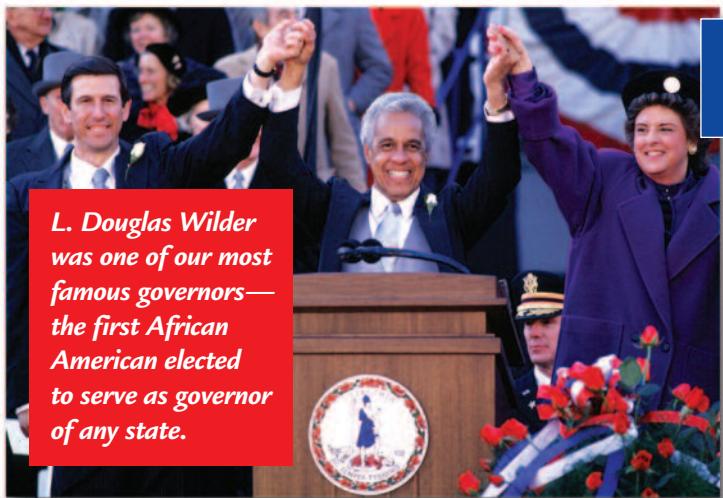
We get things done!

999-888-7777 ext. 99

[Mel@lobbylinks.com](mailto:Mel@lobbylinks.com)

DC 20001

101



L. Douglas Wilder was one of our most famous governors—the first African American elected to serve as governor of any state.

The executive branch of the Virginia state government enforces the laws and plays a key role in the policymaking process.

*Ever since there was a small colony at Jamestown, there has been a governor. Back then that person was appointed by the king. These days, our governor is chosen by “We the People.”*

# Our Governor

The president of the United States heads the executive branch of the federal government. The governor of Virginia does many of the same things

at the state level. Keeping Virginia’s government running smoothly is complicated. Some of a governor’s responsibilities are clearly set forth in the Virginia Constitution. Others arise in the day-to-day doing of the job. As head of the executive branch, the governor influences policymaking. The governor proposes a biennial budget (one that will last for two years) and often proposes new legislation. The governor can also approve or veto bills, or specific parts (line items) of bills.

## Hard at Work A GOVERNOR’S TASKS

### CHIEF OF STATE

- *Ceremonial head of the state*

We all want to keep Virginia safe and prosperous. Making sure our state works as efficiently as possible is the governor’s main responsibility.

### CHIEF CITIZEN

- *Representative of all Virginians*

When important people visit the state, the governor will meet with them. In difficult times, the governor is there to comfort and reassure us.

### CHIEF LEGISLATOR



- *Proposer of the legislative agenda*
- The governor prepares a state budget, can propose new laws, and can veto a bill (including any items in the budget the legislature passes).

### CHIEF EXECUTIVE

- *Head of the executive branch*

Supported by a handpicked staff, a governor is in charge of the executive branch.



### PARTY CHIEF

- *Republican? Democrat?*

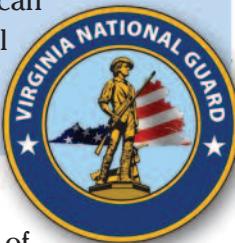
The governor is the leader of the state’s political party he or she represents. A governor works to help others from the same party get elected to office.



### COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF

- *Head of the armed forces of the Commonwealth of Virginia*

In times of danger or disaster, the governor can call in the National Guard to help restore order.



### THE GOVERNOR’S CABINET

With over eight million citizens to care about, the governor needs help. There is a lieutenant governor, who presides over the Senate and casts the deciding vote when there is a tie, and an attorney general who serves as the state’s head lawyer and legal expert.

The governor also has a Cabinet of advisors. Some of the 12 Cabinet departments have the same names as departments in the federal government while others are different. Which state Cabinet departments might be useful to the entire nation?

# The Cabinet

## EXECUTIVE BRANCH DEPARTMENTS

Twelve departments oversee and enforce the laws of our state. They create regulations to monitor aspects of business and the economy and provide services to the citizens of Virginia.

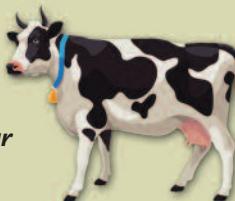
### ADMINISTRATION

- Looks after all state-owned properties, handles benefits for state employees, and also oversees annual elections.



### AGRICULTURE & FORESTRY

- Virginia's two largest industries bring in over 70 billion dollars a year and employ over 400,000 people.



### COMMERCE & TRADE

- Aims to make Virginia a great place for businesses to start, grow bigger, and prosper.



### COMMONWEALTH

- Nearly 4,000 people serve on Virginia's boards and other state businesses.



### EDUCATION

- Sets standards for all public K–12 schools, junior colleges, 4-year colleges, and universities.



### FINANCE

- Handles the financial transactions of the Commonwealth, from collecting taxes and paying bills to distributing funds to cities and counties.



### HEALTH & HUMAN RESOURCES

- Provides help to people with disabilities, older Virginians, low-income working families and their children, and more.



### NATURAL RESOURCES

- Clean air, pure water, and the preservation of our environment are of utmost importance.



### PUBLIC SAFETY & HOMELAND SECURITY

- Keeps the public aware, providing education and training, and being prepared for emergencies and disasters.



### TECHNOLOGY

- Uses computers and technology to simplify government operations, improve public services, and help the economy.



### TRANSPORTATION

- From seaports, airports, rail lines, and buses to issuing driver's licenses—if it has to do with boats, cars, trains or planes, this department deals with it.



### VETERANS & DEFENSE AFFAIRS

- The employment, health care, and education needs of our veterans are handled here.



### Room for Debate

Virginia is the only state in the nation that limits a governor's time in office to one four-year term. If he or she wishes to run again, four years must pass. Why do you think the state's constitution mandates this? Do you agree or disagree, and why?



# Chapter 5 Review

*Use pages 92–93 to answer question 1 in complete sentences.*

- What document established Virginia's state government and later influenced the writing of the Constitution of the United States?

*Use pages 94–95 to answer questions 2–3.*

- Copy and complete the chart about Virginia's state government.

BRANCH	POWERS AND PEOPLE
Legislative	
Executive	
Judicial	

- Write a paragraph comparing and contrasting Virginia's government to the government of the United States.

*Use pages 96–97 to answer questions 4–5.*

- Use your own words to define *federalism* in a complete sentence.
- Copy each example below. On the lines, write an “S” for state, “F” for federal, “ or “C” for concurrent to show who has each power.

- \_\_\_\_\_ Send troops into Syria
- \_\_\_\_\_ Change the age for a learner’s permit to drive a car to age 16
- \_\_\_\_\_ Set up a meeting with the ambassador of Chile
- \_\_\_\_\_ Raise taxes
- \_\_\_\_\_ Plow interstates when it snows

*Use pages 98–99 to answer question 6.*

- Explain how the federal and state governments share some responsibilities.

*Use pages 100–101 to answer question 7.*

- Create a flow chart or diagram that shows how a bill becomes a law in Virginia.

*Use pages 102–103 to answer question 8.*

- Copy and complete the graphic organizer about the roles of the governor.

ROLE	RESPONSIBILITY
Chief of State	
Chief Executive	
Chief Citizen	

# Apply Your Learning

1. **The governor of Virginia must carry out many formal and informal powers and fill several roles.** Visit the official Commonwealth of Virginia executive branch website to learn about recent news and events with which the governor was involved. Follow this example to chart the weekly activities of the governor of Virginia.

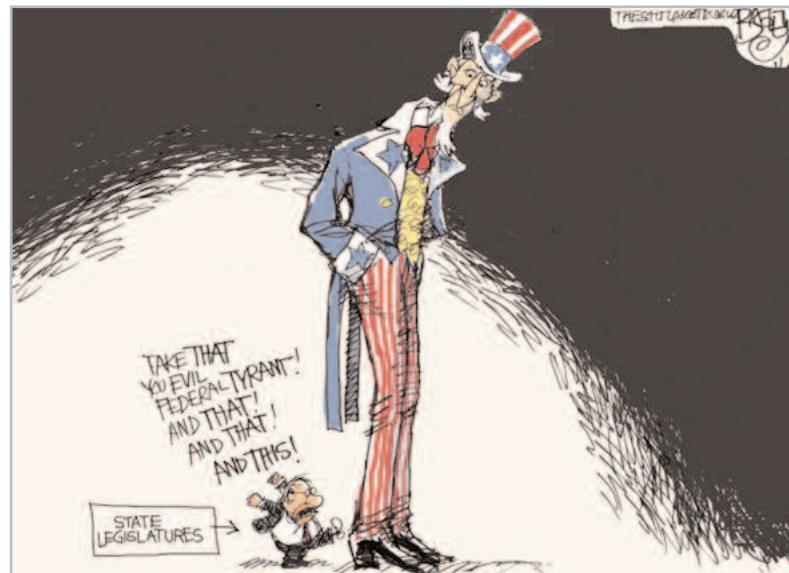
DATE	ACTIVITY OR EVENT	ROLE
1/29/16	Gov. McAuliffe announced a bipartisan deal to keep Virginia communities safe.	Chief Legislator

Create a color-coded graph or pie chart that shows which role the governor fills most frequently. Analyze your data. Explain why you conclude that role occurs more than others.

2. **The expansion of the national government's powers into areas traditionally reserved for the states has altered the relationship of states to the national government.**

Analyze this political cartoon by answering the questions provided.

- What is the source and who created it?
- What do you see? Explain any symbols or actions.
- Whose point of view does it represent?
- What is the artist's message?
- What event could have prompted the artist to create this cartoon?



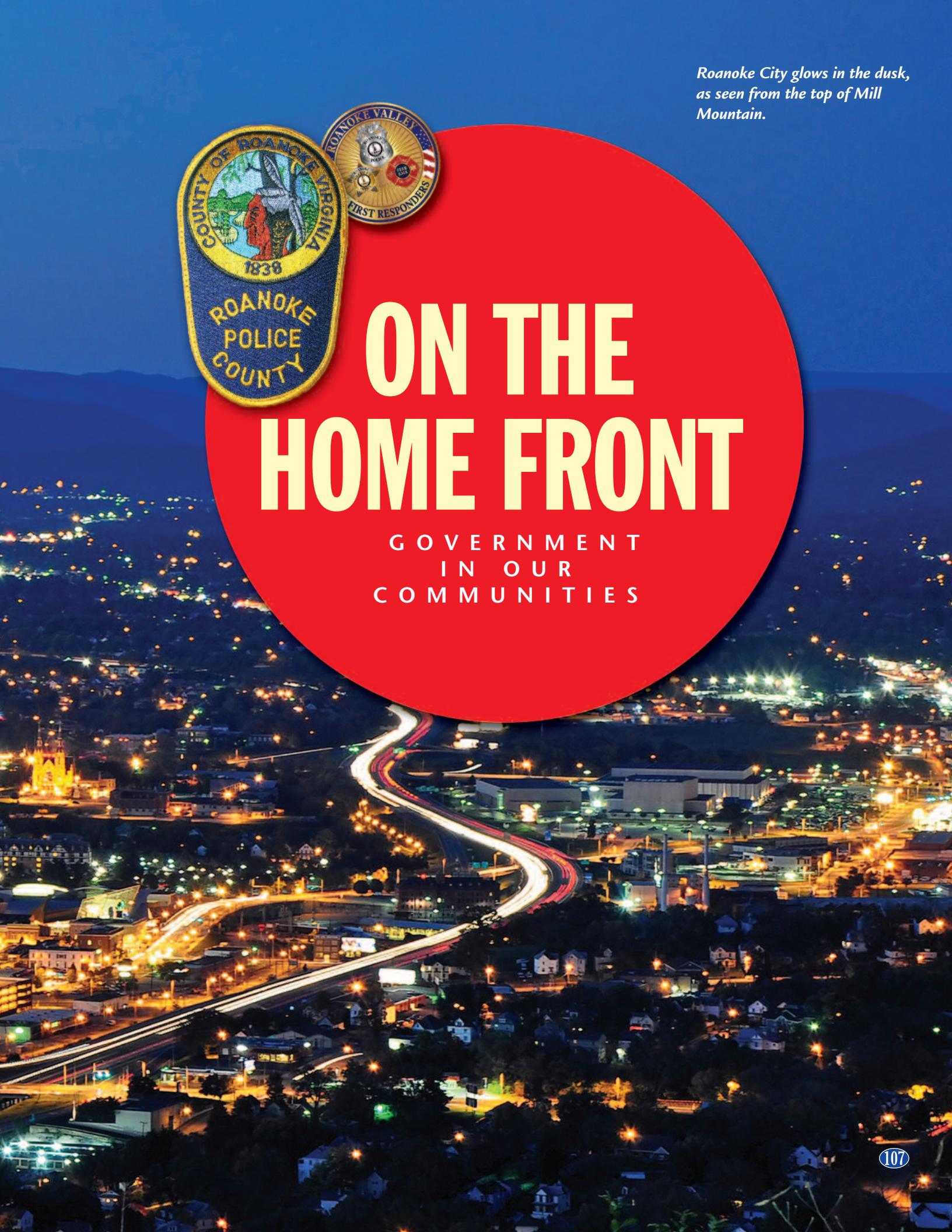
*Doing the Nullification Rag* by Pat Bagley, Salt Lake Tribune, 2/3/11

## Imagine...

**Imagine that you just moved from Virginia to another state.** Refer to page 97 to determine the areas that are within a state's control. Create a checklist that illustrates what laws you should be aware of and steps you need to take to be a productive citizen of your new state.

*“We cannot seek achievement for ourselves and forget about progress and prosperity for our community.... Our ambitions must be broad enough to include the aspirations and needs of others, for their sakes and for our own.” – CÉSAR CHÁVEZ, Union leader*





*Roanoke City glows in the dusk,  
as seen from the top of Mill  
Mountain.*



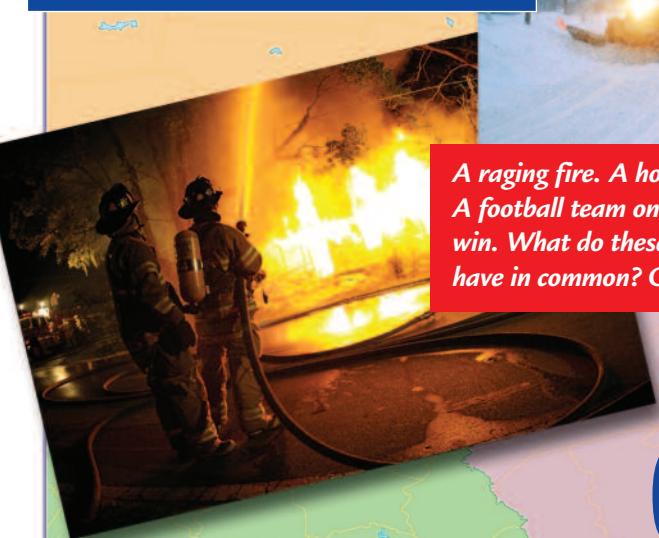
# ON THE HOME FRONT

GOVERNMENT  
IN OUR  
COMMUNITIES

*The units of local government in Virginia are created by the General Assembly.*

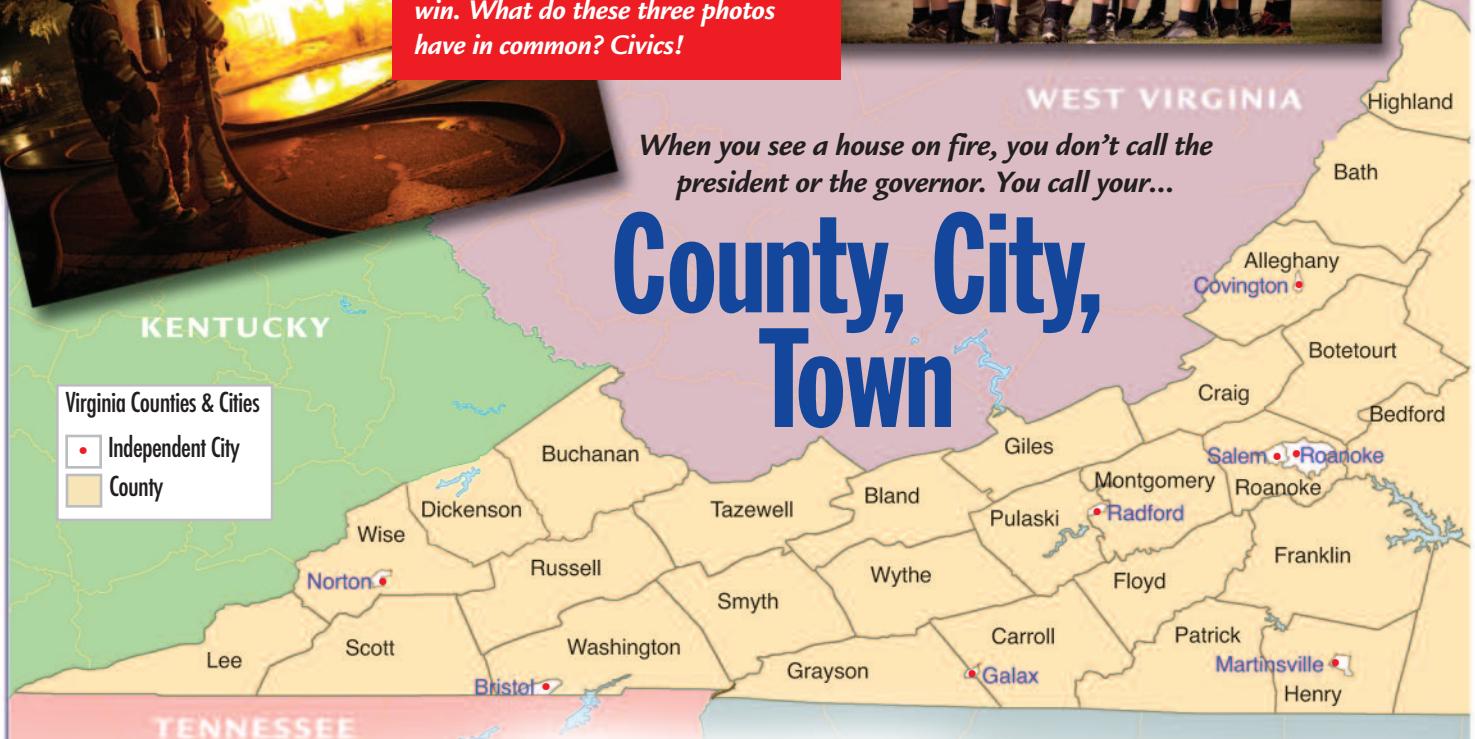
*Local governments exercise legislative, executive, and judicial powers.*

*A raging fire. A howling blizzard. A football team on the verge of a big win. What do these three photos have in common? Civics!*



*When you see a house on fire, you don't call the president or the governor. You call your...*

# County, City, Town



Think about your life. Think about the things you do every day and the places you go. Now imagine your life without those things—no school, no ball fields, no library, no police or fire department. No parks. In many places, no water! Government at the local level affects your life every day.

## THE VIRGINIA WAY

Our state is divided in an unusual way. Like other states, we have lots of counties—95 of them to be exact! Counties divide a state into smaller sections. We also have “independent cities” that are separate from counties.

Independent cities can offer many of the same services that a county does, plus a few more, such as public transportation. There are 38 independent cities. It can get confusing because there are counties *and* independent cities with the same name, such as Fairfax, Franklin, Richmond, and Roanoke, but they are separate entities.

Local governments work the same way as the state and federal governments do. Those three branches you now know all about—legislative, executive, and judicial—help keep you safe and sound.

## Meeting Our Needs

### COUNTY/CITY SERVICES

- We depend on local governments for many of our basic needs.

To the right are some of the services that Hanover County offers its residents. How does your county or independent city compare? Find out!



## PUBLIC SCHOOLS



## POLICE



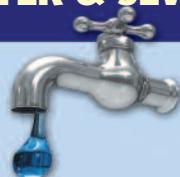
## FIRE & EMS



## LIBRARY



## WATER & SEWERS



## PARKS/RECREATION



## BUILDING PERMITS



## TRASH/RECYCLING



## ANIMAL CONTROL



*Counties, cities, and towns adopt and enforce ordinances to provide services for their residents.*

*Local governments exercise legislative, executive, and judicial powers.*

*The units of local government in Virginia are created by the General Assembly.*

# Here at Home

No matter where you live—in a county, independent city, or an **incorporated town**—there are people hard at work making things better for the community.

Each Virginia county has an elected **board of supervisors**. The number of board members varies from county to county. These people are elected to keep local governments running smoothly. They have legislative powers and can enact **ordinances** they believe will improve life in the county. They are also responsible for adopting an annual budget to pay for county services.

*Do you live in a big city, a small town, or something in between? They all have something in common!*



## Words to Know

► **incorporated** (in-cor-puh-ray-tid)  
*Having powers granted by the state and county to provide products or local services to citizens*

► **ordinance**  
(ore-din-inse)  
*A local law enacted by a town, city, or county*



## WHO LEADS?

Virginia's incorporated towns have an elected **town council**. Our independent cities have an elected **city council**. The number of people on these councils varies from place to place but both have legislative powers, much like the county board of supervisors. Council members can pass ordinances, and it is their job to adopt an annual budget. Town or city councils are usually headed by a **mayor** who is elected either directly by the voters or by the council members.

## SCHOOL DAYS—AND NIGHTS

One of the most important things a county or city must do is provide schools for its young people. With over 1,250,000 students in Virginia, education is a big task. Most Virginia counties and cities have an elected or appointed **school board**, which oversees the operation of its K–12 public schools.

What does a school board member do? Some tasks can be difficult, such as coming up with a balanced annual budget or keeping an eye on school spending. Board members help draft the school calendar and decide what textbooks and equipment to purchase. They might also decide if a school should be closed, due to declining enrollment, or if a new school is needed because of overcrowding or old age. But some of it is fun. They can set a vision for what their ideal school might be like and work toward making that dream a reality.

*Think about everything that goes into making a school, from the bricks to build it, to the staff to teach in it, to all the books and computers needed to learn. The school board is tasked with making Virginia's schools the best in the nation. Find out when your school board has meetings and attend!*

*Great Neck Middle School is one of many in the Virginia Beach City Public Schools Division.*



# Local Ordinances

KEEPING YOU SAFE

- Every county or city wants to protect its citizens and keep its streets clean, so local ordinances often focus on safety and health.

Local governments might mandate legislation for scoop-the-poop laws or ban scooters on downtown sidewalks. But it is not all “no” and “don’t.” They also provide fun events, such as Fourth of July fireworks.



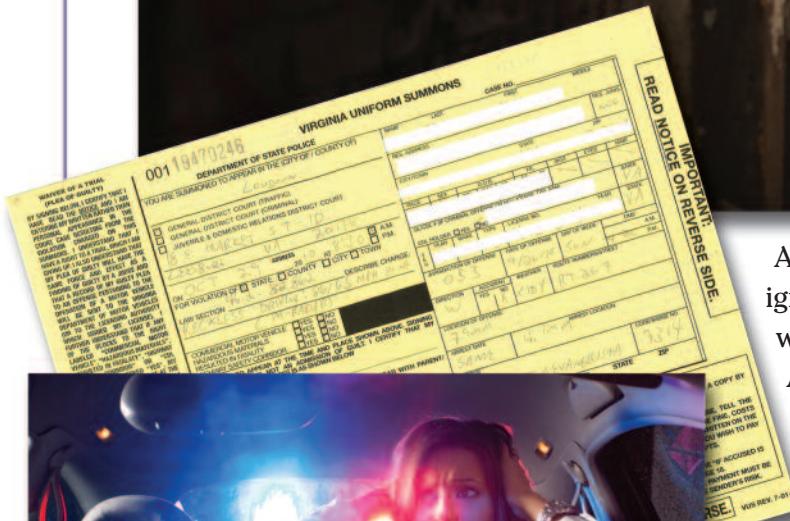
## ONE MORE IMPORTANT JOB

In some places, the county boards of supervisors or town and city councils meet only a few times a month, so the elected legislative branch hires an **administrator** or **manager** to oversee the day-to-day operations. These people make sure that things are getting done—that new ordinances are put into effect, local resources are cared for, and things are running efficiently. They also monitor the state government and present any newly passed legislation at the next meeting. Find out what type of local government you have. How many council or board members are there? Do you have a mayor? Find out when they meet, then go and see firsthand what takes place.

*State courts have jurisdiction over state laws.*

*From speeding tickets to serious crimes, there is plenty of drama in our state's courtrooms.*

# Virginia's Court System



**"License and registration, please."**  
*This woman is going to end up in district court.*

## Words to Know

### ► **civil suit**

*One person suing another person or business in hopes of getting a financial settlement to pay for damages*

### ► **felony** (fell-uh-nee)

*A very serious crime*

### ► **misdemeanors** (miss-duh-mean-urz)

*Small crimes that often result in the payment of a fine rather than jail time*



A stolen handbag taken at knifepoint. A stop sign ignored. Underage drinking. A dispute over shoddy workmanship. Trespassing. Disorderly conduct.

All across Virginia there are state courts where judicial disputes of all kinds will be heard.

## CIRCUIT COURTS=BIGGER CASES

Some cases go to trial. That means that a jury can be called to sit in judgment. The Virginia circuit courts are the trial courts for the state. Judges that sit "on the bench" in Virginia's circuit courts hear all sorts of cases. It might be a **civil suit** that involves a large amount of money, or a **felony**, such as a robbery. Sometimes **misdemeanors** are tried in these courts as well. The judges that hear the cases are appointed to their seats by the legislature and serve an eight-year term.

## DISTRICT COURTS=SMALLER CASES

There is a General District Court in each city and county in Virginia. General District Courts handle things like traffic violations, misdemeanors, and civil suits with claims of \$4,500 or less—perhaps a tenant suing a landlord for payment of medical bills because the front walk was not shoveled after a snowstorm and a fall led to a broken arm. Circuit courts *only* deal with larger sums of money. Sometimes a General District Court judge will hold the first hearings for more serious criminal cases that will then be tried in a circuit court.

## SMALL CLAIMS COURT= SETTLING FINANCIAL QUARRELS

Suppose an appliance repairperson comes to fix your broken washing machine. You are charged \$40, but when you put in your next load of laundry, disaster strikes! You call to complain only to hear, "Too bad! It worked when I left. You must have broken it again." What can you do?

Every dispute between people over money deserves the attention of a court, should the injured party wish it. For disputes over money up to \$5,000, many people go to **small claims court**. Small claims court judges try to help settle these conflicts. They might start by suggesting mediation. During this process, both parties will meet with a trained mediator in an effort to work things out. If they cannot reach an agreement, the case will go to trial.



*Learn more about  
the law! See Chapter 8 for an  
in-depth look at our nation's  
legal system.*

# Young People in Trouble

## JUVENILE JUSTICE

- *If you are under 18 and charged with a crime, you will usually be tried in a special court.*



### Word to Know

► **juvenile**

(joo-vin-ile)

*In legal terms, a person under the age of 18*

*On a day when school is closed, but the courts are open, ask an adult to take you to attend a district court session. Afterwards, write about your experience.*

There is a **juvenile and domestic relations district court** in each Virginia city and county. This court hears cases involving young people charged with a criminal or traffic offense. If a 16-year-old is caught with alcohol, he or she will end up here, charged with something called a *status offense*. These events are unlawful only because the persons who committed them are under age 18.

This court also handles family issues. When parents divorce, shared custody of the children or visitation rights will be resolved here. Any charge involving family matters will be dealt with in this kind of city or county court. Because these courts often deal with frightened youngsters, the atmosphere is more informal than the procedures at a circuit or district court.



Local governments exercise legislative, executive, and judicial powers

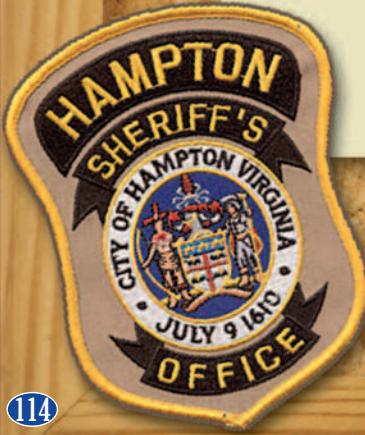
## COMMONWEALTH'S ATTORNEY

Where can victims of serious crimes get help?  
Commonwealth's Attorneys are there to help!

Due process and the Bill of Rights protect people accused of a crime. But what about the victims? Let's say that a man has broken into a jewelry store and stolen six diamond bracelets. He is caught, taken to jail, and given a court date. The victim—the store owner—does not have to hire a lawyer. The state will provide one.

There are 120 Commonwealth's Attorneys in Virginia, all supervising teams of lawyers who will go to court and try to convince a judge and a jury of the accused's guilt and put that person behind bars!

A county sheriff's biggest jobs are to watch over the jails, to keep the courthouses safe, to move prisoners, and to make sure documents for civil suits are processed correctly.



Jobs required  
Organic personality a must  
don't wait call HR today.  
Interviews Daily!  
**HELP WANTED!**

No E.  
Must  
team  
2 Year  
Needs  
for Inter  
Send qu

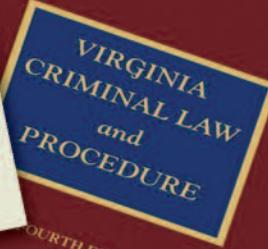
CALL:  
www.Jo

Fax:  
Loc in w  
me:  
e  
su

Our cities and counties depend on these key positions.

# Five Important Jobs

If you had to pick one, which office would you run for?



## SHERIFF

A sheriff is the chief law enforcement officer of a county or any area that does not have a police department. In places where there *is* a police department, sheriffs still have many responsibilities.

Jails are places where people charged with a serious crime await trial. If they are found guilty, they will go to a prison, which is watched over by a different group. Until then, sheriffs are responsible for a prisoner's safety.

Sheriffs do a lot more. People who have not paid their rent or who are very behind on their property taxes can be evicted from their homes. It is a sheriff's job to handle this. If property, such as a car or boat, is seized in a court action, the sheriff will hold an auction to sell it. Because there is *so* much to do, sheriffs can hire deputies to help.

All these positions are elected offices mandated by the Virginia Constitution.

Clerks of the circuit court serve for eight years. All the others serve a four-year term. All can run for re-election as many times as they like.

*Even in the quietest district courts, a lot of money changes hands in a courtroom. Fines are paid, judgments levied. This person is responsible for all the monies that pass through these county courts.*

## CLERK OF THE CIRCUIT COURT

Keeping track of all the financial and legal transactions of the court is a big job. There are unpaid fines and past-due fees owed to the court that must be collected. In addition to keeping track of all the court's records, and summoning people for jury duty, in some places, the clerk is called in to read verdicts. The clerk's office also handles questions about court hours and schedules. Because there is so much to keep track of, the clerk has a team of employees to help.



## COMMISSIONER OF REVENUE

TAX OFFICE

*Without this person, there would be no schools, parks, or police, because tax money makes all those things possible.*

A commissioner of revenue has a very complicated job. People pay taxes based on how much they earn and how much their property is worth. Income tax is easy to figure out. Property values are more difficult to calculate. This person determines how much residents and local businesses must pay in taxes each year.



## TREASURER

*Working closely with the commissioner of revenue, this person collects and spends the tax monies.*

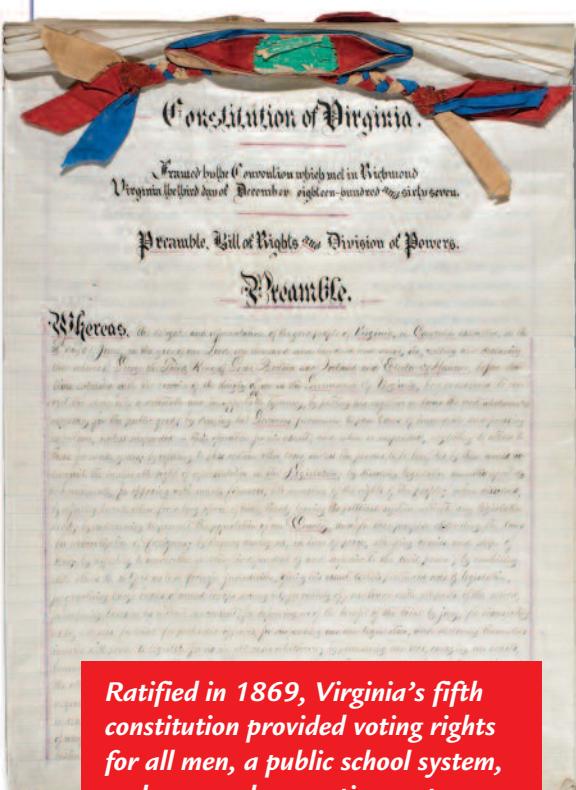
Think of a football team. A quarterback orchestrates the play and throws the ball. Another player receives it. The same thing happens here. The treasurer is the receiver of taxes—the keeper of all the money generated by the commissioner of revenue. After collecting the money, the treasurer must pay all the bills—salaries, equipment, and other costs—and safeguard what is left over.

*Local governments exercise legislative, executive, and judicial powers.*

*The authority of local governments in Virginia is derived from the state.*

*Citizens learn the lawmaking process and impact public policy through direct participation and/or simulation.*

*The lawmaking process requires collaboration and compromise.*



# It's the Law Here

*The link between Virginia's state government and your local government*

From the sandy shores of Virginia Beach on the eastern edge of the state to the rugged mountains of Lee County at the state's southwestern corner, there is a fine balance between the powers of the state and those of the counties and cities.

## LOOK TO THE CONSTITUTION

Virginia has had seven different state constitutions, and the current one has been amended many times. The one we use today was ratified in 1971, and it very carefully defines what local governments can and cannot do. While counties and cities work in much the same way, not all are given the same powers. Cities have charters listing their powers. Counties and cities help to make sure state laws and programs are being put into use.

What they do have in common is that every local government focuses on the people who live within its boundaries. People are the first priority. Local governments pay for their programs by **levying** taxes—collecting a combination of money from the state as well as local revenue, such as property and school taxes.

## BE A PART OF IT!

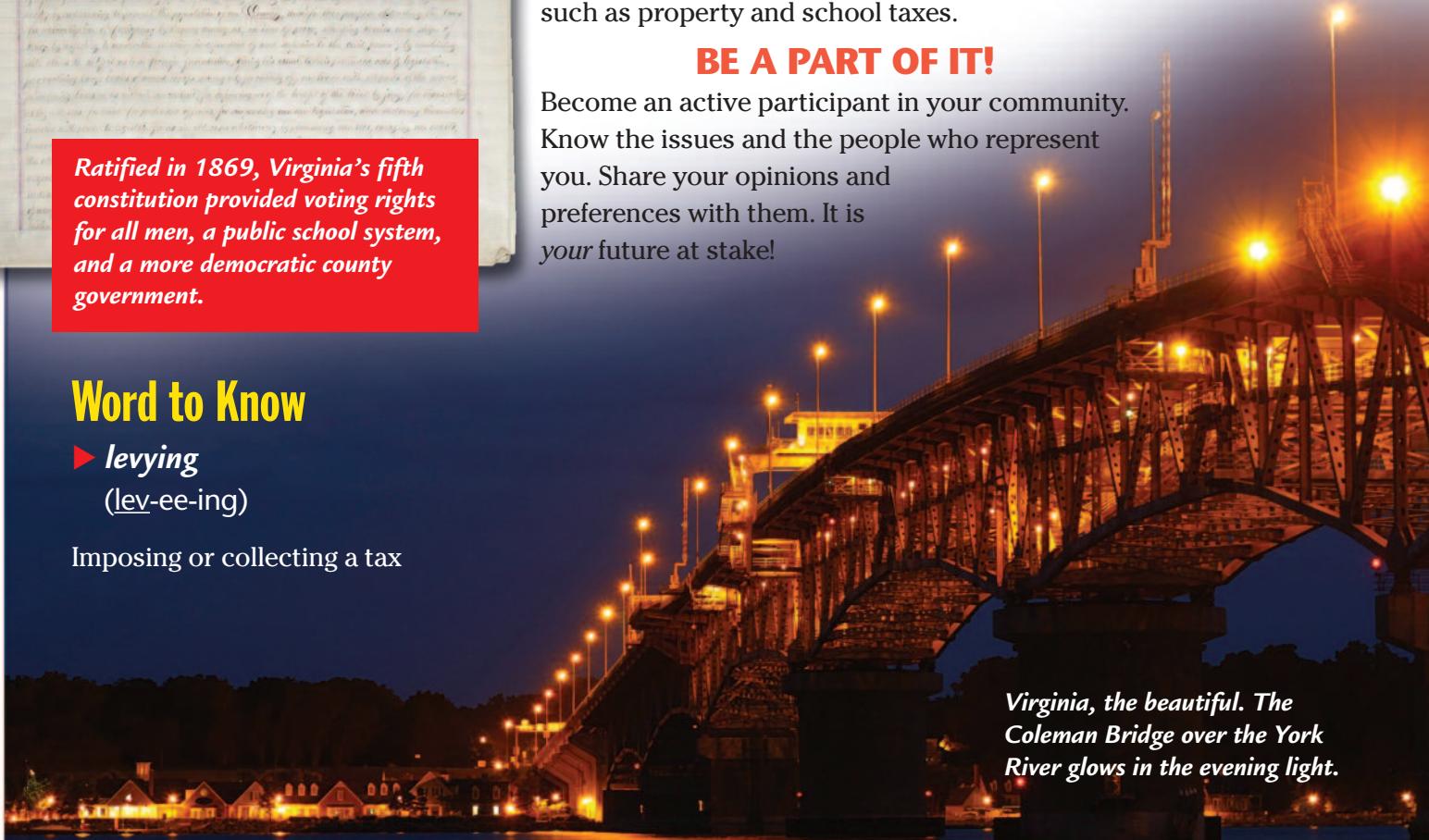
Become an active participant in your community. Know the issues and the people who represent you. Share your opinions and preferences with them. It is *your future at stake!*

## Word to Know

### ► **levying**

(lev-ee-ing)

Imposing or collecting a tax



*Virginia, the beautiful. The Coleman Bridge over the York River glows in the evening light.*

# Power on the Home Front

**LOCAL ORDINANCES  
AT WORK TO  
MAKE LIFE BETTER**

## PROMOTE PUBLIC HEALTH

- Working with at-risk babies, helping with substance abuse, health clinics, food banks, and more.



- From emergency services to animal control.



## PROMOTE PUBLIC SAFETY

## PROTECT THE ENVIRONMENT

- Precious waterways, fertile planting grounds—all need care.



- K-12 schools



## PROVIDE EDUCATION

## LEVY AND COLLECT TAXES

- Monies are put to use to provide services.



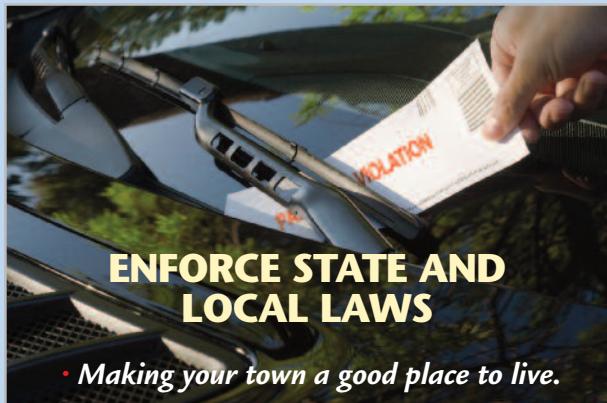
## REGULATE LAND USE

- Can a deli open in your quiet residential neighborhood? Your city council is charged with deciding how best to use local lands.



## ENFORCE STATE AND LOCAL LAWS

- Making your town a good place to live.



# Chapter 6 Review

*Use pages 108–109 to answer questions 1–2.*

1. What are the three units of local government in Virginia?
2. Copy the chart. Identify the following locations as city, county, or both.

<b>FAIRFAX</b>	
<b>ALBEMARLE</b>	
<b>PATRICK</b>	
<b>CHESAPEAKE</b>	

*Use pages 110–111 to answer questions 3–4.*

3. Write a paragraph describing the responsibilities of a school board.
4. Create graphic organizers showing the different leadership positions in a county, town, and city. Be sure to include who is in charge and who has legislative powers.

*Use pages 112–113 to answer question 5.*

5. Copy and complete the chart. For each scenario, name the court in which the case would be heard.

<b>SCENARIO</b>	<b>COURT</b>
You sue a company for \$1 million.	
A man is accused of robbing a convenience store.	
A 12-year-old is charged with shoplifting.	
Jennifer receives a speeding ticket.	

*Use pages 114–115 to answer question 6.*

6. Copy and complete the chart. Explain the importance of each job listed.

Commonwealth's Attorney		
Sheriff		
Treasurer		
Commissioner of the Revenue		
Clerk of the Circuit Court		

*Use pages 116–117 to answer questions 7–8.*

7. The Commonwealth of Virginia derives its power from the Virginia Constitution.  
From where do cities derive their power?
  8. What are seven powers exercised by Virginia local governments?
- 

## Apply Your Learning

**1. Most Virginia counties and cities have an elected or appointed school board, which oversees the K-12 public schools in their unit of local government.**

- Investigate a school issue that you believe is a problem.
- To gather data, write interview questions about the issue to ask students, staff, and families in your community.
  - Record their responses in order to compare and contrast their viewpoints.
  - Prepare a three-minute speech to deliver to the school board about your concerns and offer possible solutions. Your speech should summarize the interview data and present a convincing argument.
  - If possible, attend a school board meeting and take part in the running of your community.

**2. Individuals can have the greatest influence on the decisions made by local government officials by communicating with them about their opinions and preferences.**

Does your local area have a problem with flooding, homelessness, or pollution? Research an issue that is specific to your community and create a timeline to illustrate how that issue has changed over time. At the end of your timeline, determine the current status of the issue and develop a plan of action to address it. Items to include in your plan could include:

- how the issue impacts the community
- who is involved • steps to address the issue
- how you would like to see the community change as a result of your plan

**3. In Virginia, juveniles 14 and older can be tried as adults for certain felonies.**

Gather information from a variety of sources with multiple points of view about juveniles being tried as adults. After critical evaluation and analysis of the sources, do you think trying juveniles as adults is the right thing to do in Virginia? Write an editorial persuading readers to adopt your perspective. Support your opinion with evidence cited from your research to increase the validity of your argument.

---

## Imagine...

**Imagine you are a member of your city council, town council, or board of supervisors.**

Your locality is facing a serious budget crisis and you need to find ways to cut costs.

Brainstorm services your local government provides to citizens. Select a few services from the list and record the unintended consequences that could occur if you cut the budget of that service. After you have analyzed the unintended consequences, write a recommendation for how you are going to get your locality's budget back on track. Which services will you reduce and why?

WHO  
CONTROLS  
OUR GOVERNMENT?

# PUSHING FOR CHANGE





*With the media's spotlight  
glaring, one misstep, one  
small stutter, one little  
“brain freeze” can cost a  
candidate an election.*

*“All I know is just what I read in  
the papers, and that’s an alibi for  
my ignorance.”*

— WILL ROGERS, American humorist

# The Power of the Media

Many years ago, a journalist and a TV crew spent several days at a mental health hospital in New York. The report they broadcast about conditions at the hospital was heartbreakingly horrifying. But good came out of it, because eventually many changes were made to the way we care for the mentally ill. Media—TV, radio, newspapers, magazines, and social media—have that kind of power.

## FOCUSING PUBLIC ATTENTION

Think about the world of 1776 and how the news was spread. Think about Paul Revere and his fellow riders galloping from town to town. Today, he could simply alert the media and send a text to all his friends who would then text *their* friends. #Britisharecoming would soon be trending on Twitter.

The media battle for your attention every day, and often play an important role in setting the public agenda and getting us to think about difficult topics. Take gun control. You might not think much about it one way or the other on a day-to-day basis, but when headlines scream—the mentally ill young man who brought about such destruction at Virginia Tech, the Sandy Hook Elementary School massacre, or the slaughter at a church in South Carolina—suddenly gun control becomes a hotly contested issue. Does media coverage influence public policy? There is a heated debate about the way guns are sold in this country as a result.

*"The biases the media have are much bigger than conservative or liberal. They're about getting ratings, about making money, about doing stories that are easy to cover."*

—AL FRANKEN, U.S. Senator

compare them as they stand side by side. But we live in a country that is often divided on the issues, and news can sometimes be presented in a biased way. Some argue that television news no longer gives us unbiased reporting without a political agenda. With the birth of 24-hour news networks, such as CNN, FOX News, and MSNBC, we often get a lot of opinion, leaving the viewer to figure out the truth. It's your job to detect bias and separate fact from opinion!



Review ways  
to evaluate the media  
on pages 56–57.



# Three Memorable Moments

WHEN MEDIA MADE AN IMPACT

## • Newspapers: *The Role of Investigative Journalism*

Bob Woodward and Carl Bernstein were two reporters for *The Washington Post*. For months, they sifted through all sorts of evidence to reveal a tangled web of political scandal that began with a break-in at a Democratic Party campaign headquarters at the Watergate Hotel. As the shocking story unfolded, the outcry was swift. The Senate established a committee to investigate the Watergate scandal, and President Nixon decided to resign.

## • Television: *The First Humans on the Moon*

For several tense minutes, Americans huddled around their TV sets, held their breath, then cheered when astronauts from NASA's *Apollo 11* landed on the moon.



## • Social Media: *The Boston Marathon Bombing*

They had gathered to cheer their friends and family and instead ended up recording history. The despicable bombing at the Boston Marathon in 2013 was vividly captured by onlookers with cell phones. But in the tragic aftermath, an innocent man, captured on camera near the site, was accused of being part of the attack and his life has not been the same since. Social media presented a "truth" that was anything but truthful.



## "DID YOU OR DID YOU NOT..."

Politicians are not saints. They are in positions of power and there are often temptations. Media hold government officials accountable for their actions. The very things that make media a powerful force—the ability to capture an event and record it as it unfolds—can lead to handcuffs for an unwary politician. Social media has become a powerful force as well. Wherever there is a politician and a citizen with a cell phone, there is the potential for news in the making.

There are so many media sources offering "news." Remember to always **evaluate the source, identify propaganda, look for bias, and separate fact from opinion!** We need the media! Our government officials use the media to communicate with us. They keep us up-to-date on events, and in times of tragedy—deadly tornadoes, senseless bombings, the deaths of heroes and legends—the media help us unite as people of one heart to begin to heal together.

**Do these 2016 tabloid headlines show evidence of bias? Can you tell which side of the spectrum they support? How?**



*Individuals and interest groups influence public policy.*

*You are just one person, but you can have an impact on the way our country is run.*

# The Power of One Voice

It won't do any good to sit on your comfy couch and complain about fracking or global warming. You need to get up and do something. That *something* is participating in politics. Begin by urging the grown-ups in your life to vote. Campaign for a candidate whose views you share. And, when you are old enough, you might even run for office.

## **YOU CAN INFLUENCE PUBLIC POLICY!**

The Bill of Rights promises us freedom of assembly and freedom of speech. Using those two freedoms, unfair laws have been toppled, long-held biases have been challenged, and lives have been changed. So think about the things you care passionately about—the environment, perhaps. Then roll up your sleeves and get to work!

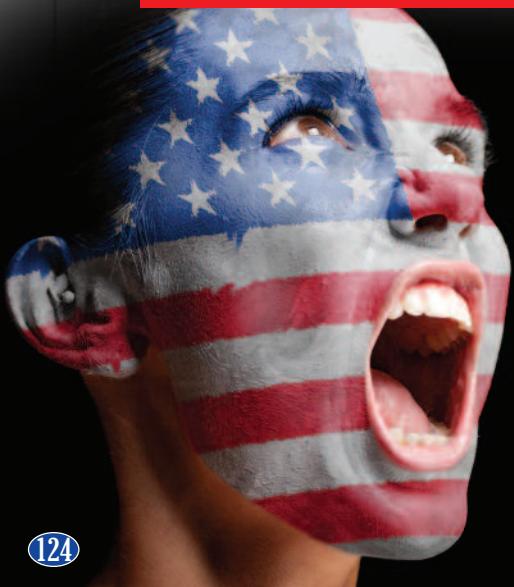
### **Word to Know**

► ***lobbying*** (*lob-ee-ing*)

*Trying to influence legislators to introduce a bill or to vote for or against a bill*

## Express Yourself

MAKE  
YOUR VOICE HEARD



• ***Three people who fought for change***

Rosa Parks was just one small, solitary figure, but her actions left a deep impression. She joined a civil rights group, the NAACP, and then took a courageous bus ride that helped pave the way to important civil rights legislation.

César Chávez was just one man, and yet he was able to organize a group of mostly immigrant field hands who were laboring in inhumane conditions, and change working conditions for farm workers nationwide.

Martin Luther King, Jr. knew how powerful the right words combined with a fellowship of people could be. He wrote letters, organized marches, and led protests. Sadly, he lost his life trying to achieve equality for all.

These were all great heroes—brave, and determined to make their voices heard in an effort to change public policy. But even young people, kids your age, can bring about great change. For example, children as young as 12 have testified before Congress to highlight the mistreatment of young immigrants to this country. One voice is a good start. Many voices can be even more powerful. Together with like-minded people, impossible things can become possible.

## SPECIAL-INTEREST GROUPS

Several powerful groups, representing tens of millions of citizens, have a lot of clout with Congress. Their job is called **lobbying**. Lobbyists are people who are paid to represent all sorts of outside interests on Capitol Hill—from teachers and environmentalists to mining and banking specialists.

Many lobbyists are former congressional aides. It is a “who do you know” business.



### HEALTH

- Nickname: “Big Pharma.” Protecting new research, keeping drug prices high, and seeking less government controls



### TECH



- Protecting the interests of computer powerhouses

### FINANCE



- Protecting the profits of banks and other financial companies

# The Power Players

## WHAT LOBBYISTS DO

- *Lobbyists—many of them with strong links to Congress—spend their days arguing for specific legislation.*

Lobbyists represent many different organizations and businesses. Some work to stop underage drinking or help disabled Americans. Some work for powerful corporations. Let's pretend you are a congressperson up for re-election. A lobbyist for a huge drug company has offered to start a super PAC for you if you will just listen to what he has to say about the Food and Drug Administration's approval processes. Would you listen?

## CLASHING INTERESTS

Lobbyists and special-interest groups often end up fighting with one another. For example, food industry lobbyists and health care lobbyists went head-to-head over a proposal for healthier school lunches to try to curb obesity in children. The powerful National Rifle Association (the gun lobby) is constantly battling new gun control legislation being urged by anti-gun groups.

Who won these battles? Read on!

### DEFENSE



- Working on behalf of aircraft and arms manufacturers

### “BIG OIL”



- Fighting for fracking, pipeline, and drilling rights

### AGRIBUSINESS



- Nickname: “Big Food.” Helping processed food giants and mega-farms

### MINING



- Working on behalf of “Clean Coal” companies

*Individuals and interest groups influence public policy.*

# Agents of Change

**CASE STUDY**

*From young people to big lobbyists, here are three true tales, straight from the headlines!*



**Would you have the courage to testify to a congressional committee?**

## ONE YOUNG PERSON BRAVELY SPEAKS OUT

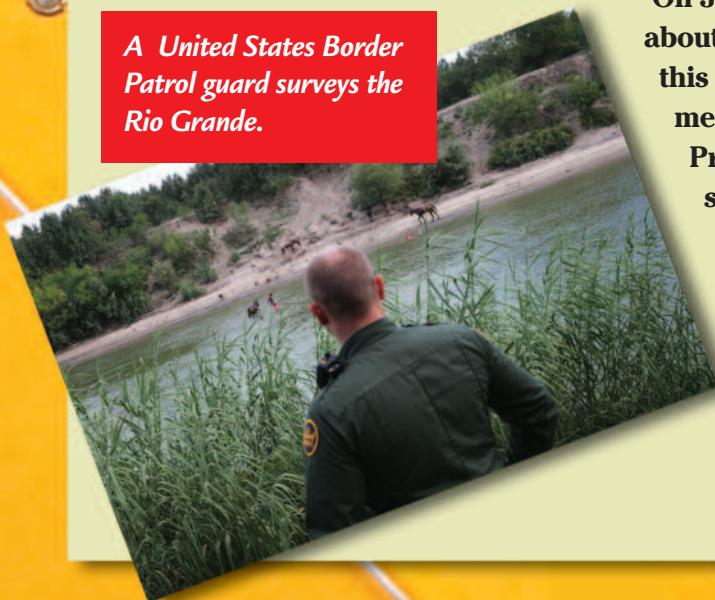
"Please help protect children like me and my little sister. We can't go back to our countries because they are very dangerous...." So begged an 11-year-old girl. Every year more than 80,000 unaccompanied children come across the Mexican border into the United States. This young girl, and her 8-year-old sister, were two of those children.

Their mother had left Honduras in order to earn enough to feed her daughters. When she had finally earned enough money, she sent it to the girls and told them to come join her in New York. Hoping to escape the growing violence in their hometown, the two sisters traveled from Central America, mostly by bus, then crossed the Rio Grande at the U.S.-Mexico border on a small, inflatable raft. They were quickly caught by U.S. Border Patrol agents.

The sisters spent the next four days being held in a windowless room under horrible conditions. They were terrified and very much alone. There was talk of sending them back, but fortunately a legal advocate stepped in to help them.

On July 29, 2014, during a meeting about unaccompanied immigrant minors, this young girl bravely testified before members of the Congressional Progressive Caucus. She wept as she shared her story to spotlight inhumane treatment at detention centers. She is proof that individuals—even very young ones—have important things to say about the way our nation works.

A United States Border Patrol guard surveys the Rio Grande.





*Tasty? Yes! Healthy? What do you think?*

## HEALTHY OR WEALTHY. WISE?

The Healthy, Hunger-Free Kids Act was passed in 2010 to try to stem the growing numbers of kids who are overweight. The act says that schools must apply for permission to allow unhealthy snacks. Sounds good, right? No one wants to be obese. A special-interest group—the School Nutrition Association (SNA)—has a slightly different viewpoint.

The SNA refers to itself as being “committed to advancing the quality of school meal programs through education and advocacy.” Yet, at a recent annual conference, many of the panels and information sessions were hosted by “Big Food.” A major pizza chain, a huge pastry corporation, and two soft-drink giants were front and center during the conference. It seems apparent that this special-interest group hopes to weaken the Healthy, Hunger-Free Kids Act guidelines. Fewer vegetables, fruits, and whole grains on cafeteria trays means more money in their coffers. Sadly, it might also mean extra pounds on the bathroom scale!



## THE RIGHT TO BEAR ARMS

So says the Second Amendment in the Bill of Rights, yet every year about 10,000 Americans under the age of 21 are injured or killed by guns.

Owning a gun brings important civic responsibility. One of the issues gun lobbyists are arguing over is whether the government should make it illegal for individuals under 21 to own a personal firearm. A person must be 21 to purchase a handgun from a dealer, but an 18-year-old can buy a gun from a private seller in 38 out of 50 states. Another hot topic concerns parents giving guns as gifts to children under 21.

Young people are responsible for a very high percentage of gun violence. FBI crime data has shown arrests for murder and other violent crimes peak from ages 18 to 20. That age *is a* group makes up 5 percent of the population, but is responsible for 20 percent of all homicide and man-slaughter arrests. *is a*

Just as you cannot drink alcohol until you are 21, should owning a handgun be controlled by age? What do you think?



## Room for Debate

*These three topics—immigration, health, and public safety—are issues that are often in the news. Which of the three do you feel is most important and why?*



*Local governments may be required to formulate, adopt, and implement public policies in response to international issues and events.*

*There are many things beyond our control. One minute everything is fine, and then, suddenly, it is not. What then?*

*A medical worker clad in biohazard gear studies a blood sample from a person possibly infected with a dangerous virus.*

*"I learned that courage was not the absence of fear, but the triumph over it. The brave man is not he who does not feel afraid, but he who conquers that fear."* —NELSON MANDELA

*Human Rights Activist*

# A Clear and Present Danger

This has been a chapter about power. Who has it? How is it used? But there are things that are more powerful than people, and when we are faced with events and issues that seem frightening or overwhelming, our government—federal, state, and local—is designed to step in and offer help.

It might be a deadly virus or bacteria capable of causing widespread suffering. Perhaps it is an act of cowardly terrorism that turns a peaceful day into one of despair. Both of these are dangerous situations and need swift responses. Other dangers overtake us more slowly. Emerging global economies can affect the way we earn our livings here in America, and for some animals and plants, global warming and a changing environment mean doom.

## ONE MICROBE = GLOBAL DANGER

In 1918 a deadly mutant flu virus swept across the world. It was the worst **pandemic** in recorded history. Medicine has come a long way in a hundred years, and public health officials at places such as the Centers for Disease Control (CDC) are determined to keep that from ever happening again. The CDC develops plans for dealing with **communicable** diseases by researching vaccines, monitoring outbreaks, and sharing its knowledge with both health care workers and the general public. Our state also requires vaccinations for all public school students, to protect their health and the health of their classmates.

## Words to Know

### ► **pandemic**

(pan-dem-ick)

*A disease that spreads over a wide area—a whole country and sometimes many parts of the world*

### ► **communicable**

(cuh-mew-nik-uh-bul)

*Able to be passed from one person to another; contagious*

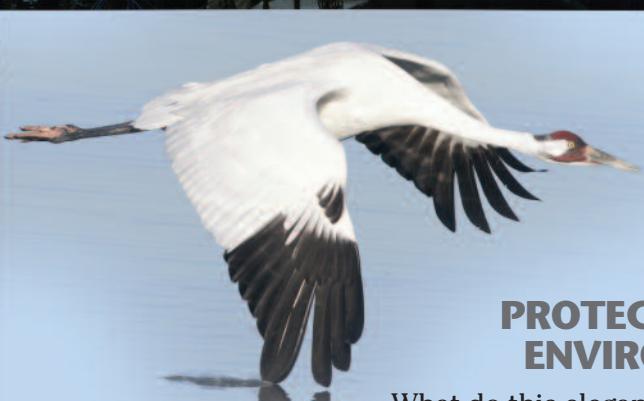
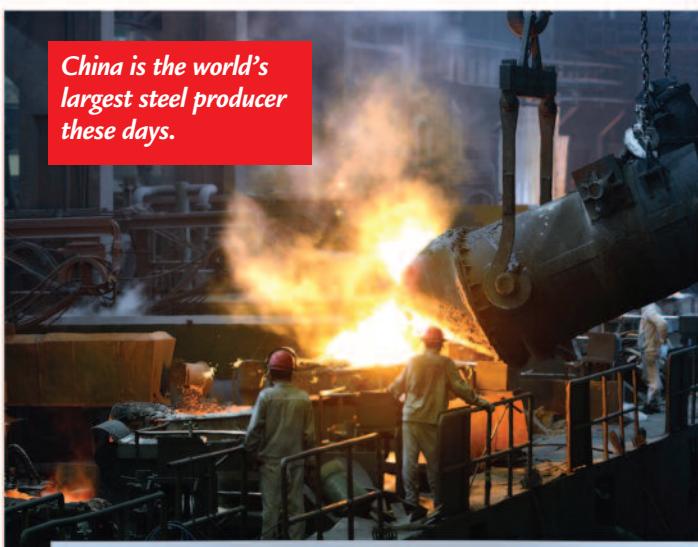


*Gowns, gloves, and masks are the required garb when dealing with certain diseases.*

## SHOES, BELTS, AND BAGS IN THE BIN

After the horrific 9/11 bombings, the Department of Homeland Security was established. The government responded swiftly. Every bag carried onto a plane is inspected, as are the passengers. After an attempt, several years ago, to smuggle explosives aboard an aircraft in a pair of sneakers, shoes must be removed and inspected. At big sporting events, such as the Super Bowl or the World Series, security is tight as well.

We have learned from the terrible tragedy of terrorism. Local police and firefighters often train to handle worst-case scenarios so that they will be prepared for difficult times.



## WHERE DID OUR JOBS GO?

Emerging global economies can have a huge impact on our lives here, changing the way we live and work. Back in the mid-1900s, America was the manufacturing capital of the world—the biggest carmaker and steel producer. Not anymore. The way we make things in the United States has also changed. To help, federal, state, and local governments have created policies to aid Americans in learning 21st-century skills with job training programs and the growth of community colleges.

# Endangered Species

CAN THEY BE SAVED?

## PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

What do this elegant whooping crane and this fierce grizzly bear have in common?

They are both in trouble. Their habitats are disappearing, and their numbers are declining. They need help. Policies have been created to raise awareness of their plight and to make harming them against the law. The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service keeps a list of endangered species—from amphibians to arachnids, from ferns to flowering plants—and monitors these species. Even at the local level, the loss of a plant species might not seem like a big deal until you realize that many animals could depend on that plant for food. We are all connected in one great chain of life.



# Chapter 7 Review

*Use pages 122–123 to answer questions 1–3 in complete sentences.*

1. What does it mean that the media “focuses public attention” on selected issues?
2. How does the media hold public officials accountable for their actions?
3. Use your own words to explain each of the following strategies for evaluating media.

Refer to pages 56–57 for additional reference.

- Separating fact from fiction
- Detecting bias
- Evaluating sources
- Identifying propaganda

*Use pages 124–125 to answer questions 4–5 in complete sentences.*

4. List two ways citizens can have an impact on public policy.
5. Explain how individuals and interest groups influence public policy by lobbying.

*Use pages 128–129 to answer question 6 in complete sentences.*

6. At times, local governments must formulate, adopt, and implement public policies in response to world events. Brainstorm and list how local government officials might respond to each of these issues or events.
  - People working for the Peace Corps just returned to America, after being exposed to the measles. How can the local government handle public health concerns?
  - There has been an act of terrorism in Europe. What resources does the local government have to keep local communities safe?
  - An announcement has just been made that a Chinese-based company is closing all its branches in the United States. How can local governments help community members who will lose their jobs?

# Apply Your Learning

1. Relationships between people, places, and ideas have an enduring influence on political and economic decision-making and events. Explore the causes and effects of events that influenced public policy. Copy and complete the chart.

CAUSE	EVENT	EFFECTS
	Rosa Parks refused to sit at the back of the bus.	
	The 27th Amendment is ratified, giving 18-year-olds the right to vote.	
	The Healthy, Hunger-Free Kids Act was signed into law in 2010.	

2. Individuals and interest groups influence public policy. However, not all lobbyists work for clients with tons of money. Cause-based lobbyists fight for congressional money to support nonprofit programs. Some of these nonprofit programs tackle problems, such as underage drinking, animal abuse, discrimination, homelessness, school dropout rates, and fraud against the elderly.



THE HUMANE SOCIETY  
OF THE UNITED STATES

These are some existing special-interest groups working to influence public policy. Create a new special-interest group to help make our nation a better place. Write a mission statement to express the purpose of the group in a few, well-chosen words. Create a name and design a logo. Conduct research on local political and economic trends to determine the target audience for your special-interest group and the type of media coverage that will most effectively share your mission.

## Imagine...

As more Americans get their news from online media sources, it is important to understand how to spot fake news. Fake news was an issue in the 2016 election and there is increasing evidence that fake news can impact election results. Imagine you have been asked to monitor your school's social media news source about the candidates running for student government. How can you evaluate the submitted articles, images, and posts about the candidates to ensure you are presenting unbiased, factual information?

HOW THE LAW  
WORKS IN OUR STATE  
AND THE NATION

# ORDER IN THE COURT



*"In matters of truth and justice, there is no difference between large and small problems, for issues concerning the treatment of people are all the same."*

—ALBERT EINSTEIN, *Scientist and Humanitarian*



*The scales of justice have long been a symbol for the law. Judges and juries must weigh every bit of evidence they hear to make a fair decision.*

*The United States has a dual court system, which consists of state courts and federal courts.*

*Federal courts have jurisdiction over federal laws. State courts have jurisdiction over state laws.*

*The role of the judicial branch is to interpret laws.*

# The Court System: An Overview

*A fair and just society is a cornerstone of the American way of life.*



The United States court system gets its power—**jurisdiction**—from the Constitution of the United States. Over time federal laws have extended and solidified the organization and power of the courts.

## LEGAL LAYERS

Picture two elaborate wedding cakes. One has a big layer at the bottom and two smaller layers as you near the top. Our federal court system is structured a bit like that. Now imagine another cake for state laws. Virginia's legal "cake" has one additional layer at the bottom.

The federal court system deals with national laws that have been broken. There will be no speeding tickets dealt with here (unless you were caught speeding on federal property!). A shoplifter in Virginia Beach will not end up in federal court, nor will a couple getting a divorce. Those are state matters.

## A FEDERAL OFFENSE

Cases that raise a “federal question” involve the U. S. government, the Constitution, or other federal laws. Federal courts also hear cases involving disputes between two parties from different states or countries if the claim meets a set dollar minimum for damages. Federal courts hear criminal as well as civil cases, such as bankruptcy (an inability to pay one’s bills). Once a case has been decided by a lower court, it can be appealed.

## THE FEDERAL COURT SYSTEM:

### • Three levels of courts of law

A federal lawsuit begins in a U.S. district court. If one of the parties is unhappy with the verdict, they can ask for an appeal. Whoever loses in the appeals court can ask that their case be heard by the Supreme Court, but only the most important cases will end up there.

### U.S. SUPREME COURT

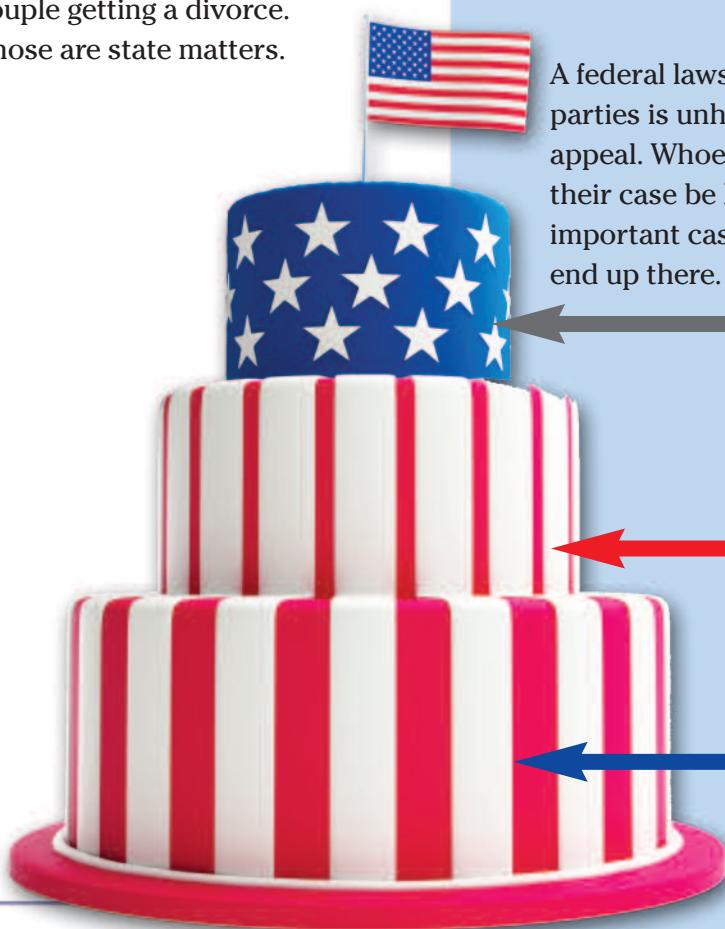
- Nine justices. No jury
- Appellate jurisdiction
- Limited original jurisdiction

### U.S. COURT OF APPEALS

- Judges with no jury
- Appellate jurisdiction (second-time trial)

### U.S. DISTRICT COURT

- Judge with or without a jury
- Original jurisdiction (first-time trial)



## Legal-Speak Made Simple

**JURISDICTION:** The authority to hear a case

**ORIGINAL JURISDICTION:** The authority to hear a case first

**APPEAL:** Apply to a higher court for a reversal of the decision of a lower court

**APPELLATE JURISDICTION:** The authority to review a decision of a lower court

**FELONY:** A serious crime

**MISDEMEANOR:** A minor wrongdoing, such as a speeding ticket

**JURY:** A panel of people selected from the general population to hear a case

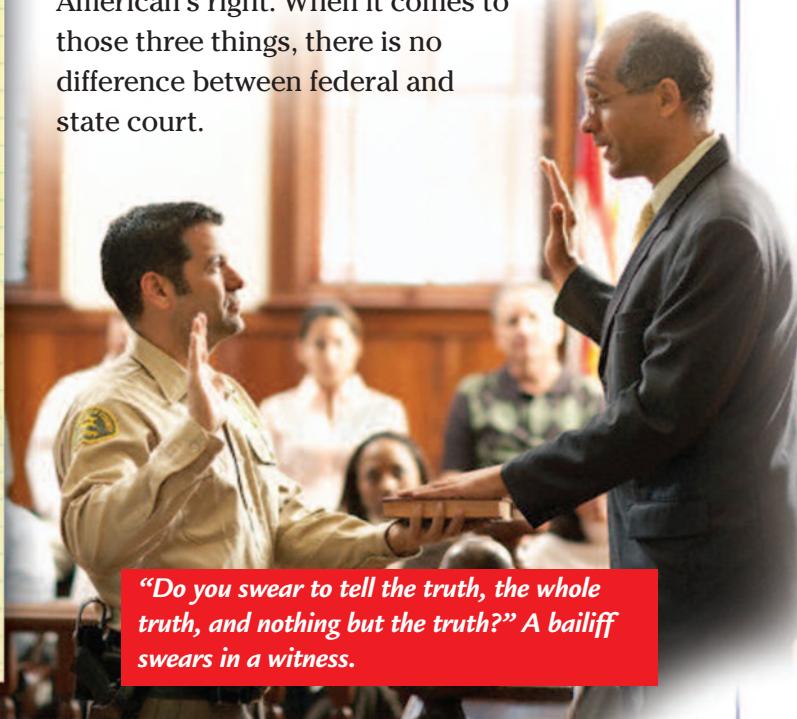
**VERDICT:** The decision of the jury

**CIVIL SUIT:** A case usually involving only financial damages. No one will go to jail, but fines must be paid.

**BAILIFF:** An official in a court of law who keeps order and looks after the accused during criminal trials

## THE BILL OF RIGHTS IN ACTION

When court is in session, there is nothing more important than seeing justice served. The promise of due process, a fair and speedy trial, and an impartial jury if requested are every American's right. When it comes to those three things, there is no difference between federal and state court.



*"Do you swear to tell the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth?" A bailiff swears in a witness.*

## THE STATE COURT SYSTEM:

- Four levels—one shared—of justice

### VIRGINIA SUPREME COURT

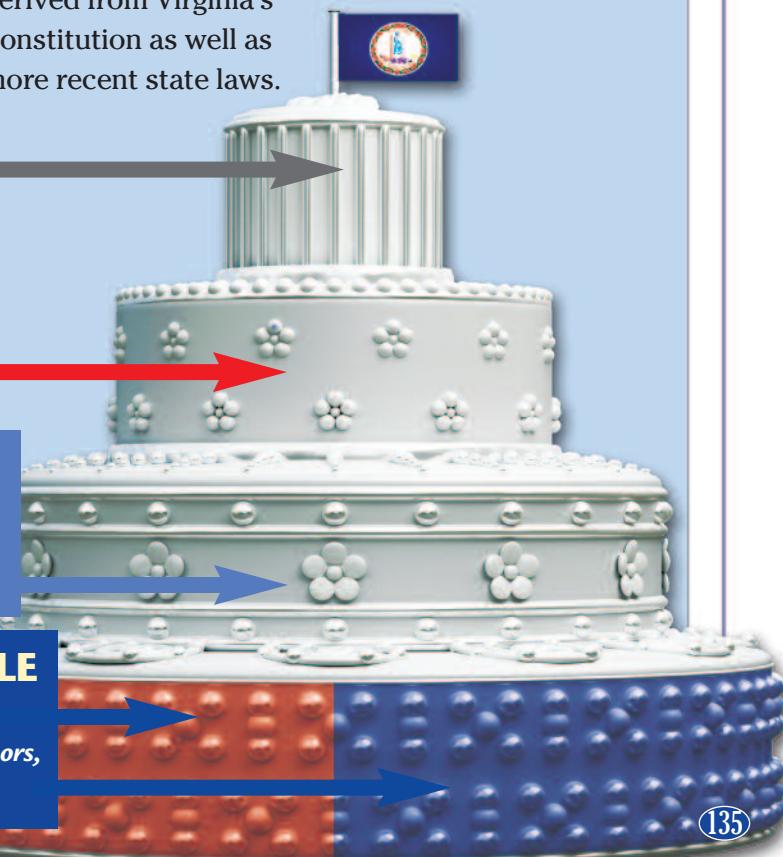
- Seven justices. No jury
- Appellate jurisdiction
- Limited original jurisdiction

Virginia, along with every other state, has its own court system whose organization and jurisdiction are derived from Virginia's Constitution as well as more recent state laws.



### VIRGINIA COURT OF APPEALS

- Judges with no jury
- Appellate jurisdiction to review decisions of the circuit court



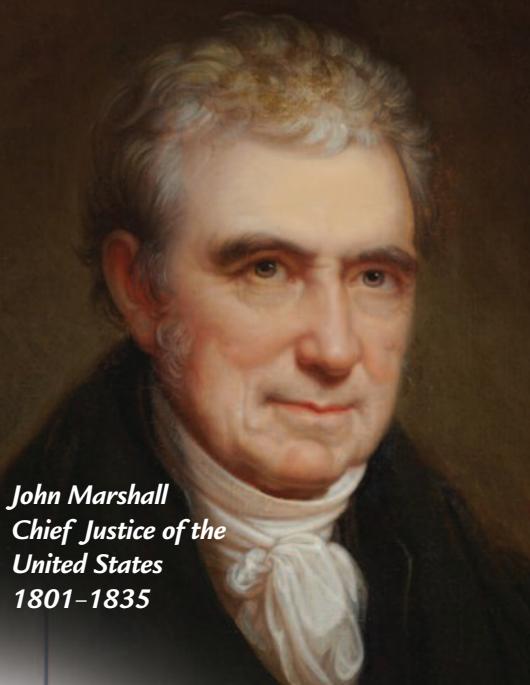
### CIRCUIT COURT

- Judge with or without a jury
- Original jurisdiction: felony and bigger civil cases
- Appeals from district court trials

### GENERAL DISTRICT COURT/JUVENILE & DOMESTIC RELATIONS COURT

- Judge with no jury
- Original jurisdiction for misdemeanors, small claims, family cases, and young offenders

*The power of judicial review is an important check on the legislative and executive branches of government.*



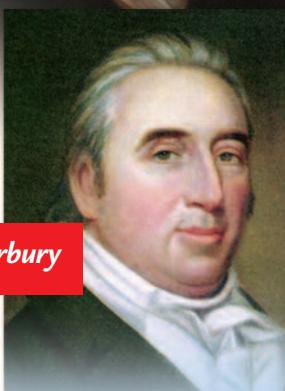
**John Marshall**  
*Chief Justice of the  
United States*  
**1801–1835**

*Power. Who has it? How can they use it? The people who are drawn into a life in government have very strong opinions about things!*

# The High Courts: A Closer Look

Who decides if a law written by Congress and approved by the president is constitutional? Who decides if a law written by Virginia's legislature and approved by the governor agrees with Virginia's Constitution? That responsibility lies with the Supreme Courts of the United States or Virginia. This power is called **judicial review**. But it was not always like that.

**Marbury v. Madison** is the most important case in Supreme Court history. Because of that case, federal courts gained the power to strike down acts of the president and Congress, if they are in conflict with the Constitution. It all began with one unhappy man, two strong-willed presidents who didn't happen to see eye-to-eye, and a very thoughtful justice.



**William Marbury**

## Marbury v. Madison

**LET'S DIG DEEPER**



**James Madison**

In 1801 William Marbury was chosen to be a justice of the peace. He and several others were hurriedly appointed to government posts in the last days of John Adams's presidency. Marbury and the others got their Senate approvals. Their documents were signed and sealed by President Adams and then, somehow, the documents were never delivered.

Newly sworn-in President Thomas Jefferson—who had very different political ideas than Adams—decided to ignore Adams's choices and told his secretary of state, James Madison, not to deliver the notice of appointments. According to the law, the papers had to be delivered to be official.

How would you feel if you were Mr. Marbury? Probably a little angry! So Marbury went to the Supreme Court to sue for his job.

There were three important questions that Chief Justice John Marshall had to think about. Was Marbury entitled to his new job? Justice Marshall thought "yes." Was this lawsuit the proper way to get it? Again, "yes." Still, there was one big "but." Was the Supreme Court the place to make this ruling? Marshall and his fellow justices thought long and hard about it. The Constitution of the United States is the supreme law of the land. What exactly did the Constitution say?

## MARBURY: THE VERDICT IS IN

In 1789 Congress had written the Judiciary Act, a law that detailed the process for delivering commissions for judges and justices of the peace. As Chief Justice Marshall looked at this law, he realized that it went *against* the Constitution. The Judiciary Act had actually given the Supreme Court *more* power than it had been granted by the Constitution. The Constitution was the supreme law of the land, so the justices ruled that since the Judiciary Act of 1789 itself was illegal, it could not be used as a law.

*"It is emphatically the province and duty of the Judicial Department to say what the law is."*

—JOHN MARSHALL  
*Marbury v. Madison, 1803*

## LANDMARK CASES

There have been so many brilliant justices in the years since John Marshall wrestled with William Marbury's plight, but there have also been some controversial decisions. Justices are human, and times and opinions change.

How does a case get to the highest court in the land or the Virginia Supreme Court? It is a very long process. Every year, more than 10,000 cases are sent to the U.S. Supreme Court on appeal. Of those, typically fewer than 100 are chosen for review. The justices look for cases with national importance, or cases that might settle differences between federal circuit courts on rulings. They will also hear cases from a state supreme court if it regards a constitutional matter.

Rarely, the Supreme Court is the first and only court to hear a case. This is called **original jurisdiction**. It only happens if a state sues another state or troubles brew with ambassadors or other high-ranking government officials. Most of the cases the U.S. Supreme Court and the Virginia Supreme Court hear are appeals from lower courts.

## POOR MR. MARBURY

That "illegal" Judiciary Act kept William Marbury from ever becoming a justice, but instead of becoming just a footnote in history, his name lives on in the most famous of all Supreme Court decisions. As a result of Marbury's quest for justice, the court's decision led to greater Supreme Court powers—making it very much the equal of Congress and the executive branch in the way the nation is run. Today we have three balanced branches of government with a system of checks and balances—all because of some paperwork that did not get delivered.

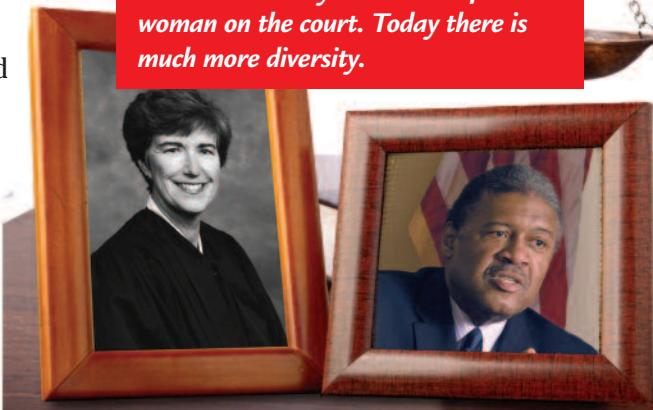
# Who Judges?

## FOR THE NATION AND OUR STATE

At the federal level, justices are appointed for life, selected by the president and approved by the Senate. Naturally, the person doing the appointing wants someone who shares the same views of how best to run the country.

In Virginia all judges are elected by the General Assembly. They serve for 12 years and then stand for re-election. Lifetime appointment or periodic review? Which system do you think is better?

*Until 1983, Virginia's Supreme Court was all white and all male. That is when John Charles Thomas became the first black justice. Five years later, Elizabeth B. Lacy became the first woman on the court. Today there is much more diversity.*



*The power of judicial review is an important check on the legislative and executive branches of government.*

# Landmarks in Justice

*Good decisions. Bad decisions. Many Supreme Court decisions have a tremendous effect on life in the United States—some more than others.*



## A Terrible Ruling

### A DREADFUL LANDMARK

The Supreme Court is here to protect our rights, but there have been some unfair, cruel rulings that hurt honest, hard-working people. Dred Scott, a native of Virginia, was a slave in Missouri until his owner took him to live and work in free territories. Brought back to Missouri, Scott sued for his freedom. But in 1857 the Supreme Court ruled that he was still a slave in spite of his time spent in free territories. The court stated that no African American could ever be a citizen and that Scott could not even sue for freedom in a federal court.

Every year the Supreme Court decides dozens of cases. Some of those rulings have a powerful and far-reaching impact. You have read about several famous decisions—*Marbury v. Madison*, *Plessy v. Ferguson*, and *Brown v. Board of Education*. Here are five more:

### MCCULLOCH v. MARYLAND, 1819

- **VERDICT:** *The Constitution gives the federal government certain implied powers.*

When the state of Maryland put a tax on a federal bank within its state borders, the U.S. Supreme Court took action. The justices stated that the tax interfered with federal supremacy and ruled that the Constitution gives the federal government certain implied powers.

### DRED SCOTT v. SANDFORD, 1857

- **VERDICT:** *Even a free African American is not a citizen and so is not entitled to the rights of an American.*

## MAPP v. OHIO, 1961

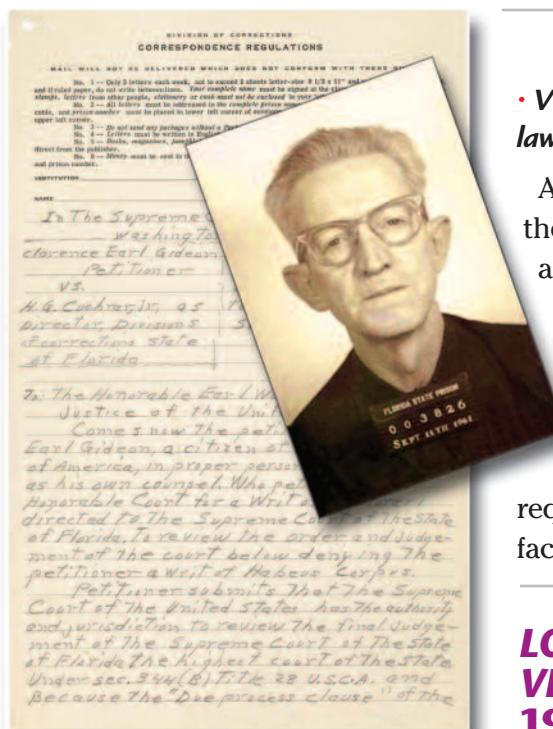
- **VERDICT:** Illegally seized material cannot be used in a criminal trial.

Police officers suspected Dollree Mapp of hiding a bomber in her house, but Mapp knew the law. She would not let them in without a search warrant. Three hours later, 15 police officers returned. One waved a sheet of paper in her face but would not let her read it. They did not find the bomber but, in a box in the attic, they found items that were deemed obscene. They arrested her. She was sentenced to seven years in prison, so she appealed.

Because the police officers never produced a search warrant, Mapp's lawyer argued that the materials found were the result of an illegal search. The Supreme Court agreed. They ruled that police *must* have a search warrant. Recognizing that this new rule might prevent the police from acting and that waiting could result in serious harm, the court allows warrantless searches when an emergency exists requiring immediate police action.



Dollree Mapp



## GIDEON v. WAINWRIGHT, 1963

- **VERDICT:** People who have been arrested and cannot afford a lawyer must be provided representation without charge.

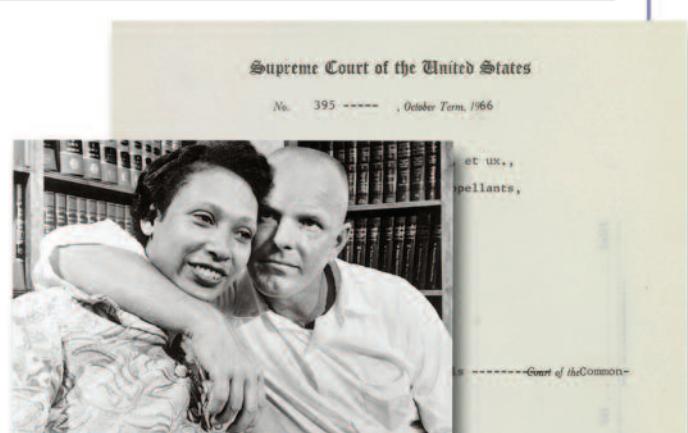
After a pool hall burglary, Clarence Gideon was arrested on the basis of one eyewitness's testimony. Gideon had no money and asked the judge for a lawyer to represent him, as demanded by the Constitution. The judge said "no." Gideon was found guilty and sent to prison for five years. While in prison, Gideon spent as much time as he could in the law library and, in pencil, appealed to the U.S. Supreme Court.

The court ruled in his favor, saying the Sixth Amendment requires aiding those who cannot pay for legal counsel when facing possible jail time.

## LOVING v. VIRGINIA, 1967

- **VERDICT:** Distinctions drawn by race are "odious to a free people" under the Equal Protection Clause.

Not that long ago, people of different races were forbidden to marry in many states. Virginia was one of those states, but Mildred Jeter had fallen in love with Richard Loving. The two went to Washington, D.C., where they could legally be wed, but once back home in Virginia, they were arrested, found guilty of criminal behavior, and sentenced to prison. They appealed the decision to Virginia's Supreme Court, but that court upheld their convictions. At the U.S. Supreme Court, however, the verdict was this: "the freedom to marry, or not marry, a person of another race resides with the individual, and cannot be infringed by the State."



This cause came on to be heard on the transcript of the record from the Supreme Court of Appeals of the Commonwealth of Virginia, and was argued by counsel.

On consideration whereof, It is now here ordered and adjudged by this Court that the judgment and conviction of the said Supreme Court of Appeals in this cause, be, and the same is hereby, reversed with costs; and that this cause be, and the same is hereby, remanded to the Supreme Court of Appeals of the Commonwealth of Virginia for further proceedings not inconsistent with the opinion of this Court.

It is further ordered that the said appellants, Richard Perry Loving, et ux., recover from the Commonwealth of Virginia Three Hundred and Thirty-one Dollars and Thirty-eight Cents (\$331.38) for their costs herein expended.

Courts resolve two kinds of legal conflicts—civil and criminal.

*Who did it? How did it happen? What evidence can be found? Can the person responsible be brought to justice and punished?*

# Criminal Cases

On a hot, summer evening, a man walking his dog in a city park discovers an unsettling sight. With hands shaking, he dials 911 to report a body lying motionless in the shadows. That call sets in motion a chain of events—long, strong legal links that will end with justice being done.



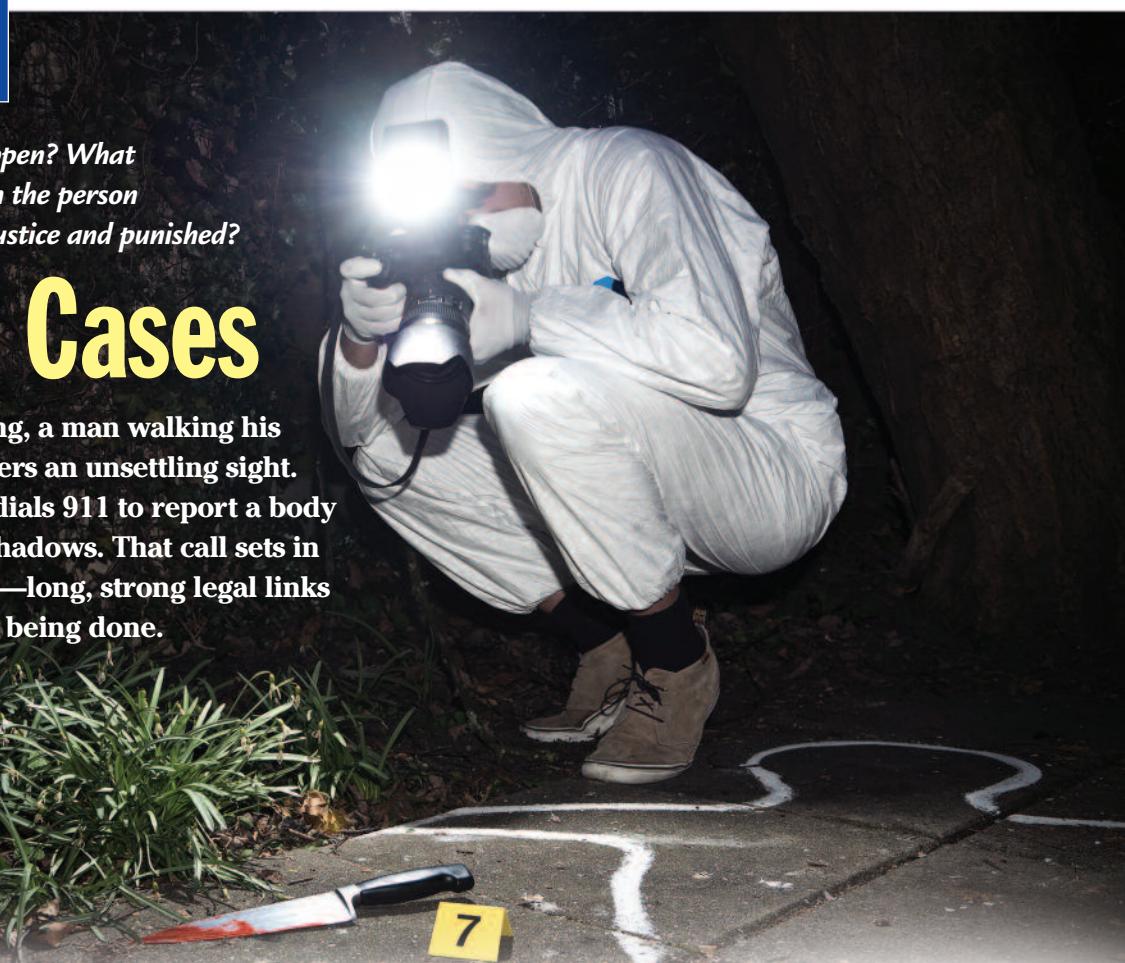
## CALL 911!

When a crime has been committed, the first link in the chain is the police, who will arrive to gather evidence. A **forensics**

team—people responsible for tests used to help solve a crime—will arrive to carefully explore the crime scene and document everything they find. They will look for evidence—a button, a scrap of paper, signs of a struggle from the victim. Even a corpse can “talk.” Perhaps hairs from the criminal ended up on the victim, or skin cells lodged under the victim’s fingernails in the struggle.

Eyewitnesses—people who heard a scuffle or saw someone running from the park—will be sought. Slowly, and very carefully, a case will be built and a suspect identified. When the police have **probable cause**—enough evidence to get a **search warrant** from a judge—they can search the person’s home or belongings.

At the suspect’s house, a discovery is made. The victim’s wallet is in a kitchen drawer. It’s time to make an arrest.



## THE RIGHT TO REMAIN SILENT

The suspect will be taken into police custody and charged with a felony. In cases of serious crimes, the accused will be put in jail unless **bail** is posted. A lawyer will be brought in to advise the accused of his or her rights. Everyone moves very carefully. One botched step by the police or the lawyer can end with the suspect being set free.

## Legal-Speak Made Simple

**PROBABLE CAUSE:** Enough evidence to make a search or press charges

**BAIL:** Money paid or property pledged for the temporary release of a person awaiting trial as a guarantee that he or she will appear in court

**ARRAIGNMENT:** A criminal proceeding at which the defendant is called before a court, told of the charges, and asked to enter a plea of guilty or not guilty

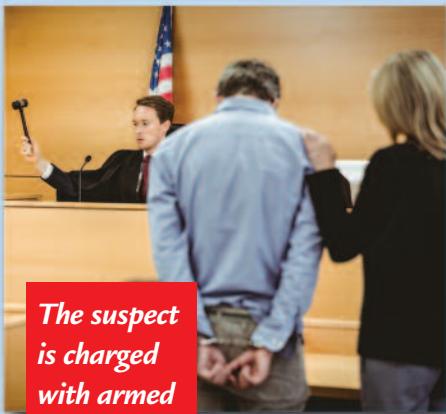
**PROSECUTORS:** The lawyers who try to prove someone is guilty of a crime

# Criminal Procedure

## THE STEPS TO JUSTICE

### ARRAIGNMENT

*The defendant appears in court. An attorney will be provided if the accused cannot afford to hire one. Probable cause is reviewed, a plea is entered, and a trial date set.*



*The suspect is charged with armed robbery.*

### THE LAWYERS

*Two opposing sides:*

#### THE DEFENSE: "HE'S INNOCENT"

*Defense lawyers try to prove their client is innocent. They try to break down eyewitness testimony or find missteps in the way the case was handled.*

#### THE PROSECUTION "HE'S GUILTY"

*Evidence is presented by prosecutors to try to prove guilt. Witnesses are called, and a case against the accused is carefully built.*

### THE VERDICT

*After presenting all the evidence and calling witnesses, each side will present closing arguments. It is up to the judge, or jury if one has been selected, to deliver a verdict.*



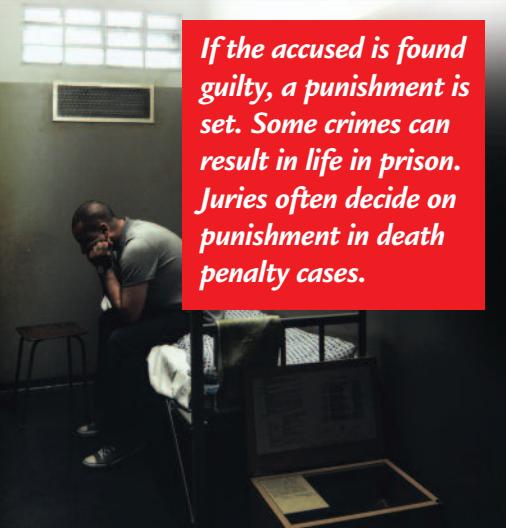
*Evidence of guilt is presented to a jury.*

## THE BILL OF RIGHTS IN ACTION

*Throughout the arrest and trial, there are certain laws that must be obeyed.*

1. There can be no unreasonable searches of a person's home or property. Permission to search must be granted by the court in a document called a search warrant.
2. People cannot be forced to be witnesses against themselves, nor can they be tried for the same crime twice (known as double jeopardy).
3. All accused deserve a speedy and public trial with an impartial jury. They also must have a lawyer to represent them, even if they cannot afford it.

*If the accused is found guilty, a punishment is set. Some crimes can result in life in prison. Juries often decide on punishment in death penalty cases.*



## WAS JUSTICE SERVED?

Let's suppose our suspect has been found guilty of armed robbery and sentenced to 35 years in prison for the crime. Is that the end of it? Our prisoner keeps proclaiming, "I'm innocent! I was framed for the crime by a jealous friend!" When that happens, the first court decision can go to a court of appeals to be retried. Less than eight percent of cases are reversed and the person set free. Still, many innocent men and women have eventually gained their freedom.

Courts resolve two kinds of legal conflicts—civil and criminal.

What happens when a trusted corporation tries to cover up a badly designed product or makes an advertising claim that is not true? Lying isn't necessarily a criminal offense, but it still should not go unpunished.



## Room for Debate

There are a lot of frivolous lawsuits that tie up the courts' resources. An example: A woman sued a big theme park for \$15,000, claiming that a Halloween Haunted House left her emotionally distressed. Should the courts refuse to hear cases that seem "frivolous," or does everyone deserve to be heard if they so wish?

# Civil Cases: Settling Disagreements

Not all trials involve crimes. In fact, most activity in federal and state courts involve disputes between two parties—people suing other people—hoping for justice. These lawsuits are called civil cases—quests to recover damages (money to compensate for an injury or loss). A court of law will be asked to step in to settle a dispute. It will end up with one party happy, and the other having to dig deep into his or her bank account.

### YOU HAVE BEEN "SERVED"

Suppose a man slips and falls in a building's hallway. It has been raining heavily. The hallway floor is wet, but no "Caution: Wet Floor" warning has been posted, nor has anyone mopped the water. The man has hurt his back and can barely move. He wants someone to pay for his pain and suffering, so he **sues** the company that owns the building. He hires a lawyer to file a complaint with the court. His lawyer then arranges for a copy of the complaint to be "served" to the person being sued.

The party that has been served must now also hire a lawyer, and the two parties are given a court date. The legal battle between the **plaintiff** (the man who slipped and fell) and the **defendant** (the company that owns the building) has begun. The two opposing sides are now involved in **litigation**.



## Legal-Speak Made Simple

**SUE:** Begin legal proceedings against a person or company

**PLAINTIFF:** The person or group who accuses another person or group of a wrongdoing

**DEFENDANT:** The person or company that has been sued

**LITIGATION:** Legal action

**DAMAGES:** Payment to compensate the defendant for injury, loss, pain, or suffering

# Civil Procedure

## THE STEPS TO A SETTLEMENT

After the complaint has been filed, both sets of lawyers will go to work. They will gather facts, interview potential witnesses, and prepare the strongest case they can. A judge will urge them to try to settle out of court.



### 2. JUDGE OR JURY?

- A judge will hear the case, but either side can ask for a jury.

### 3. A RULING IS MADE

- A verdict is issued.



### 4. FILE AN APPEAL

- Just as in a criminal trial, the verdict can be appealed to a higher court.

## MILLION DOLLAR SETTLEMENTS

It is one thing to sue over a ruined dry cleaning order. It is another to sue, or be sued, over a big betrayal of the public trust. In 2014 a huge bank was ordered to pay 17 billion dollars in penalties to the Department of Justice for financial misdoings.

Enormous settlements have been paid by big corporations that knowingly ignored design flaws in their products, such as the airplane parts maker who paid 26 million dollars in a wrongful death case, or a car company that knew that it had a faulty switch that kept airbags from inflating.

Companies that promise you will lose weight or grow thicker hair—knowing that you won’t—deserve to pay damages for their false advertising. Civil rights violations are another reason major damages are awarded to a plaintiff. It is a fair way to end an unfair situation.



## CLASS ACTIONS, BIG PENALTIES

Sometimes a large group of people are harmed by a product. What happens then? In a class action, people all across the country who have suffered as a result of a company's mistakes can join together to sue. It happens often.

Oil companies, car manufacturers, tobacco companies, financial investment firms, and pharmaceutical companies have all paid out large sums of money in class action lawsuits to people who have been wronged.



The right to due process of law is outlined in the 5th and 14th Amendments to the Constitution of the United States.

Due process of law protects against unfair governmental actions and laws.

"That's not fair!" How many times have you said that? The framers of the Constitution believed that people deserve to be treated fairly.

# Due Process Promises

Do you remember cruel King John who was forced to sign the Magna Carta by a group of angry noblemen? The men who wrote the Bill of Rights borrowed ideas from the Magna Carta to protect Americans from possible abuses by their new national government.

## LIFE. LIBERTY. PROPERTY.

Included in the Fifth Amendment are words that promise us that the government will not violate due process. It says no person will be "**deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law.**"

It all worked well at first, but with the end of slavery—and all of its *unfairness*—there were terrible abuses against the newly freed African Americans by many state and local governments. The Fifth Amendment only applied to actions by the federal government, so a second *due process* amendment was added. Drafted soon after the Civil War, the Fourteenth Amendment prohibits state and local governments from violating due process. "**No State shall ...deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law.**"

## "THE RIGHT TO REMAIN SILENT"

In the years since those amendments were written, the Supreme Court has extended due process guarantees. One example is the *Miranda warning*. When people are arrested, they must be made aware that anything they say can be used against them in a court of law.

The warning got its name from a Supreme Court trial regarding a confession made by Ernesto Miranda. He had confessed without a lawyer present to guide him. Found guilty in both trial and on appeal, Miranda's case ended up at the Supreme Court, where the justices decided his due process had been violated and Miranda was set free.

—MAGNA CARTA, Clause 39



### MIRANDA WARNING

1. You have the right to remain silent.
2. Anything you say can and will be used against you in a court of law.
3. You have the right to talk to a lawyer and have him present with you while you are being questioned.
4. If you cannot afford to hire a lawyer, one will be appointed to represent you at county expense before any questioning, if you wish.
5. If you give up your right to remain silent, and later wish to stop answering questions, no further questions will be asked.

### WAIVER

1. Do you understand each of these rights I have explained to you?
2. Having these rights in mind, do you wish to talk to me now?

Time \_\_\_\_\_

SIGNATURE \_\_\_\_\_

Date \_\_\_\_\_

OFFICER ADVISING RIGHTS

# The Burden of Proof

## DUE PROCESS IN ACTION

"Innocent until proven guilty." Whether a person fails to stop for a red light and gets a summons, or is arrested for shoplifting, following due process is almost always the same—five important steps on the way to justice.

### 3. PLEADING NOT GUILTY?

- You must be allowed to explain your side of the story, if you wish to fight the charge.

"Your Honor, I cannot possibly have been going that fast. I always obey the speed limit."

### 1. WHAT IS THE CHARGE?

- The charges against you must be explained.

"I pulled you over because you were speeding."



### 2. YOU BROKE THIS LAW

- You must be told exactly what you did wrong.

"You were going 55 in a 40-mile-per-hour zone."



### 4. EVIDENCE: EXHIBIT "A"

- The government must show proof that you broke a law.

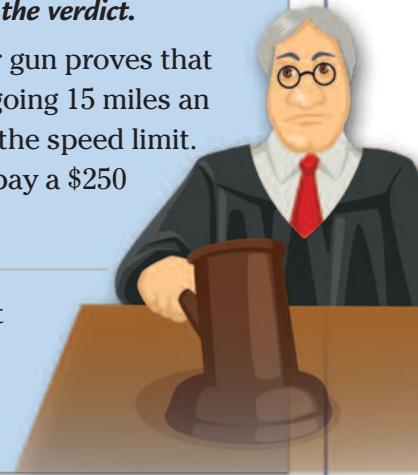
"Here is the radar gun report. The radar gun was calibrated in the police lab that day."



### 5. THE COURT FINDS YOU GUILTY

- The court must explain the basis for the verdict.

"The radar gun proves that you were going 15 miles an hour over the speed limit. You must pay a \$250 fine."



**Life, liberty, and property**—three key words to remember when thinking about due process. Due process does not give us the right to do as we wish. It is a promise. We must promise to respect the laws of town, state, and nation and, in return, our government must respect all legal rights owed to us as citizens.

## WAS DUE PROCESS VIOLATED?

If you were a judge, what would you decide?

A man involved in a car accident refused to take a Breathalyzer test. These small handheld machines can tell if a person has consumed too much alcohol. When the driver refused, the officer on the scene immediately took away the man's driver's license for 90 days. The driver filed a charge of due process violation because there had been no hearing prior to the seizing of his license. Was due process violated? What do you think?



# The Court at School

STUDENTS AND THE LAW



Mary Beth Tinker and her brother John proudly display the armbands that got them into so much trouble.

Supreme Court of the United States  
395 - - - October Term, 1966

## TINKER v. DES MOINES, 1969

- Does a prohibition against wearing armbands in public school as a protest violate a student's First Amendment rights?

In 1965, a group of students decided to wear black armbands to school to protest the Vietnam War. The principals of their school heard about the plan and warned that any student wearing an armband would be asked to remove it. If they did not, they would be suspended. Several students proudly wore their armbands and were sent home. Through their parents, the students sued the school district for censoring their free speech, but a district court voted in favor of the school district. School discipline must be upheld, they said. The U.S. Court of Appeals also agreed, so the students petitioned the Supreme Court.

**THE VERDICT:** *The Supreme Court ruled 7 to 2 in favor of the students! Students have a right to free speech and expression as long as it does not disrupt the school.*

## NEW JERSEY v. T.L.O., 1985

- Does the "search warrant" concept of the Fourth Amendment apply to searches conducted by school officials in public schools?

Caught smoking in a school bathroom, a 14-year-old girl was brought to the principal's office. She denied ever having smoked, so the assistant principal at Piscataway High School searched her purse. Not only did he find cigarettes, he also found marijuana, possession of which was a state crime, and other items that strongly suggested she was a drug dealer. A New Jersey Juvenile and Domestic Relations Court found her guilty. She appealed the case based on Fourth Amendment violations.

**THE VERDICT:** *The court ruled against T.L.O. (only her initials were used because she was a minor), because the search had been conducted for a non-criminal purpose: to keep contraband out of public schools.*



Should "drug-sniffing" dogs be allowed to patrol school lockers without probable cause?

## HAZELWOOD v. KUHLMEIER, 1988

- Does freedom of the press apply to a high school newspaper?

The *Spectrum* was the student-run newspaper at Hazelwood East High School in St. Louis, Missouri. The students had written two articles—one about teen pregnancy and the other on divorce. The principal believed these two topics did not belong in a school publication, so he cut two pages from the newspaper without telling the students. Upset because they had not even been given a chance to make changes, the students went to the district court. Wasn't this in violation of the decision in *Tinker v. Des Moines*?

When the court sided with the school, the students appealed the ruling. The U.S. Court of Appeals reversed the lower court's decision and found in favor of the students. But victory was short-lived. The school went to the Supreme Court to appeal the decision.

**THE VERDICT:** *The Supreme Court ruled 5 to 3 in favor of the school. Public schools do not have to allow free speech if it is at odds with the school's educational mission. Free speech outside of school is one thing. Inside, it is up to the school.*



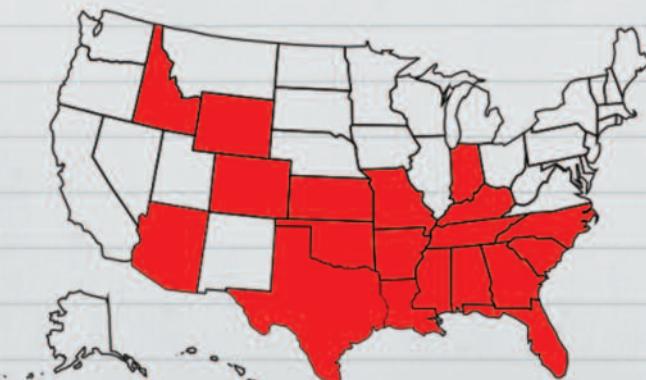
## INGRAHAM v. WRIGHT, 1977

- Do schools have the right to spank a student?

The Eighth Amendment bans "cruel and unusual punishment," so when James Ingraham, an eighth-grade student at a junior high school in Florida, was paddled more than 20 times by the principal while being held down by two other school officials, a lot of people felt the punishment was particularly cruel. Ingraham's parents filed a complaint, stating that the use of physical punishment violated both the Eighth Amendment and the due process clause of the Fourteenth Amendment, which requires prior notice and an opportunity to be heard.

A district court dismissed the complaint, and the decision was upheld by the court of appeals. From there the case went to the Supreme Court.

**THE VERDICT:** *Ingraham lost his case. Fortunately, Virginia does not allow physical punishments in the schools, but as of 2015, 19 states (shown in red on this map) still allow it. Some require parental permission, but many do not.*



# Chapter 8 Review

*Use pages 134–135 to answer questions 1–2 in complete sentences.*

1. The United States has a dual court system. What does that mean?
2. Describe the organization of federal and state courts.

*Use pages 136–137 to answer question 3.*

3. Explain the court's power of judicial review in a short paragraph. Be sure to use the following terms: **constitutional** • **Marbury v. Madison** • **Supreme Court**

*Use pages 138–139 to answer question 4 in complete sentences.*

4. The Sixth Amendment states you have the right to an attorney. How does the case *Gideon v. Wainwright* add to that right?

*Use pages 140–141 to answer question 5.*

5. Copy the criminal case timeline for a misdemeanor. Place the following terms on the timeline in the order they occur, assuming probable cause was established.

**Bail/Jail • Arrest • Trial • Verdict • Arraignment • Possible appeal**



*Use pages 142–143 to answer questions 6–7 in complete sentences.*

6. How is a civil case different from a criminal case?
7. In a civil case who is the plaintiff? Who is the defendant?

*Use pages 144–145 to answer questions 8–9 in complete sentences.*

8. Which amendment prohibits state and local governments from violating due process?
9. List three examples of your due process protections.

*Use pages 146–147 to answer question 10.*

10. Copy and complete the chart to review how these cases impact students.

CASE	IMPACT ON STUDENTS
Tinker v. Des Moines	
New Jersey v. T.L.O.	
Hazelwood v. Kuhlmeier	
Ingraham v. Wright	

# Apply Your Learning

1. The U.S. has a dual court system consisting of state and federal courts. Federal judges serve for life while Virginia state judges are appointed for fixed terms.

Should federal judges serve for life? Brainstorm a list of costs and benefits that result from federal judges and justices having no term limits. Review your list; do the expected costs outweigh the benefits or do the benefits outweigh the costs? Using a decision-making model to analyze costs and benefits of a choice serves several purposes. Read each purpose below and answer the corresponding questions:

- **Purpose #1:** Decision-making models help you better understand the choices people faced in the past. Why do you think the Founding Fathers made the choice they did on term limits for the judicial branch?
  - **Purpose #2:** Decision-making models help you make decisions for the future. Based on your analysis, what do you think should be the future of judicial terms?
- 

2. In a criminal case, a court determines whether a person accused of breaking the law is guilty or not guilty of a misdemeanor or a felony. In a civil case, a court settles a disagreement between two parties to recover damages or receive compensation.

The Fifth Amendment protects against double jeopardy—you cannot be tried twice for the same crime. Research the history of double jeopardy and create a timeline that shows the history of this protection. Use your timeline to draw conclusions about how laws are designed to protect citizens.

Sometimes there are situations where a criminal and civil trial can occur from the same event. Does this violate the constitutional protection of double jeopardy? Why or why not? Create a scenario describing someone who is on trial for a crime and is being sued in a related civil case. Use content-specific vocabulary from pages 140–143 in your scenario.

---

## Imagine...

Imagine that you are the principal of your school. Using the ruling of *Tinker v. Des Moines* found on page 146 and your school's student code of conduct, create a presentation for the student body. Explain why—or why not—certain actions, behaviors, or items should, or should not, be permitted in your school.

*“Empty pockets never held anyone back. Only empty heads and empty hearts can do that.”*

—NORMAN VINCENT PEALE

American Minister and Author

MAKING SENSE  
OF DOLLARS  
AND CENTS

# AMERICA AND ITS RESOURCES



G 87

Secretary of the Treasury.



*Because of scarcity, consumers, producers, and governments are forced to make choices.*

*All choices have opportunity costs. Whenever you make a choice, you are actually making two choices because whenever you choose to do one thing, you choose not to do something else. What you choose not to do is your opportunity cost.*

# Vital Resources

## KEY PARTS TO KNOW

Take a look around you. You are surrounded by **goods**. Your shoes, your desk, this book—all are goods. Goods (products) are items that are made from resources.

### NATURAL RESOURCES

- All the wonderful things that come from nature, such as wood, coal, sand, and water.*



### CAPITAL RESOURCES

- The things needed to produce goods—tools, factory buildings, machinery.*



*Money and the economy are important to the quality of our lives. When the economy is strong, people have jobs. Life is easier. Money cannot buy us happiness, but it can buy us food and shelter.*

# Let's Talk Economics!

Can you speak Spanish? Chinese? French? Awesome! Here is another language to learn: the language of **economics**.

Economics is the study of decision-making—everything that has to do with making goods and services, using goods and services, and paying for goods and services.



### ENTREPRENEURIAL RESOURCES

- Entrepreneurs are a special kind of human resource. They think of ideas for new products or businesses and then work to make their dreams a reality.*

### HUMAN RESOURCES

- People make goods and provide services. They cut hair, build cars, perform surgery, make pizzas, and so much more.*

## Words to Know

### ► **entrepreneur**

(on-truh-pruh-noor)

*A person who thinks of an idea for a new product or business and then works to build that business*

### ► **entrepreneurial**

(on-truh-pruh-noor-e-ul)

*Taking a financial risk by starting a new business*

## SO MANY CHOICES!

Every day you make **choices**. Cereal or eggs? Jeans or chinos? Blue or purple?

When you make a choice, you have to pick an item or an action from a set of possible alternatives. We are constantly making decisions, but often we have to study our choices because we cannot have everything we want. Maybe the movie you want to watch is playing for only one more day, or the cereal you craved is all gone. The amounts of goods and services available are limited. Choosing can be hard.



# Four Important Ideas

## THE LANGUAGE OF ECONOMICS

### PRODUCTION

- *Mixing human, natural, capital, and entrepreneurial resources to make goods and provide services*

This yummy pizza is a perfect example of **production**. An entrepreneur had an idea for an organic pizza restaurant. A human resource mixed, tossed, and stretched the dough. The vegetables? Lots of chopped-up natural resources! The whole thing was baked in a capital resource—an oven. The result? This consumer gets a delicious “everything” pie.



### CONSUMPTION

- *Using goods and services*

When you eat a slice of pizza, get your hair cut, or buy a smartphone app, you are using goods and services. Consumers just like you have a lot of clout! The choices you make today just might determine what will be produced in the future.

### OPPORTUNITY COST

- *What you lose when you make a choice*

Let's pretend you need new shoes. You have enough money for one pair. Should you pick the electric blue sneakers or the sensible boots that will not go out of style? Whenever you make a choice you are actually making two choices. At the same time you choose to do one thing, you are choosing *not* to do something else. What you choose *not* to do is your **opportunity cost**.



### SCARCITY

- *When there is not enough to go around*

All resources and goods are limited, but sometimes they run out almost entirely. In some places on Earth, there is not enough water. It is scarce. **Scarcity** is the inability to satisfy all wants at the same time. It is a fact of life, and sometimes it can be dangerous.

The problem of scarcity affects all of us, from individuals and organizations to businesses and governments. The reality is that we have unlimited wants, but our resources are limited. Often, the goods and services we want exceed our ability to produce them. Scarcity forces consumers, producers, and governments to make difficult choices.



**Are shortages and scarcity the same thing? No! When a major blizzard or hurricane is bearing down, many supermarkets run out of items, such as bread and bottled water, which creates a shortage. Demand has exceeded the supply.**

*Every country must develop an economic system to determine how to use its limited productive resources.*

*The key factor in determining the type of economy a country has is the extent of government involvement.*

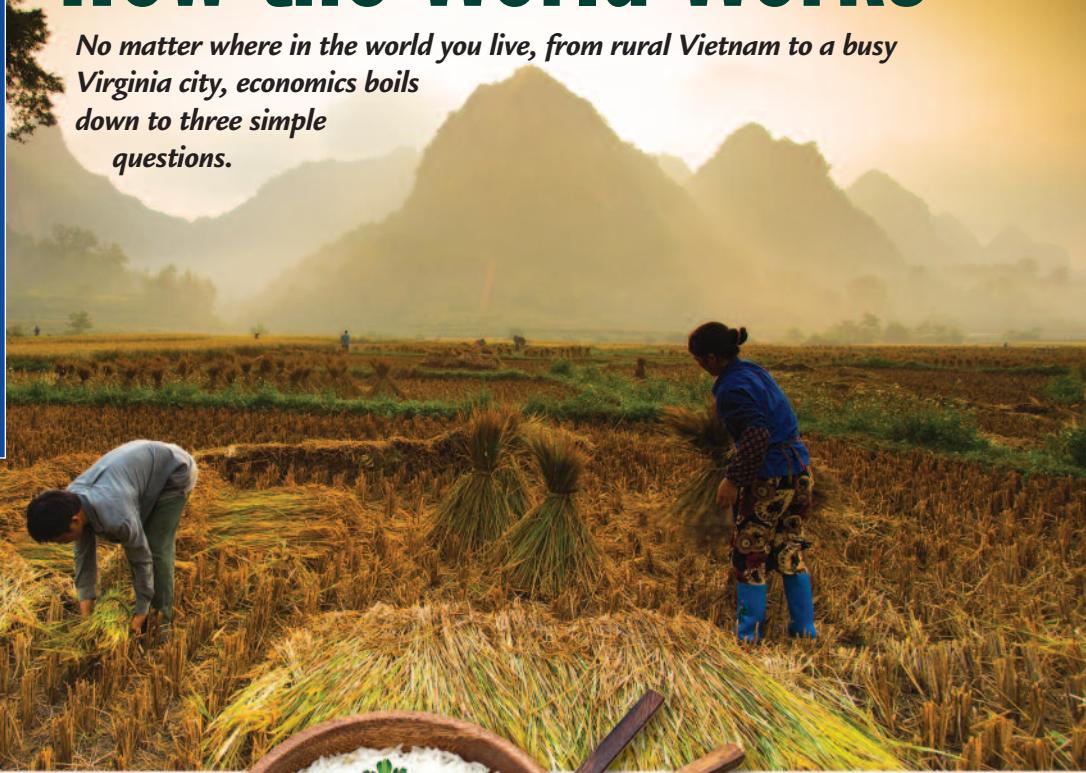
*The greater the amount of decision-making that is left to the individual, the closer a system is to a free market system.*

*The greater the amount of decision-making that is left to a centralized authority, the closer the system is to a command system.*

**Across many parts of Asia, rice is the most important crop grown.**

# How the World Works

*No matter where in the world you live, from rural Vietnam to a busy Virginia city, economics boils down to three simple questions.*



## WHAT? HOW? FOR WHOM?

Even the first hunter-gatherers chasing after a giant mammoth had to make economic decisions. What should they hunt? How would they do it? How would the meat be shared? For as long as there have been humans, simple economic principles have guided their lives.

**What shall we produce?**

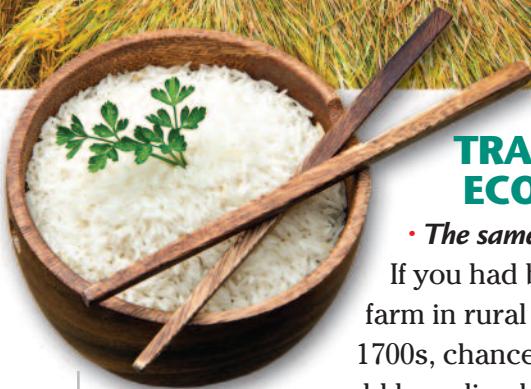
**How will we produce it?**

**For whom will it be produced?**

Today, in some parts of the world, people still live much as their ancestors did. They grow the same crops their great-great-grandparents did, using the same tools to do it.

In other parts of the world, governments keep an iron grip on production and control all the money flow. There are countries where people make or grow whatever they feel like making or growing, with almost no government involvement. Here in the United States, we live in an economy with *some* government controls.

Each type of economy answers those three big questions in its own unique way.



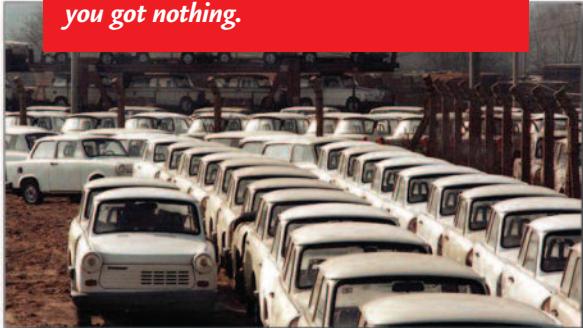
## TRADITIONAL ECONOMY

*• The same for centuries*

If you had been born on a farm in rural Virginia in the 1700s, chances are you would have lived and worked there your entire life. You would have been a farmer, even if you wanted to be a doctor. You would plant the crops your parents knew about and preserve or cook them following family recipes. Your children would probably be farmers, and their children would become farmers as well.

In its early years as a colony, Virginia survived and then thrived by growing tobacco. To those early farmers the answers to the three big economic questions were these: 1. We will produce tobacco. 2. We will learn the best ways to grow it, dry it, and prepare it for sale. 3. In addition to using it ourselves, we will sell it to Great Britain to earn money to buy the other things we cannot make here in Virginia. That plan worked for 200 years.

*The East German Trabant product line: one model, one color, poorly made, and the only car sold in the country. If you wanted a car, you got a “Trabby” or you got nothing.*



## COMMAND ECONOMY

### • The government controls it all

In the years between the end of World War II (in 1945) and the fall of the Berlin Wall (in 1989), much of Eastern Europe was under Communist rule. They had a **command economy**, which meant that the state ran and owned everything. Everyone had a job but the state decided what that job was. The government planned what would be produced and how much of it would be made. That often meant ONLY a beige car or a brown suit or potato soup for dinner most nights. The questions of *What? How? and For whom?* were answered by the government.

## A FREE MARKET ECONOMY

### • The people decide

A **free market economy** is the total opposite of a command economy. In a free market anyone can make or sell a product, but the focus on profit may lead some companies to cheat consumers, so buyers must beware. In the olden days, people literally sold “miracle-cure” snake oils and other worthless potions. Some were even harmful. The questions of *What? How? and For Whom?* were answered by individuals.

*A free market economy can lead to some very bizarre products.*



# A Mixed Economy

## A FREE MARKET WITH GOVERNMENT PROTECTIONS



*From ice cream to aspirin, the federal government sets standards to try to make sure our food and medicines are safe.*

Most economies today, including ours, are mixed economies. There is a good reason. This system combines the output of an enormous variety of goods and services with a safety net of protection mandated by our government. It honors **consumer sovereignty**—where the wants and needs of consumers dictate what products are made.

People are the heart and soul of our economy.

They are the ones who own or run businesses.

Some small businesses will grow into huge corporations. Others will remain “mom-and-pop” operations that sell just a few products. Both will decide what to sell after carefully studying what consumers are willing to buy.

The government is a major consumer. It makes huge purchases from the public sector—everything from tanks and planes for the armed forces to school lunches for hungry students. Besides being a consumer itself, the government also plays a very big role as a watchdog. It tries to make sure that businesses do not cheat the buying public.

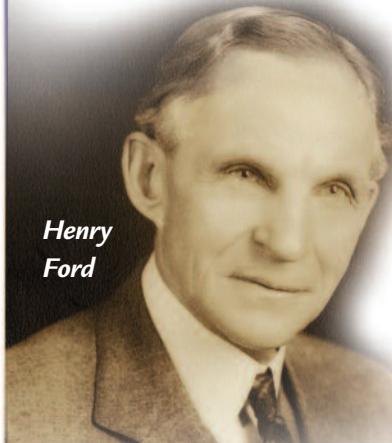
*The United States economy is primarily a free market economy, but is characterized as a mixed economy.*

# The American Way

*Make it better. Make it cheaper. Make it easier to use. The U.S. economy is always changing, always pushing forward.*

One hallmark of America's economy is the right to own **private property**—homes, cars, and businesses—without undue interference from the government. Let's use the story of the car in America as a perfect way to understand our nation's mixed economy and the way it works.

Henry Ford



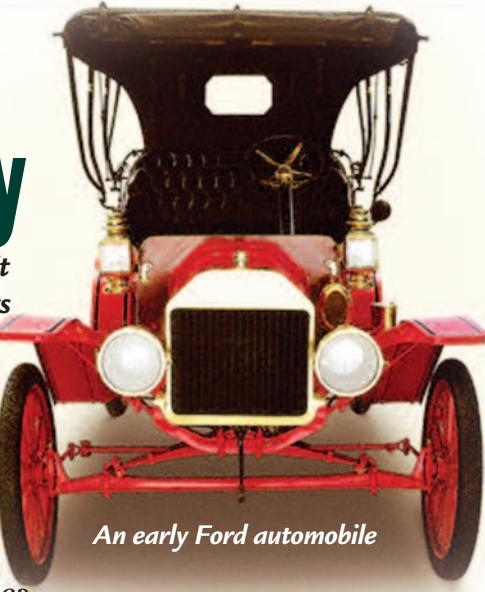
## WHAT DOES MY CUSTOMER WANT?

In the very early 1900s, cars were just beginning to take to the roads. Each was made by hand and all were very expensive. Henry Ford—a brilliant entrepreneur—had an idea about how to make them for less money, so he rolled up his sleeves, figured out how much cash he needed to start a business, borrowed \$1,200 from some friends, and got to work.

An affordable car. That was the goal. Would his Model T be the car that got every American behind the wheel? The first Model Ts sold for about \$850, but ten years later, with his assembly lines getting more efficient by the day, he was selling a Model T for \$290 and still making a handsome profit.

## THE GOAL OF BUSINESS: PROFIT MOTIVE

**Profits** are a company's earnings after all of its expenses have been paid. After Ford paid his rent, paid for all the materials needed to build cars, and paid his workers, he was left with a pile of cash. His profit motive was to make even more money! He repaid the people who had loaned him money and took his profits and used them to build more factories. He paid higher wages to his employees to keep them happy, so they, too, could buy cars! Ford also kept studying ways to make his cars better. The farm boy from Dearborn, Michigan, was well on his way to becoming one of the world's richest men.



*An early Ford automobile*

## MY CAR IS BETTER THAN YOURS

When Ford opened his first assembly line in 1913, there were hundreds of carmakers in America. By the 1970s, there were only three major ones—Ford, Chevrolet, and Chrysler. **Competition** had put the rest out of business, but competition is a good thing. When foreign carmakers started selling safer, cheaper, more fuel-efficient cars in America, it pushed U.S. carmakers to offer more variety and better quality, often at lower prices.



*The unloved Ford Edsel*

## THE PUBLIC SPEAKS

The customer is king. Without you spending your money, no business can survive. The official economics term for this is **consumer sovereignty**. When Ford designed an ugly, overpriced car, the *Edsel*, the public voted with their wallets. Because they chose not to buy it, the car was deemed a dismal failure and production was quickly halted.

*Tesla is a new carmaker selling only electric cars. This company is pioneering driverless cars as well.*



# The Quest for Best

HOW CARS GET BETTER



**SAFETY FEATURES**



**CRASH TESTING**

*• Government mandates combined with foreign competition in the auto industry have led to many safety improvements and spurred the move toward new technologies.*

In the car's first decade, all sorts of problems cropped up. Speeding, reckless driving, crashes, and pedestrians getting hit were leading to too many deaths. The government stepped in to protect its citizens from harm. Laws were written, fines levied, traffic signals installed, and drunk drivers were arrested. The fatality rate dropped.

By the 1980s, states began passing seat belt laws. Crash testing led to better bumpers. In 1998 the government mandated air bags in every car. These forced technological changes eventually made cars much safer. Now fuel efficiency is the big buzzword as carmakers shift from gasoline-powered to hybrid and all-electric cars. This helps the environment and reduces our need for fossil fuels. When carmakers work closely with the government, consumers can benefit.

## GOVERNMENT'S ROLE

In America, individuals and businesses generally operate without undue interference from the government. Prices are set by the business owner and are determined by **supply and demand** as buyers and sellers interact in the marketplace. We call this **free enterprise**. But let's think about a product like a car. What do we do when businesses fail to provide cars as safe and fuel-efficient as consumers would like? In this case, the government can help. It can push for new regulations, expecting that the benefits to our health and safety will outweigh the costs.

## SEAT BELT LAWS



*Car seats for infants and toddlers have saved countless lives.*



**ECO-FRIENDLY CARS**

*There are three basic ways that businesses organize to earn profits.*

*Entrepreneurs play an important role in all three types of business organizations.*

# Getting Down to Business

*Think about the three big economic questions that drive all economies. Those questions are answered by three different types of companies.*

Do you like working on your own or do you and your best friend do everything together? Maybe you prefer having a great team to share the work? Just as people have different personalities, so too, do businesses.

## PROFIT AND RISK

Many small businesses, such as florists and bakeries, are owned by one person. If the business does well, the profits are all theirs, because they have taken the risk of investing their own money. Law and architecture firms tend toward partnerships for sharing the workload and dividing the profits. As a business grows bigger, the owners might choose the option of registering with a state government to become a **corporation**.

## Words to Know

### ► **corporation** (core-poor-a-shun)

*A group that legally acts as a single business entity, sharing ownership and profits, but with some financial protection for shareholders*

### ► **proprietorship** (pro-pry-it-ur-ship)

*Owning a business with full responsibility for running it*



## 1. SOLE PROPRIETORSHIP

*This bike shop owner is responsible for every aspect of his business. He pays all the bills but also gets to keep all the profits.*

## 2. PARTNERSHIP

*These architects share the profits but also all the risks.*



## 3. CORPORATIONS

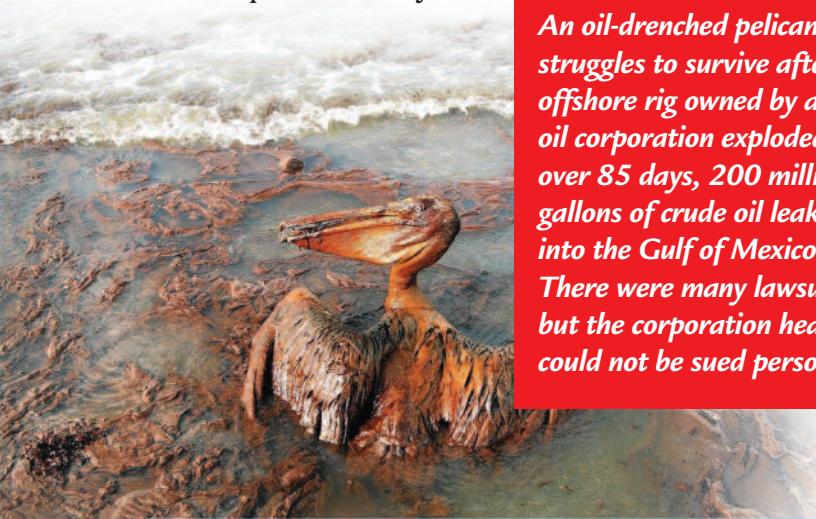
*Multiple owners share the profits but have some legal protections.*



## WHY BECOME A CORPORATION?

Sole proprietorships and partnerships are very straightforward. Corporations are a lot more complicated. Think of the biggest companies you can: McDonald's, Exxon, all the carmakers. Think about all the thousands of people it takes to run those companies and the responsibility they bear for the products they sell.

*An oil-drenched pelican struggles to survive after an offshore rig owned by a big oil corporation exploded. For over 85 days, 200 million gallons of crude oil leaked into the Gulf of Mexico. There were many lawsuits, but the corporation heads could not be sued personally.*



Think about Henry Ford and his great idea to produce a cheaper car. Think of Bill Gates who started Microsoft, or Steve Jobs and Steve Wozniak who created Apple—the people who figured out how to make computers smaller and easy to use. And what about Facebook, Twitter, and countless other great websites or new apps?

The people behind these ideas were entrepreneurs—risk takers who used all their energy and resources to make a product or sell a service. Because they took all the risks, they reaped the huge profits.

Entrepreneurs bring excitement! They stir up the marketplace by bringing new goods and services to consumers. When an entrepreneur has a new idea and delivers a product in an exciting, new way, it can lead to technological progress and economic growth.

Entrepreneurs can set up a sole proprietorship, a partnership, or a corporation—whatever feels most comfortable. But one thing is true. Being an entrepreneur means you must wear many hats: from creator to salesperson to shipping clerk to bill payer to fund-raiser.

## PROTECTION FOR THE OWNERS

In a corporation, shareholders—the owners and all the other people who have invested in the company—cannot be held personally responsible if something disastrous happens.

Suppose a corporation runs out of money, is unable to pay its bills, and has to close its offices. All the people to whom it owes money will have to settle for whatever can be had by selling off the company's assets, but the homes and personal belongings of the owners can seldom be touched.

Another benefit corporations have is protecting some of their profits from taxes through special tax deductions. There is a reason that so many big companies have opted to incorporate. It is often good business sense.

# New Ideas, Big Risks

ENTREPRENEURS WITH  
BIG DREAMS

*There are a thousand small details to think about when you run a “start-up.”*





*Both buyers and sellers respond to price changes. When prices change, buyers change the quantity they are willing and able to buy, and sellers change the quantity they are willing and able to bring to market.*

*Neither supply nor demand alone can set a price.*

*Why are these people fighting? They all want these discounted TVs, but there are limited numbers.*

*They are learning that a driving force in economics is the interaction of...*

# Supply and Demand

Even if you have several million dollars in the bank, you must make economic decisions every time you go shopping. How much are you willing to pay?

## THE PRICE IS RIGHT!

Put simply, **price** is the amount of money exchanged for a good or service. A lot of thought goes into the price of an item. How much does it cost to design and produce it? How much to get it to the marketplace? What about the salaries of the salespeople and rent for the building in which it is sold? But price is just one part of the economic puzzle.

If no one wants the product, how much is it worth? If everyone wants it and folks are lining up to get it, *then* how much is it worth? Neither supply nor demand alone can set the price. It's very complicated!

Someone selling a good or service hopes to get supply and demand perfectly balanced, much like a perfectly balanced seesaw. If demand increases, prices rise. If supply increases, prices fall.



# I Have It, You Want It

## THE LAWS OF SUPPLY AND DEMAND

There are laws to keep us safe. There are laws of physics. There are also laws in economics—certain “truths” that help explain how people behave when it is time to shop.

**The Law of Demand** says that a consumer will buy more of a good or service at a lower price and less at a higher price. Suppose Jazzy Jeans has decided to cut the price of their “Super-J jeans” from \$50.00 to \$25.00. They can still make a good profit. When you go shopping for a new pair of jeans, you buy Super-Js because they cost less than the other brands. You tell your friends about the great price, and they tell *their* friends. Soon, as word of Jazzy Jeans’s great price gets out, it will lead to greater demand.

**The Law of Supply** states that producers will make more of a product when they can sell it a higher price, and produce less when they can sell at a lower price. Let’s say that Super-J’s success gets noticed by lots of companies. They all start producing \$25.00 jeans. The market price falls because there is a greater supply, so Super-J will now start to produce less. Producers keep an eye on price, making less when the market price falls.



*How much more would you be willing to pay for “designer” jeans? Do labels make a difference when you go shopping?*

## FROM CHRISTMAS TREES TO CONCERT TICKETS

There are a lot of things to think about when it comes to supply and demand. Who wants to buy a Christmas tree three days after the holiday? A pro-team’s T-shirts will sell like crazy during the playoffs leading up to the big game. But if they lose, sales of those same T-shirts will plummet.

Sometimes, companies do not make enough of an item that people are clamoring for, in order to create a buzz. Think about the sensation created when tickets to a sold-out rock concert sell for three times the price printed on the ticket!

If demand increases, prices rise. If supply increases, prices fall. It’s that simple.



## LOOKING FOR EQUILIBRIUM

There is a “sweet spot” in supply and demand. It is the place of perfect balance where the two meet—the **equilibrium price**. Everyone who wants to sell at a specific price can, and everyone who wants to buy at that price can buy. When a manufacturer has a product that people want, and the product is priced well, it will sell.



*Resources, goods and services, and money flow continuously among households, businesses, and markets in the United States economy.*

## THE CIRCLE OF ECONOMIC LIFE

Using land, labor, capital, and entrepreneurial resources, businesses make products or provide services. Those products and services are then purchased by the people who provided the resources in the first place. This is how our economy moves. Let's follow the flow of cupcakes as an example.



*People pay for cupcakes.*



*People bring home the cupcakes they have paid for.*

## HOUSEHOLDS

• *Households (also called individuals) own and sell the resources used in production.*

- *They use the income they earn to buy goods and services.*



*In return for payments that create their incomes, people sell their resources to businesses.*

*Individuals are paid for the resources they provide, including labor.*



# Economic Flow

*A circular flow diagram is a way to visualize and categorize activity within an economy. Goods, services, and resources flow in one direction. Money flows in the opposite direction. Follow the path of the dollar bill to see how it all works.*



## THE PRODUCT MARKET



*The place where the end products—in this case, cupcakes—are sold and households can buy them.*

## PLUS:



## GOVERNMENT

*The government spends money, adding to the flow. It collects taxes from households and businesses, subtracting from the flow.*



## INVESTMENT & SAVING

*Investment adds to the flow.  
Saving subtracts from the flow.*

## FOREIGN MARKETS

*We sell goods and services to countries overseas, which adds to the flow. We import items from abroad, which subtracts from the flow.*

## THE RESOURCES MARKET

*The place where natural, human, and entrepreneurial resources are exchanged. Households sell and manufacturers buy.*



# Betty's Bakery

## A CASE STUDY

*Money paid by cupcake buyers flows to the cupcake bakery.*



*Cupcake makers take their cupcakes to the product market to sell them.*

### BUSINESSES

- Businesses like Betty's Bakery buy resources, such as flour, sugar, and labor.
- Includes all businesses, large and small, from airplane builders to zinc mining.



*Resources flow to businesses like Betty's Bakery.*

*Betty must buy natural, human, and capital resources.*



### A TALE OF A CUPCAKE

Betty's Bakery makes the best cupcakes in town. What does she need to run her business? Betty needs ingredients—flour, eggs, milk, sugar, chocolate. She will buy those from households. She will also need helpers.

People are an important resource. Of course, she also must have a workspace and equipment.

### RESOURCE SOURCES

In the story of our cupcake there is a farmer who owns land and grows wheat. Another raises chickens and cows for eggs and milk. Still another owns a factory that processes sugar. A truck driver delivers all these goods to Betty's shop where her master baker, Bobbie, will squeeze out the batter.

### THE MONEY GOES OUT

Betty has to pay for her goods and services. She also has to pay taxes to stay in business. Governments use revenues to offer services vital to Betty and everyone else, such as providing fire and police protection. And kids who come up through the public school system can use their educations to get good jobs and buy lots of cupcakes.

### THE MONEY COMES IN

Betty's cupcakes are so good that a long line forms every day. People in the area flock to her bakery, and her business is thriving. Her money flowed out as she paid her resource providers, but money is flowing in as people clamor for more cupcakes.

Now Betty would like to open a second bakery. She has been saving some of the money from her profits to expand, and an investor has stepped in with more money. Out the money goes, into the great circle of economic flow, and the cycle begins again!

*Private financial institutions help facilitate an exchange of money between savers and borrowers.*

*Keeping money under a mattress or in jam jars is a terrible idea!*

# Put It in the Bank

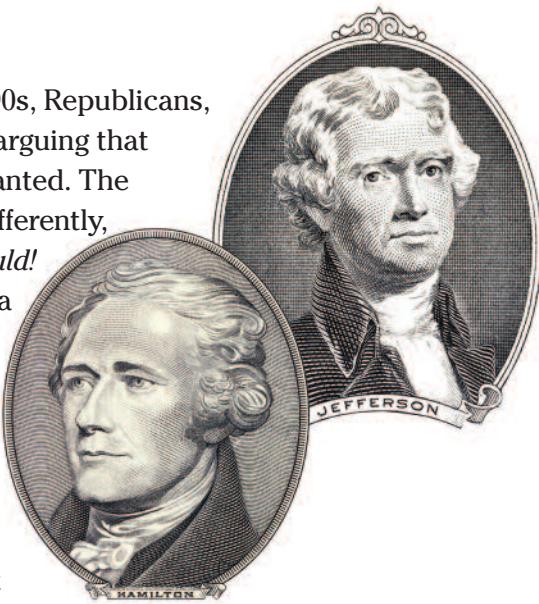


"Will that be cash or credit?" How many times have you heard someone ask that? It is a simple question, but the story of America's banking system is anything but simple. Today, we may walk up to a cash machine and slide a credit or debit card into a slot, then walk away with spending money, but it has not always been like that.

## BANK BEGINNINGS

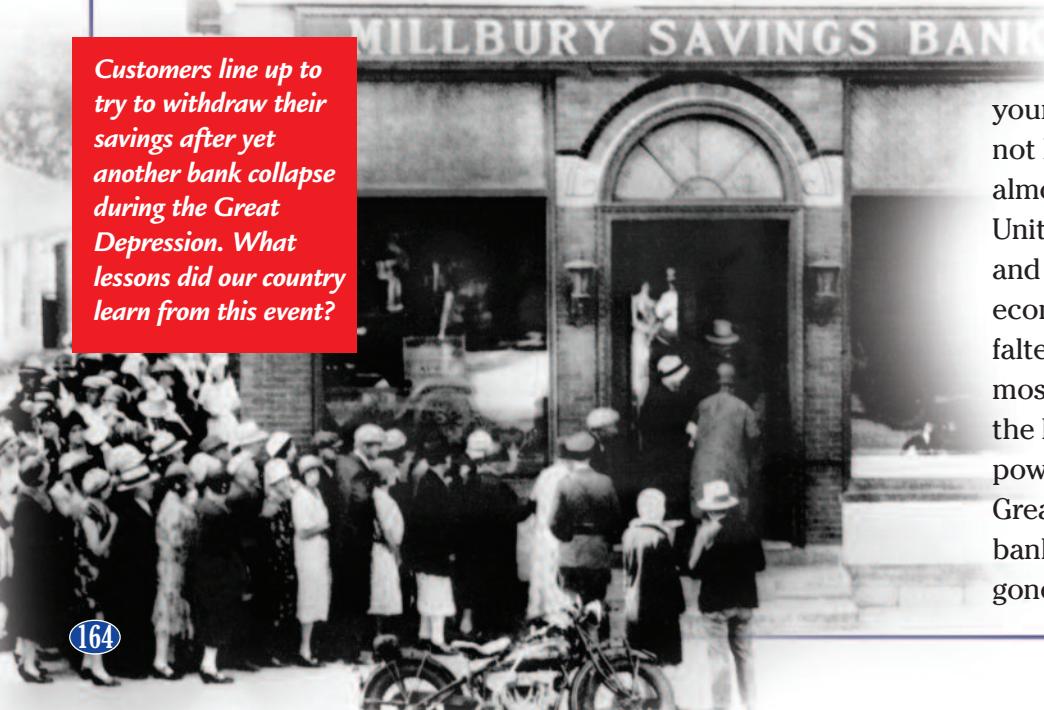
What happens when you mix economics with politics? In the 1790s, Republicans, such as Thomas Jefferson, interpreted the Constitution narrowly, arguing that Congress could *only* use those powers that had been expressly granted. The Federalists, including Alexander Hamilton, read the Constitution differently, thinking if it did not say Congress *could not*, that implied that it *could*!

Nowhere did the Constitution deny Congress the power to have a national bank. So in 1791, the *Bank of the United States* was created, but its charter expired after 20 years. In 1816 Congress created a second bank, but its charter also expired after 20 years. As a result, more years of anything-goes banking followed. During the difficult days of the Civil War, Congress created a new national banking system. Finally, in 1913, our current system, the Federal Reserve, was set in place. States also chartered banks, but there were still many flaws with the banking system.



## UNSTABLE!

**Customers line up to try to withdraw their savings after yet another bank collapse during the Great Depression. What lessons did our country learn from this event?**



How would you feel if you went to the bank to withdraw your money and were told you could not have it? By 1920 there were almost 30,000 different banks in the United States. Most of them were tiny and had strong ties to the local economy. If the local economy faltered, the bank crashed, losing most of its customers' money. Even the Federal Reserve had limited powers back then, and during the Great Depression, thousands of small banks failed. Where had the money gone? How do banks work?

## BANK BASICS

A bank—sometimes called a private financial institution—is a business. When you put money into a bank, it doesn’t just sit there. Your account is credited with your deposit, but the bank then loans your money to someone else and makes a profit. Banks can legally loan upward of 90 percent of the money they take in. At any given time there is not a lot of cash in a bank.

If you want to buy a house, a car, or start a business, and you can prove that you will be able to pay it back, a bank will lend you money. Banks make their profits by adding an interest charge in every monthly payment a borrower makes.

During the Great Depression, about 9,000 banks failed because people lost their jobs and could not pay back their loans. These days, the government insures the money on deposit in banks, so your savings stay safe.

### "INTEREST"-ING!

Because banks need you to put your money within their “walls,” they encourage you to save by paying interest to depositors. Interest rates are always changing, depending on the health of the economy. So let’s pretend that the banks are paying 5 percent interest on savings accounts every year. Let’s say you have deposited \$100 in an account. By the end of the year you will have \$105 in the bank.

Now, at the same time, the bank has loaned most of your \$100 to a shopkeeper who wants to buy a new sign for her storefront. The bank gives her \$100, but she must pay them back with *10% interest* every year the money is out of the bank. That interest adds up!

### CREDIT OR DEBIT?

Go to the mall, order a pizza, or fill the car’s gas tank—then charge it! More and more, people are carrying less cash and more plastic. Smartphone apps can also be used to pay for things. Electronic banking transactions are big moneymakers for banks. Some charge a fee to use their cash machines, and they all charge hefty interest if you cannot pay your entire bill at the end of the month. You do NOT want to carry a balance on your credit card! Credit must be used wisely!

# Two Ways to Bank

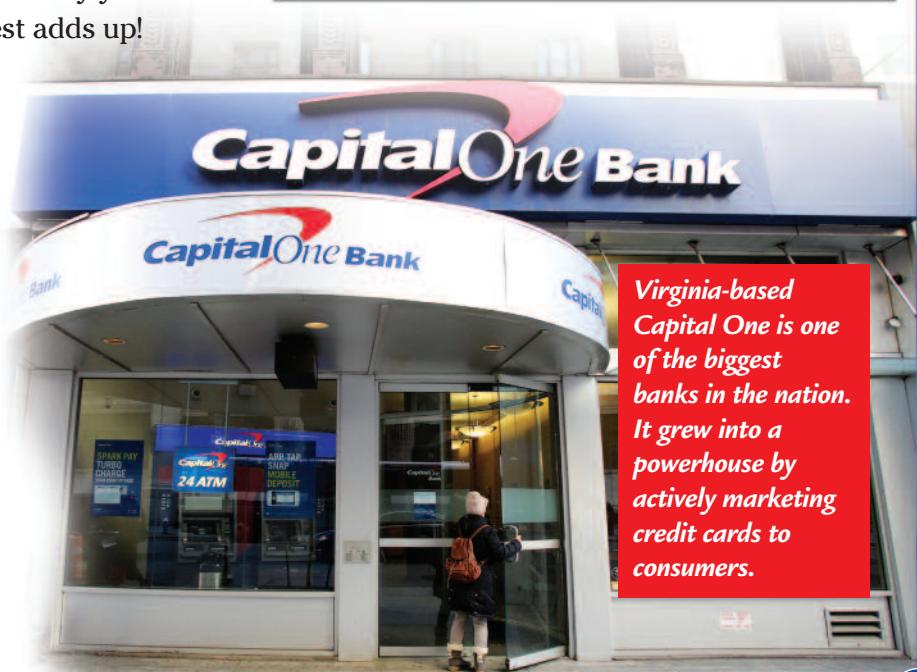
## KEEPING YOUR MONEY SAFE

### 1. BANKS

- *Banks are community, regional, or national for-profit corporations owned by private investors.* Many are geared to the needs of businesses, but individuals are welcome. They offer savings and checking accounts, make loans, and most have automatic teller machines (ATMs) that allow you to access your cash whenever you need it. They also offer safe-deposit boxes where people stash very valuable papers and jewelry.

### 2. CREDIT UNIONS

- *Credit unions are non-profit organizations owned by their members.* For example, teachers or farmers might start their own credit unions. Credit unions were first started to help friends who could not borrow money from the for-profit banks.



*Virginia and the United States pursue international trade in order to increase wealth.*



# Our Global Links

*Do you recognize these golden arches? They represent one American company serving a global marketplace and linking nations together in a new way.*

Welcome to the **global economy**! It is a worldwide market where people, nations, and businesses from all over buy and sell goods and services. Why do we need to trade with other nations? Often they have natural resources that we do not. For example, it is difficult to grow cacao beans in the continental United States. Only Hawaii has the right climate, but they grow very little. If you want to manufacture chocolate bars or a hot cocoa mix, you will most likely have to **import** chocolate from another country.

## ARE YOU BUYING OR SELLING?

International trade is a two-way street. We **export** the things we make here to grow American businesses and create more jobs. We import to get goods and services at lower opportunity costs because, in many cases, imported goods cost less. Workers in many foreign countries are paid far less than American workers. An astonishing 98 percent of the clothing we buy in this country is made abroad. Lower costs mean lower opportunity costs for us, so perhaps you can buy two T-shirts instead of one. For the workers who make the T-shirts, there is an increase in their economic welfare.

- **Virginia exports billions of dollars' worth of goods worldwide every year.** Soybeans are one of our biggest exports, but close behind are electronic circuits and memory cards for computers. Coal and paper products are also very profitable Virginia exports.

# Virginia Exports

**ITEMS WE SELL TO THE WORLD**



Do you know anyone who works in these industries or in the shipping trades that make our export trade so strong?





## WHAT ARE WE BEST AT?

Our nation specializes in the production of certain goods and services. One of our greatest strengths is in the field of technology and innovation, especially here in Virginia. America is a nation of entrepreneurs, and we excel at figuring out how to do things efficiently. However, other countries can often produce our creations even more efficiently. This can be a good thing. Jobs are created by this exchange of ideas and merchandise, which leads to more stable economies abroad. As we become more interconnected through trade, it helps to make the world a more peaceful place.

## TECHNOLOGY AND THE WORLD

Things have changed enormously since those long-ago days in the early 1600s when a struggling Virginia colony exported boatloads of tobacco and lumber to England. The impact of technological innovations, especially with the Internet, now allows a craftsperson in Kenya or Honduras to sell his or her wares to a homeowner in Virginia Beach. Technology has brought us closer together, and it has also enabled us to manufacture things more quickly and at lower costs. It is indeed a small world, after all.



*Blue jeans are an all-American invention, but most are now made abroad. Go through your closet and read the labels in your clothing. How much of it was made abroad? Make a list of all the different countries. Do you own anything made in the U.S.A.?*



*Virginia's ports are some of the busiest in the United States with direct service to 45 different countries.*



THE PORT OF  
VIRGINIA



# Chapter 9 Review

*Use pages 152–153 to answer questions 1–2.*

1. All individuals and organizations, including businesses and governments, are confronted with scarcity at one time or another. Explain what scarcity is and what it forces consumers, producers, and governments to do.
2. Write a paragraph about your consumption of a product you like. Use the following terms in your paragraph:

**Resources • Production • Scarcity • Choice • Opportunity Cost • Consumption**

*Use pages 154–155 to answer questions 3–4 in complete sentences.*

3. What are the basic questions of economics?
4. Explain the difference between a mixed economy and a command economy.

*Use pages 156–157 to answer questions 5–6.*

5. Copy and complete the chart about the characteristics of the U.S. economy. In your own words, explain the following terms and draw a picture to help you remember.

TERM	EXPLANATION	ILLUSTRATION
Private Property		
Profit Motive		
Consumer Sovereignty		
Competition		
Free Enterprise		

6. Government involvement in the economy is limited. When does the government intervene in a market economy?

*Use pages 158–159 to answer questions 7–8.*

7. Create a three-column chart on your paper to show the three types of business organizations. Record each characteristic below in the correct column on the chart.

Ownership by 2 or more people	All profit goes to the owner/entrepreneur	Owners share the risk and profits
Ownership by only 1 person	Owners share profits but liability is limited to the amount of their investment	Registered with the government and legally protected

8. What is an entrepreneur? What type of business organization can an entrepreneur establish?

*Use pages 160–161 to answer question 9 in complete sentences.*

9. What is an equilibrium price? Why is an equilibrium price good for buyers and good for sellers?

*Use pages 162–163 to answer question 10.*

10. Using the economic flow model, copy and complete the chart.

	INPUT	OUTPUT
Government	TAXES	
Households		
Businesses		GOODS AND SERVICES

*Use pages 164–165 to answer questions 11–12 in complete sentences.*

11. What are the benefits of depositing money into a savings account?  
12. What are two ways to bank? What is the difference between these financial institutions?

*Use pages 166–167 to answer question 13 in complete sentences.*

13. Explain the impact of technological innovations on the global economy.

## Apply Your Learning

**1. The United States maintains a global economy by negotiating trade agreements with other nations.** In 2016 the Trans-Pacific Partnership trade agreement was signed by 12 Pacific Rim countries and the United States, until President Donald Trump withdrew the U.S. from the pact. Research the pros and cons of this trade agreement by using three different sources, including the webpage of the Office of the United States Trade Representative. After your research, formulate your opinion on the trade agreement. Write a paragraph that explains your opinion and cite your sources when presenting your evidence.

**2. Consumers, producers, and government decision-makers are forced to make choices because of scarcity.** Almost 98 percent of our clothing is made overseas. Evaluate this infographic.



- According to the infographic, why would an American company choose to produce its goods overseas?
- Compare the cost of resources used in America and Bangladesh. Which type of resource has the larger discrepancy? Explain your thoughts about this discrepancy.

# Imagine...

**Imagine a world without banks.** Where would people keep their money? What kinds of problems would there be? Create a small poster that illustrates all the benefits of private financial institutions.

*A massive highway system, crossing the Potomac River between Virginia and the nation's capital, creates a vital link between the two.*

THE  
GOVERNMENT  
AND OUR  
ECONOMY

# A HELPING HAND



*“If the people cannot trust their government to do the job for which it exists—to protect them and to promote their common welfare—all else is lost.”*

—BARACK OBAMA, 44th president of the United States



*The government promotes and regulates marketplace competition.*

*Remember the free market economy—the one where anything goes? That only works when a business plays by the rules of the game.*



# Real-Life Monopoly

IT IS **NOT A GAME**

- *What happens when a company gets so big that no one else can compete?*

Just like in the game of the same name, people who have monopolies can bring financial pain to the consumer and choke all the competition. The end result is higher prices, lower quality, fewer choices, and reduced rates of innovation.

For example, AT&T used to be the only telephone company in America. It was nicknamed “Ma Bell” for its founder, Alexander Graham Bell, an inventor of the telephone. The government supported the monopoly because it made sense that having one phone company would be the best way to provide phone service to the entire nation—much like the U.S. Postal Service delivers mail.

With AT&T, choices were limited and prices were high, but if you wanted a phone it was the only place to get one. Eventually the government applied **antitrust**

legislation and forced “Ma Bell” to split into seven smaller companies, called “Baby Bells.” Today, competition and new technologies have changed telecommunications, which benefits us all.

Sometimes separate businesses join together like a monopoly to raise prices. These are called **cartels**. A well-known cartel that can influence the price of gasoline is the Organization of the Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC). Because it doesn’t include the U.S., it is not covered by U.S. antitrust laws, which can sometimes lead to high gas prices for us!

## The Government Steps In

When the U.S. economy is healthy, we all benefit. Besides enacting policies that encourage global trade, government agencies support new start-ups with incentives, such as tax breaks, to help. But the government’s most important function is this: to be a legal system that allows the economy to thrive. We make deals every day—as small as buying a cupcake or as large as buying a corporation, and we count on the government’s “rule of law.” It is hard to see how vital this is until you try doing business in a place where bribery and force rule.

### HOW BIG IS TOO BIG?

It is hard to say. Sometimes “bigger is better.” A large company can make things more cheaply, leading to lower prices for consumers. But when companies get too big, they can dominate the marketplace and control it in a way that benefits the company, not the consumer. When a company gains a **monopoly**, it can lead to problems.



*For years, clunky black phones were the only option—a long way from today's sleek smartphones!*

### Words to Know

#### ► **monopoly** (muh-nop-uh-lee)

*A single company that owns all or nearly all of the market for a given type of product or service. There is no competition, so the result is often high prices and inferior products.*

#### ► **antitrust** (ant-ee-trust)

*A kind of legislation to prevent monopolies from forming, with the hopes of promoting competition in business*

## MONOPOLIES AND INNOVATION

Sometimes our government purposely allows a monopoly in order to promote innovation. We call these *patents*. Research and development of new drugs, for example, is very expensive. Companies may need the lure of monopoly prices and profit to invest the time and money needed. But unlike a monopoly, a patent comes with a time limit—usually around 20 years.



### ONCE A MONOPOLY, ALWAYS A MONOPOLY?

It is hard for a company to keep a monopoly forever, unless it can shut out competition. One way to do this is to lobby the government for protection. For example, in many cities the government limits the number of taxicabs. Even with these “barriers to entry,” new technologies have opened up competition in this industry. Apps such as Uber and Lyft help consumers find rides when they need them. This process of “creative destruction” helps our economy to change and grow.

### Room for Debate

Some people believe that Monsanto, a giant agribusiness, has become a monopoly. Over 90 percent of the soybean seeds planted each year are Monsanto's. Monsanto modified seeds from nature to make them bug-resistant, but seeds get carried by birds or breezes. Monsanto has sued farmers who accidentally grew the modified seeds. Is this fair? Why or why not?

## REGULATING AND PROMOTING COMPETITION

### THE FCC: FEDERAL COMMUNICATIONS COMMISSION

- If it involves a radio, TV, wire, or cable, the FCC oversees it.

In addition to dealing with new technologies and the big changes in global communications, this agency is responsible for everything that travels over wires or through the air. It even watches the content of TV shows. If you have ever heard a “bad word” bleeped on broadcast TV, you can thank the FCC.

### THE SEC: SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION

- Protecting investors, maintaining fair, orderly, and efficient markets, and facilitating capital formation.

If you invest money in the stock market you could lose it all. There are no guarantees—but that doesn't mean fraud is fair game. The SEC regulates the stock market, and protects investors. It also monitors some aspects of big business. By contrast, money deposited

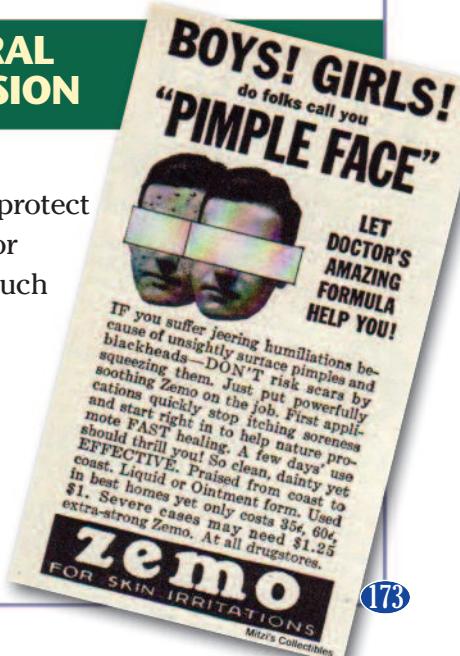


in a bank is safe from risk and fraud.

### THE FTC: FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION

- The FTC has two jobs.

Its first challenge is to protect consumers from unfair or deceptive advertising (such as the ad on the right). The FTC's other big job involves enforcing anti-trust laws to promote healthy competition, which leads to innovation.



*The government provides certain goods and services that individuals and businesses acting alone cannot provide efficiently.*

# Our Nation's Business



*Interstate 95 stretches from Florida to the Canadian border. It is the busiest road in America, passing through 15 states and Washington, D.C.*

*Most economic decisions in the United States are made in the marketplace, but there are some tasks that even the biggest corporation might find overwhelming. That is where the U.S. government steps in!*

Think about these numbers: There are 46,876 miles of interstate highway in the United States. Someone has to maintain those roads and repave them when they wear out. Amtrak has 21,300 miles of rail line serving more than 500 destinations in 46 states and Canada. Over 31 million people a year depend on those trains. Over 155 billion pieces of mail are processed by the U.S. Postal Service every year—40 percent of the entire world’s mail volume. These are staggering numbers.

Our government focuses on providing goods and services for the *entire* nation. What makes it different from a privately owned company is this: Even if parts of the business are unprofitable, the government will still continue to provide the goods and services.

## THE GOVERNMENT AT WORK

Businesses have to show a profit. The government does not. The sometimes-deadly flu virus is a good example. In most years the flu virus mutates a bit, so the vaccine to protect against it must change, too. Providing widespread vaccinations for this always-changing disease is not profitable, so the government uses subsidies (monies to help communities) and public health departments to increase the vaccination rate. This helps avoid suffering, missed work or school days, and—for elderly or frail Americans—helps save their lives.



## EDUCATION FOR ALL

There are almost 100,000 public schools in the United States providing education for over 50 million students. Most of the actual running of the schools falls to the states and local areas, but the U.S. government is definitely involved. The Department of Education offers student loans for higher education, and grants to teachers. "Head Start" programs offer early childhood help.



# Mission: Critical

## OUR NATIONAL DEFENSE



Norfolk, Virginia's Naval Base

- *There is nothing more important than protecting and defending the citizens of the United States from harm.*

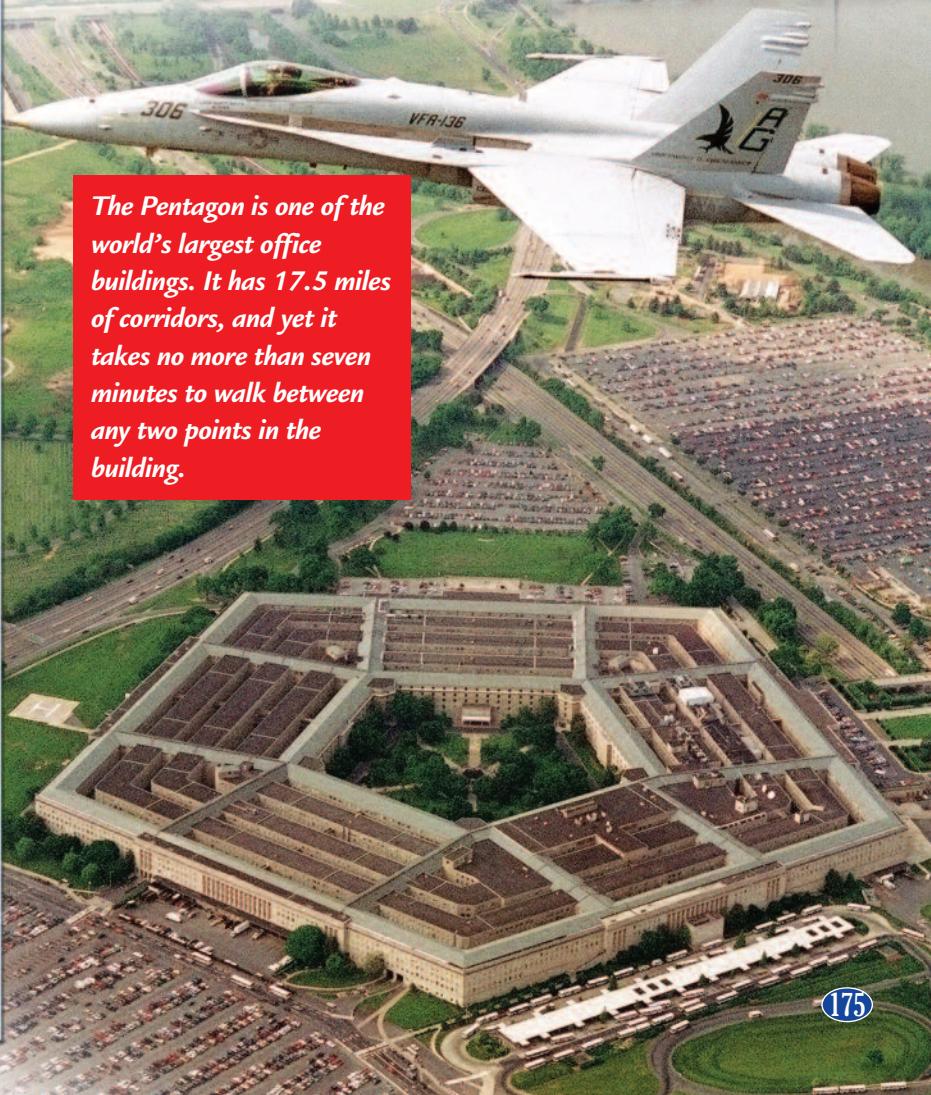
The Department of Defense (DOD) is one of the nation's oldest and biggest government agencies. When you add up the over 1.4 million people on active duty, the more than 700,000 civilian personnel, and over a million National Guard and Reserve forces, you have the nation's largest employer, with its staff working 24/7 in every time zone, and from the Arctic to the Equator.

Many people work at the Pentagon, but the DOD also has several hundred thousand other buildings in more than 5,000 different locations. When all those properties are added up—including the navy's big complex in Norfolk, Virginia, with more than 10,000 employees—the Department of Defense sprawls over 30 million acres of land.

## A HEFTY PRICE TAG

All of the public goods and services provided by the government come with a big price tag. Where does the money come from to pay for it all? Most revenue comes from taxes, but, just like a privately held company, the United States borrows money. A small amount of revenue also comes from fees that are collected at places like the national parks. People and businesses sometimes must pay fines for breaking a law, which is another source of income.

Since the private market cannot efficiently provide certain goods and services, the government steps in. Some parts of these government-controlled businesses lose money, but without government support, we might not have some important things!



*The Pentagon is one of the world's largest office buildings. It has 17.5 miles of corridors, and yet it takes no more than seven minutes to walk between any two points in the building.*

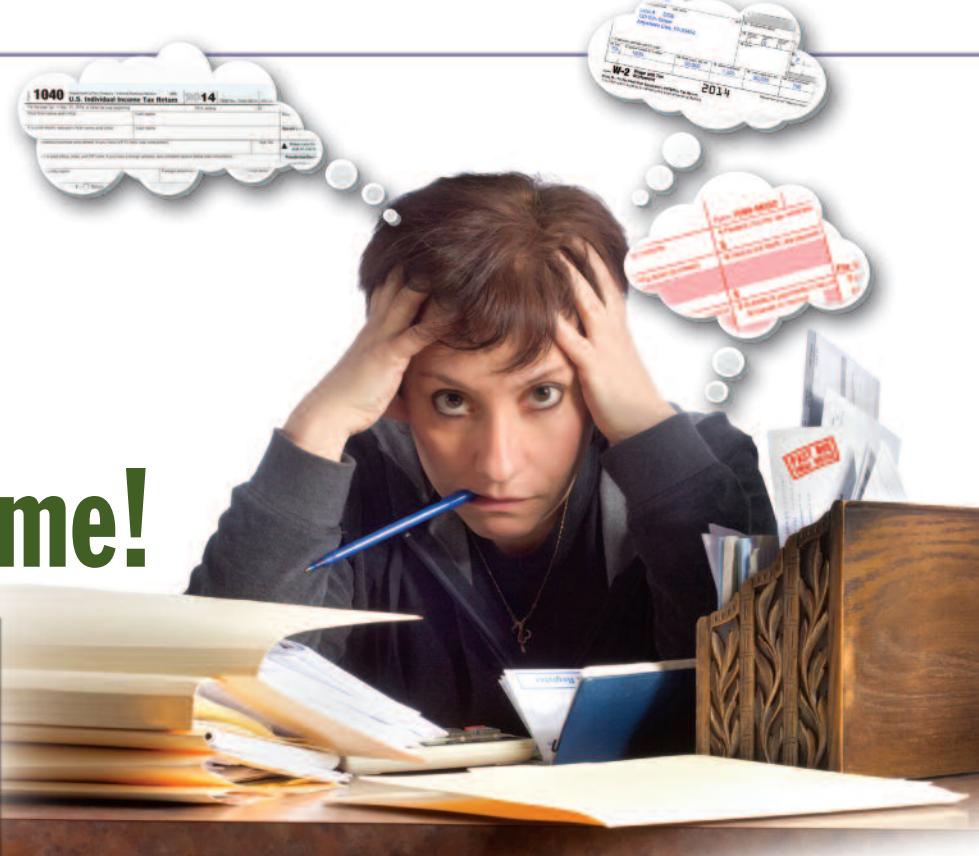
*Every level of government—federal, state, and local—requires revenue to pay for goods and services provided by the government. Taxes and fees levied on individuals and businesses are the major source of this revenue.*

*Local, state, and federal governments determine how best to use and allocate the money they collect.*

# It's Tax Time!

*"The Congress shall have Power to lay and collect Taxes...to pay the Debts and provide for the common Defence and general Welfare of the United States..."*

—THE U.S. CONSTITUTION  
16th Amendment and Article I, Section 8



*How do our local, state, and federal governments "balance their checkbooks"? "We the People" pay for our government programs!*

## IN COMES THE INCOME

Think of all the things the federal government has to pay for. Fighter jets and aircraft carriers...equipment and supplies for all the people in the Armed Forces who protect us...aid for those who cannot afford the simplest basics, such as food and shelter. Do not forget about maintaining the interstate highways and the U.S. Postal Service. And of course, there are all the salaries of the over 2,700,000 civilians who are employed by the government—plus the offices they work in and the computers they use.

## OUR NATION'S MAIN SOURCE OF REVENUE

To pay for its programs and purchases, the government collects taxes. It uses that money for everything from homeland security to disaster relief. Our economy depends on the flow of money from individuals to businesses and back again. If taxes are too high, people do not have extra income to spend on things. Lower taxes mean people have extra spending money. Tax cuts always make consumers happy, but it also means that the government might not have enough money to pay for important items, like a strong military or the cleanup after a major tornado or hurricane.



## THE NATIONAL DEBT

In 2016, Americans paid \$3.2 TRILLION dollars in federal taxes. The government also collected funds from fees and fines. There is one more way our government gets money. It borrows it.

Our nation's national debt is a subject of heated debate. Many economists say debt can be a good thing. For example, the government can borrow money to fund rebuilding projects that create jobs for Americans. But there is a downside, too.

Borrowed money must be paid back. As debt and interest on debt mount up, more and more of the government budget goes to paying for past projects. Paying off the debts could slow future economic growth.

# A Trio of Taxes

THREE WAYS TO PAY!

## INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE: FEDERAL INCOME TAX

Income taxes are the most important source of revenue for the federal government, and the Internal Revenue Service (IRS) collects it. Income tax is based on a person's earnings and the number of people who depend on that earner. The higher a person's salary, the higher the rate he or she will have to pay.

An additional tax is also withheld from paychecks to fund Social Security and Medicare programs. Businesses also pay taxes on their earnings. The U.S. tax codes are VERY complicated!

## STATE INCOME AND SALES TAX

States have lots of expenses, too: roads, universities, and public safety workers. Many states also tax income, but at a much lower rate than the federal government. Like federal income tax, state income tax is based on what you earn. Higher earners pay more.

There is a second kind of tax in most states. Every time you buy something, you will be charged a fixed percentage called sales tax. In Virginia, independent cities, counties, and towns impose additional sales taxes on food, entertainment, and lodging.

## Room for Debate

*Many other countries pay much higher taxes, but in return they get free health care. Do you think we should raise taxes to provide health care for ALL Americans or keep our system the way it is now?*

BETTY'S BAKERY  
1000 CUPCAKE ROAD  
VIRGINIA BEACH, VA 23455

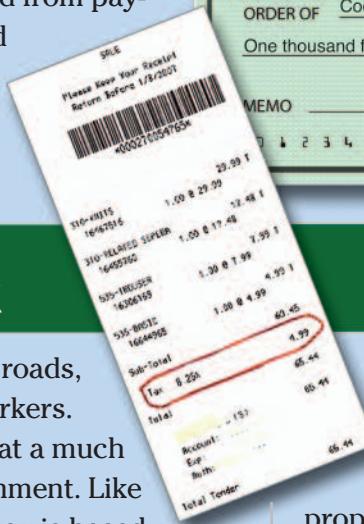
Earnings	This pay period	Year to date	Earnings Statement
Regular 80	\$1400.00	\$11,200.00	Aug. 1, 2016 - Aug. 15, 2016
Overtime	none	none	
Gross Pay	\$1400.00	\$11,200.00	
Deductions			For: Cookie Baker 1234 Cocoa Lane Virginia Beach, VA 23455
Federal Income Tax	-\$98.00	\$784.00	
State Income Tax	-\$70.00	\$560.00	
Social Security Tax	-\$56.00	\$448.00	
Medicare Tax	-\$42.00	\$336.00	
Contributions			
Health Plan	-\$25.00	\$200.00	
Dental Plan	-\$15.00	\$120.00	
Retirement	-\$50.00*	\$400.00*	
Net Pay			
		\$1044.00	

\* Excluded from Federal taxable wages

BETTY'S BAKERY  
1000 CUPCAKE ROAD  
VIRGINIA BEACH, VA 23455

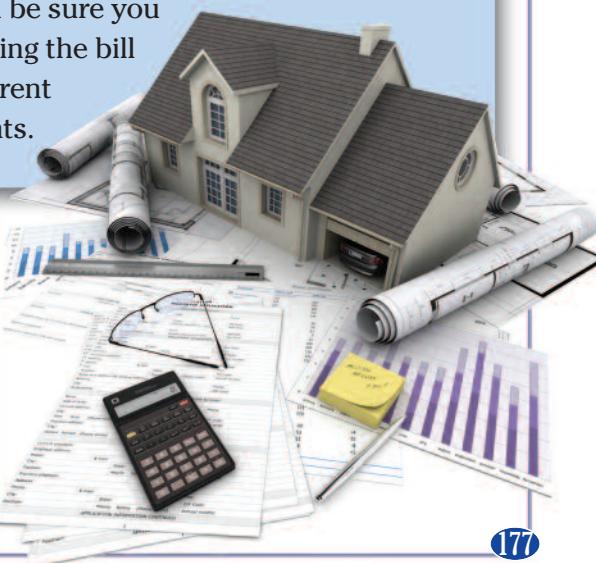
0000  
DATE AUG. 15 2016

PAY TO THE ORDER OF Cookie Baker \$ 1044.00  
One thousand forty-four dollars and 00/100 DOLLARS  
MEMO \_\_\_\_\_ Betty Bandelle  
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4



## LOCAL PROPERTY AND SALES TAX

What are some of your favorite places in your town? The park? The library? Maybe a town pool? Local governments pay for upkeep with property taxes. If your family owns a home, they will pay a tax based on their house's value. If you rent, your landlord will pay, but you can be sure you are footing the bill in your rent payments.



*Money is anything that is generally accepted as a method of payment for goods and services.*

*Money makes it easier to trade, borrow, save, invest, and compare the value of goods and services.*

# Money, Money, Money!

*Money does not grow on trees, but it does come flying off printing presses and coin-minting machines, thanks to our government.*



**Can you find the Virginia quarter? State quarters were a very successful money-making venture for the U.S. Mint. People collected all 50 states and never used them.**



In the early days of the Virginia colony, in addition to using British and Spanish coins, the colonists bartered. They paid for the things they wanted with a few cabbages or a hen or two. Tobacco was a common form of currency. We have come a long way since those days when dried plant leaves were used to pay for things! The exchange of money is at the root of our economic system.

- **Money acts as a medium of exchange**, making trade easier. Would you rather pay for a movie with cash or bags of potatoes?
- **Money acts as a store of value**, making it easier to save and invest. Would you rather keep \$20 of value in crisp one-dollar bills or in \$20 worth of bananas?
- **Money acts as a measure of value**, making it easier to compare the value of goods and services. Do those awesome sneakers cost \$50 or two pigs?

## COINS AND CURRENCY

What's in your wallet? It is filled with a combination of work from the U.S. Treasury Department's Bureau of Engraving and Printing, the U.S. Mint, and the Federal Reserve Bank. Our dollar bills are officially **Federal Reserve Notes**. They got that name because they are the responsibility of the Federal Reserve System (the Fed). The Bureau of Engraving and Printing makes the bills, but until they are released by the Fed, they are basically useless. Coins are produced by the U.S. Mint, according to a directive in the Constitution. In fact, so important was the striking of coins to the new nation, that the U.S. Mint in Philadelphia was the very first federal building built after the Constitution was ratified.

### DOLLARS...

Our paper money got its name from a silver coin minted in the 1500s in what is now the Czech Republic. The coins were called "joachimsthalers." Since that name was a real mouthful, it was shortened to thalers. Several countries used thalers—among them the Dutch, who were big seafarers. Their pronunciation, "daler," spread to the famed Spanish *piece of eight*—which became known as the Spanish dollar. Spanish dollars were some of the most-used coins in the colonies, and they continued to be used a lot even after independence.

### ...AND CENTS

Dollars got their start as coins. When the Constitution was ratified, the secretary of the treasury, Alexander Hamilton, researched the exact amount of silver in a Spanish dollar—and decided that a U.S. dollar coin should be equal to its silver content. The reason a quarter goes by its name is that it had one-fourth the amount of silver that a whole dollar did. The rest was cheaper metal.

Are we moving away from using coins? In 1997 Congress mandated minting \$1.00 coins, but the public rarely uses them, so a billion dollars' worth are sitting unused at the Federal Reserve.



### THE STRIP

Move the bill from side to side, and bells on the blue strip will change to 100s.

### THE INKWELL

The bell in the inkwell changes from copper to green when you flex the paper.

# Forge-Proof!

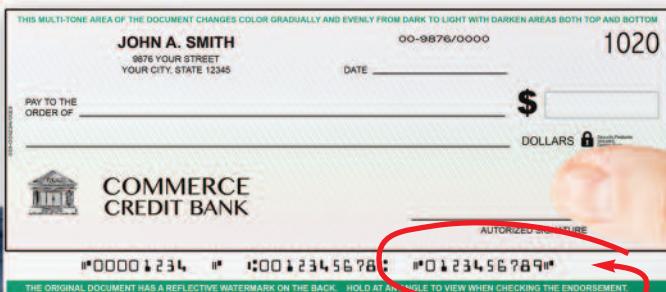
MONEY THAT IS ALMOST IMPOSSIBLE TO COUNTERFEIT

- How does the Federal Reserve assure us that our money is real? There are several safeguards at work.

Today's bills have lots of safeguards hidden in plain sight, from the special paper they are printed on to security features that are extremely difficult to fake. You just have to know where to look.

## CHECK IT OUT

It is difficult to carry around large amounts of cash. Checks are a much easier way to pay for goods and services. A check is an order to a bank to give someone money from your account.



When you write a check to someone, that person will take it to a bank. The series of small numbers at the bottom contains all the information needed to locate the account the money will be removed from. Then that money is transferred to the person named on the check.

## DEBIT CARDS: THE NEW CHECK

More and more, we are moving away from a paper-based economy to an electronic one. Debit cards work the same way checks do, with none of the hassle of finding a pen, or producing two types of identification when you shop. Simply swipe, insert, or tap the card—which is encoded with all your account information—and funds from your bank account will be instantly transferred to the store owner's account. New phone apps also let you pay for things.

## THE FUTURE OF MONEY

In the last 20 years we have gone from writing billions of checks a year to half that. E-banking use has risen dramatically, and computer transfers of money may soon eliminate checks. Perhaps in the not-so-distant future, bills and coins will be replaced with microchips encrypted in smartphones. Do you think we will still have bills and coins 50 years from now?

## Room for Debate

It costs 1.7 cents to produce a penny, and 8 cents to make a nickel. Should the United States continue to produce these small-denomination coins? Why or why not?



*The Federal Reserve System is our nation's central bank.*

*Where does the government go to do its banking?*

# The Federal Reserve

For anyone who complains about the state of the economy today, remind them that before the Federal Reserve was created in 1913, there were financial panics all the time. Banks could close without any warning, and there were over 30,000 different kinds of currency floating around the country.

The story of banking in this country is very complicated, but it would *not* be an overstatement to say that a hodge-podge of banks, each run by its own rules, did not serve the nation well. In an attempt to bring some financial stability to the nation, Congress stepped in.

## MEET THE “FED”

The Federal Reserve System is the central bank of the United States. It consists of a Board of Governors and 12 Federal Reserve Banks all across the country. A chairperson, appointed by the president and approved by the Senate, oversees all 12 banks. Its most important jobs are these:

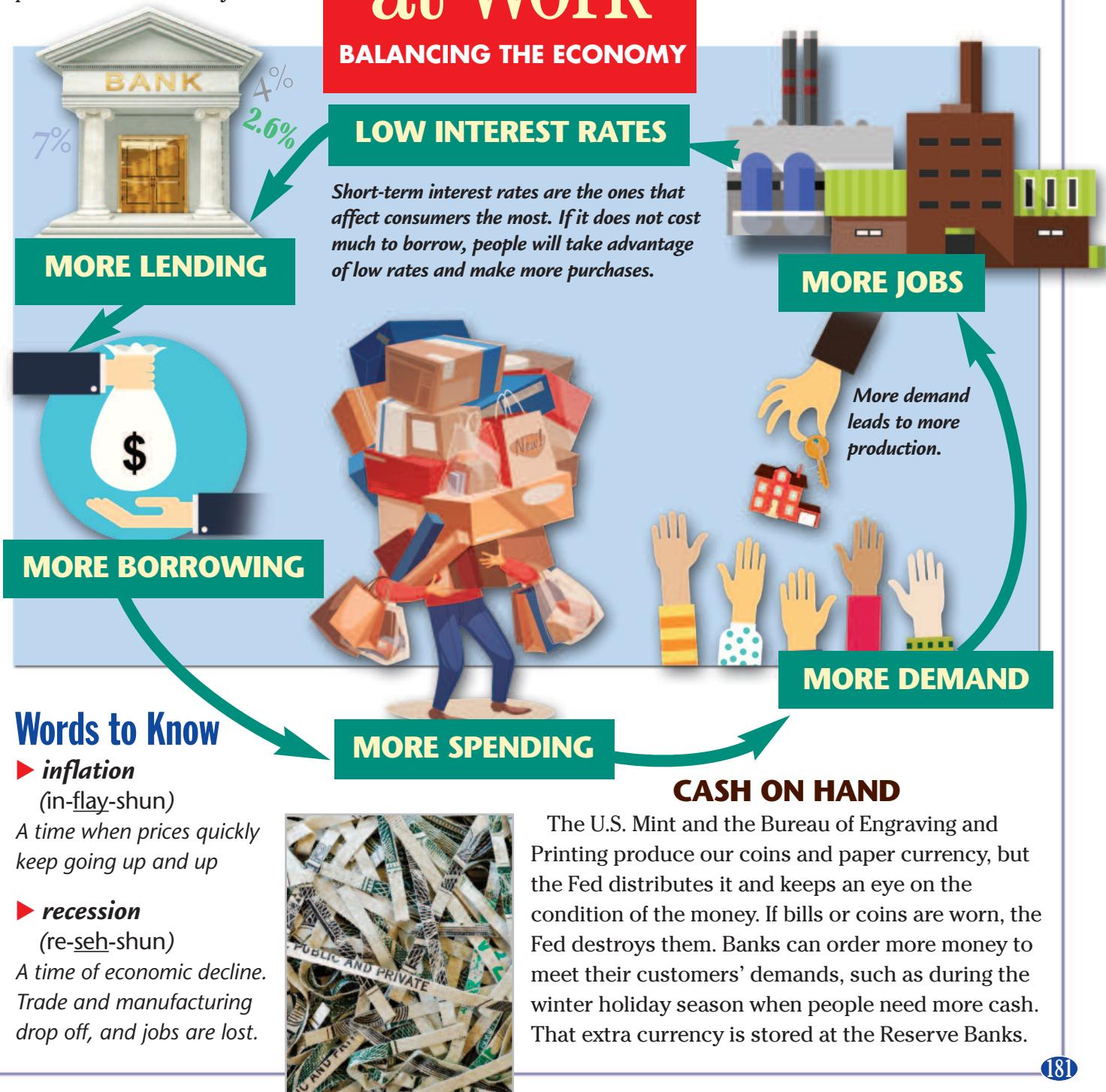
1. The Fed keeps a close watch on the nation's money supply and monitors national interest rates to keep **inflation** low and stable. Inflation occurs when there is too much money in circulation and its value drops.
2. The Fed keeps a watchful eye on all the private banks in the nation, overseeing their operations to help make sure they are financially sound.



*Before the creation of the Federal Reserve, any business could be a “bank” and issue currency.*

## TRICKS OF THE TRADE

By raising and lowering interest rates, the Fed can either perk up or slow down the economy. When interest rates are high, people tend to buy fewer homes or new cars. Low interest rates let us borrow more easily. The Fed's aims are to keep the value of the dollar stable and to make sure there are plenty of jobs. A strong economy allows companies to grow—to make lots of great products for us to buy.



*The United States government passes laws and creates agencies to protect consumer rights, competition in the marketplace, labor, and the environment.*

# Keeping Us Safe

*Unfortunately, there are some unscrupulous people who would like to part you from your hard-earned money. Isn't it nice to know you have the government on your side?*

**Lemon Laws**  
PROTECTING YOUR PURCHASES

*• One way our federal and state governments can work for your best interests is with a law that protects buyers.*

Cars are complex machines with lots of parts that can break. They are also very expensive. The first lemon laws were designed to offer car buyers a new car if their newly purchased vehicle could not be repaired. Each state has its own lemon laws, with some additional support from federal law as well.

The man in this picture is beyond frustrated! His new car has broken down three times in the last five months! Luckily for him, there are laws to help and protect consumers.

## YOUR RIGHTS AS A CONSUMER

Unless it says “Final Sale As Is” when you buy something, you are entering into an agreement. You are paying for a product, believing that it is going to perform as advertised and that it is not going to harm you. But if it is constantly breaking, relax! You have the law of the land on your side. Government agencies have established guidelines to protect public health and safety. They also offer a place where consumers can take legal action if they feel they have been sold a shoddy product or been taken advantage of unfairly. A business that sells substandard products will not stay in business for long and that helps to promote competition.

Consumers are also kept well informed by the government. They can find advice on all sorts of things—how to avoid Internet scams, which restaurants have health-code violations, and even ways to stop those annoying robo-calls from ruining dinner.



# Looking Out for You

## FIVE GOVERNMENT PROTECTION AGENCIES

### CONSUMER PRODUCT SAFETY COMMISSION

- Lead paint on toys? Bike brakes that do not work? Appliances that burst into flames? This agency warns you.

Making the public aware of unexpected hazards is this agency's job. The CPSC publicizes product recalls from faulty car ignitions to unsafe baby cribs that can entrap an infant. They also investigate consumer complaints.



FOR  
CONSUMERS

### THE EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY COMMISSION

- The EEOC fights job discrimination.

This agency enforces federal laws that make it illegal to discriminate against a job applicant or an employee because of the person's race, color, religion, gender, national origin, age (40 years or older), or disability.



FOR  
WORKERS

### THE ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY

FOR OUR ECOSYSTEM

### THE FOOD AND DRUG ADMINISTRATION

- Are the medicines we take safe? Do they work? And what about genetically modified foods? If you put it in your mouth, the FDA just might study it.



This is one of the most important consumer safety organizations—the one that is concerned with protecting our physical health and well-being.

### OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY & HEALTH ADMINISTRATION

- Is your school a safe place to study? What about the local mall or other workplaces?

Are there enough well-marked fire exits? Is the air quality okay? OSHA deals with workplace safety issues to reduce on-the-job injuries and to spotlight conditions that might cause outbreaks of illness.



- Is your air safe to breathe and the water safe to drink? Are there pesticides in the soil? Turn to the EPA! This agency keeps a watchful eye on our nation's natural resources.

### Word to Know

#### ► **contract**

A written or spoken agreement, usually concerning employment, sales, or the occupancy of a home. A signed contract is enforceable by law.

### YOUR PROPERTY RIGHTS

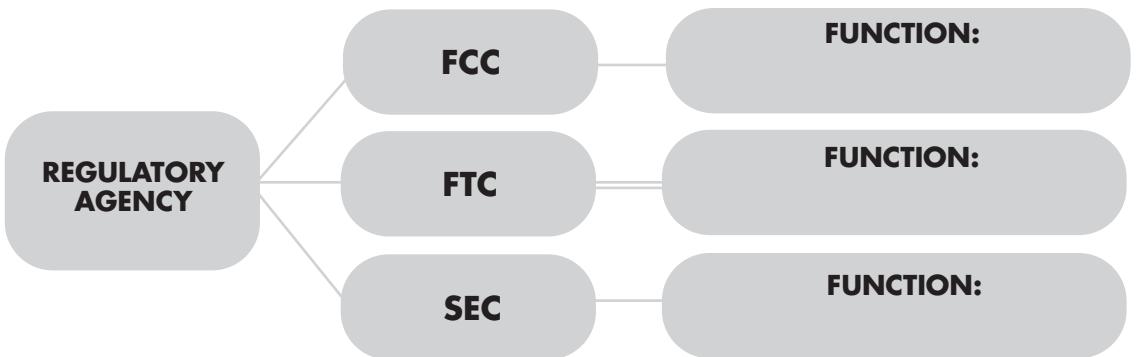
There is one more protection consumers have. A signed **contract** is a legally binding document, enforceable by law, which helps safeguard *both* parties in an agreement. The man who bought the car that was a "lemon" is protected against loss. His contract gave him **property rights**—a legal claim of ownership. The government helps define and enforce property rights, and since the car seller did not live up to the agreement in the contract he must refund the purchase price of the flawed car. If he does not, the consumer can take legal action to settle his claims.



# Chapter 10 Review

*Use pages 172–173 to answer questions 1–3 in complete sentences.*

1. Explain how a monopoly can negatively impact consumers. What does the government do to discourage the development of monopolies?
2. Name two other ways the government promotes marketplace competition.
3. Copy and complete the diagram. Explain the function of each government agency.



*Use pages 174–175 to answer questions 4–5 in complete sentences.*

4. Describe three examples of goods and services provided by the federal government.
5. What are the four ways the U.S. government pays for goods and services?

*Use pages 176–177 to answer question 6.*

6. Copy and complete the chart. List the different types of revenue or taxes from individuals or businesses collected by each government.

FEDERAL	STATE	LOCAL

*Use pages 178–179 to answer questions 7–8 in complete sentences.*

7. What three roles does money play in our economy?
8. What forms of money are accepted as payment for products?

*Use pages 180–181 to answer question 9.*

9. Write a paragraph explaining the main jobs of the Federal Reserve System.

*Use pages 182–183 to answer questions 10–11.*

10. How do contracts help protect property rights?
11. Copy and complete the table below.

## GOVERNMENT PROTECTION AGENCIES

## HOW THEY PROTECT US

CONSUMER PRODUCT SAFETY COMMISSION	

# Apply Your Learning

1. Every level of government requires revenue to pay for goods and services provided by the government. Taxes and fees levied on individuals and business are the major source of this revenue. Our country has been in debt since the beginning, but today's national debt is in the trillions.

Analyze the political cartoon by answering these questions in complete sentences.

- What do you see?
- Who created the source?
- What is the artist's message?
- Whose point of view does it represent?

Use your knowledge about the national debt to create your own political cartoon on the subject.



2. Most public goods and services benefit many people simultaneously and would likely not exist if individuals had to provide them on their own.

Research your local school system to determine:

- How many students are serviced?
- How many people are employed?
- What is the district's operating budget?
- How much is spent on each student per year?

Use your research to evaluate this statement: **Most public goods and services would not be available if the government didn't provide them.** Is this true for public schools?

Would the same level of education be available if the government did not provide it?

Explain your answers.

## Imagine...

Imagine you live in an area in which one company owns all the gas stations.

Explain why this is, or is not, a monopoly. How might consumers be impacted? How could the government promote competition in your area? Is it the federal government's responsibility to step in? Why or why not?



WHAT DOES  
YOUR FUTURE  
HOLD?

*“That’s how we build the economy of the future. An economy with more jobs and less debt, we root it in fairness. We grow it with opportunity. And we build it together.”*

—ELIZABETH WARREN, U.S. Senator



*An awareness of personal talents, interests, and aspirations is needed to select a career.*

*Attitudes and behaviors that support a strong work ethic enhance career success.*

# What Do You Do Best?

*You are the subject of this chapter. It is time to stop and reflect about what makes you happiest.*

You have met great judges, clever entrepreneurs, brilliant thinkers, charismatic politicians, and lots of good, hard-working people in this book. Now it is your turn. You're probably thinking, "Wait! I'm just a kid! How should I know what I want to be doing ten years from now?" Well, now is the perfect time to start thinking about your talents. Better yet, now is the perfect time to start focusing on what you love to do, and how you can turn that passion into a lifelong career.

## DARE TO DREAM

Anything goes, but you have to be realistic. You may want to be a major-league ballplayer, but only about 250 supremely talented players are drafted each year, and of those, half never get to play in the major leagues. When it comes to the workplace, supply and demand are at the forefront. Only a small number of major-league ballplayers are needed, but many people want to play. The high number supplied makes this job very difficult to get.

## I COULD BE A...

Planning a career starts with self-assessment. Think about yourself. Are you great with numbers, or are words more your strong suit? Do you like being around people, or are you happiest spending quiet time by yourself? Think of a recipe for yummy chocolate chip cookies. What ingredients do you need? It's the same with your future. **Human capital** is a combination of education, knowledge, skill, experience, health, training, and talent—all stirred together to make you well suited to pursue the job of your dreams.

No matter what you end up doing to earn a living, your work habits—showing up on time, and focusing on your tasks—will be a real asset when it comes time to find a job. Employers *want* to hire people with strong work ethics.



*Surgeon, chef, graphic designer, business analyst —there are literally thousands of jobs to pursue.*

• These entrepreneurs did not wait until after college to start businesses. How did they do it?

## FROM BOW TIES TO OFFICE CHAIRS AND BEYOND

You may be surprised at how many successful businesses are run by teenagers. Sure, some have had help from the grown-ups in their lives, but the ideas and the elbow grease were theirs and theirs alone. From fun and funky fashions, to teen-friendly cosmetics, to furniture rentals, to all sorts of super-cool apps—plenty of teens have decided to start their own companies.

Emily Matson and Julianne Goldmark were high-school freshmen when they became obsessed with the hair ties used on a popular TV show. Now, several years later, their hair ribbons are sold in major department stores, and the girls are branching out into clothing.

Sean Belnick was a 14-year-old when he pitched an idea to his stepfather, who ran an office furniture business. Belnick had been selling things on eBay for quite some time and was positive he could do the same with office chairs. With a \$500 loan, Sean started an Internet-only furniture store and ran it out of his bedroom. Today his company is worth millions of dollars.

## MEDIA MASTERS

One thing all of these teen tycoons have in common is their mastery of technology and their use of social media to create a buzz. Dozens of teen bloggers have ended up launching hugely successful social networking sites that reach millions of other teens. Knowing how to use technology is a must in today's business world. And for the next generation of teen dynamos, technology just might bring bigger and better business ventures.

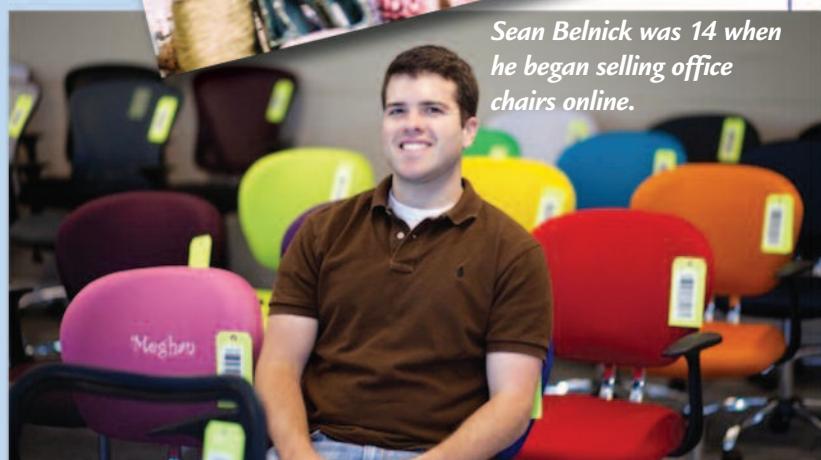


*Mozhia Bridges started a bow-tie business when he was 11. By the time he was 13, he was making over \$200,000 a year.*

# Young and Successful

## WHY WAIT TO START A BUSINESS?

*The brains behind Emi-Jay hair accessories.*



*Sean Belnick was 14 when he began selling office chairs online.*

## STAY IN SCHOOL!

Even though these teen entrepreneurs have successful businesses, they know that there is still a lot to learn. Better skills and higher education levels can lead to higher incomes. Talent, passion, and education can add up to a very successful life.

*Changes in technology influence the abilities, skills, and education needed in the workforce.*

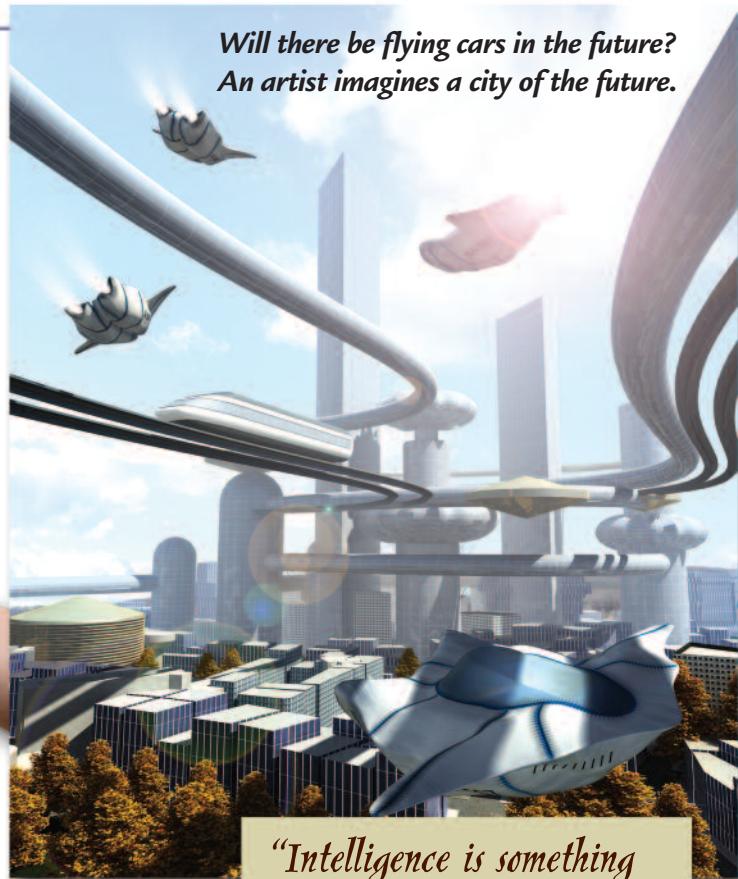
# You and Technology



*Things change almost overnight these days. Computers used to be the size of a classroom. Most TV shows were broadcast in black and white and there were only four channels—if you were lucky. Today we live in a more technologically advanced world!*

## THE RACE FOR NEWNESS

Thirty years ago a mobile phone was the size of a grown-up's shoe. You could not stream a movie. Now, information and data flow from one side of the world to another in a matter of seconds. Scientists are mapping the human brain. Technology gives us virtual superpowers. This rapidly changing technology has created all sorts of new opportunities and jobs in the workplace.



*"Intelligence is something we are born with. Thinking is a skill that must be learned."*

**—EDWARD DE BONO**

*Physician and pioneer on the subject of teaching how to think*

## SHRINKING THE GLOBE

One of technology's greatest benefits is that it allows us to work and communicate across national borders with great ease. A fashion designer in Virginia can work with a factory in Hong Kong almost as if they were next door to one another.

Technology and information flows have created "virtual offices" where people now work across international borders. Because of the advances in technology, workers in other countries now compete for jobs here in the United States. The advances have also created opportunities for U.S. workers at companies based in other countries. Technology is like a six-lane superhighway carrying thoughts and ideas around the world.

In the future, "globalization" will have a huge impact on the relationships and interconnections among nations. We must all work together!



## A YOUNG PERSON'S GAME

Some of the most exciting developments in the world of technology are coming from the minds of people not much older than you. Fortunes are being made. An example: 21-year-old Palmer Luckey—a lover of video games—started a company that makes an affordable virtual reality headset for ultra-immersive gaming. Facebook bought his company for two billion dollars in 2014. This is a perfect example of finding something that you love and using that as a springboard to create something new.

# What Lies Ahead?

## PROMISING TECHNOLOGIES THAT MAY CHANGE YOUR LIFE

### MUSHROOMS REPLACE STYROFOAM

Not only are static-filled plastic peanuts a nuisance, they can harm the environment. Two college students figured out a way to use agricultural waste to grow a mushroom with an enormous root system—perfect packing material—tough enough to protect a delicate laptop in shipment but also 100% biodegradable.



### STAYING ON TOP OF TECHNOLOGY

Most jobs of the future will depend on some sort of technology. Take health care, for example. It is a fast-growing part of the economy, and nurses, doctors, and therapists will depend on technology not only to keep records but also to analyze and treat their patients. The construction industry will also turn to new technologies to heat and power the buildings being designed. As a result of all this technology, employers will always be looking for individuals who have been updating their skills to keep pace with new advancements.

*Envisioning the world of tomorrow is the work of today.*



• *Looking around and seeing an opportunity is how new technologies are born.*

### ENERGY FROM BACTERIA

At some point in the future you will not heat your house with oil, gas, or electricity.

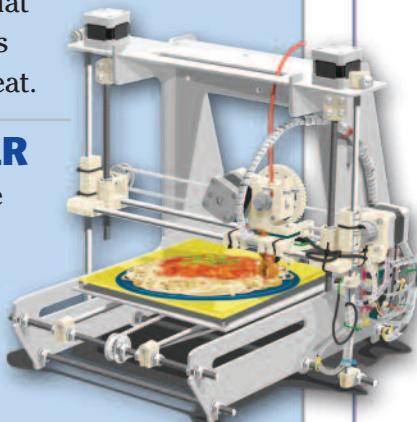


You just might heat it with bacteria!

Researchers are developing new ways to make microscopic structures that can hold and trap the chemicals released by bacteria to make heat.

### PRINTING DINNER

3-D printers are getting more and more streamlined. Some tech wizards believe that it will be possible to print food using “inks” made of the chemicals in the foods we eat. Perhaps someday you will be able to print pasta and tomato sauce.



*Health care workers will depend on technology more and more.*



*There is a correlation among skills, education, and income.*

*Imagine yourself ten years from now. Where will you be? What will you be doing? The decisions you make right now can impact your future.*

## Word to Know

### ► **warranty**

A written promise from a manufacturer that says that if a product fails during a specified time, it will be repaired or replaced



*If only you could stand there with a giant magnet and attract \$100 bills! Making money is not this easy. It requires patience and skill.*

# Six Steps to Success

**REMEMBER THESE!**

# Having It All

You have everything you need to be successful in life right in front of you. Education is one big part of the puzzle. Imagination is another. A willingness to work hard is a third. Success will not suddenly arrive on your doorstep, but it can be yours if you focus on the things that are important to you and stay mindful of what brings you joy.

## WHAT IS SUCCESS?

Will you own a big home, a fancy car, or a lavish boat? That is not the way to define "success." Money does not buy happiness, and there are plenty of miserable millionaires out there. Freedom from worry is far more important than the size of your bank account. The peace of mind that comes from knowing you and your loved ones are

safe is a true treasure.

## FREEDOM FROM FEAR

There are many grown-ups who lie awake at night, worrying about finances. How will they pay for braces for their kids? What about college? What if the car breaks down or the roof needs repair? Life is constantly surprising us, so we must try to be prepared!

## SPEND SMART

- Do you really need \$200 sneakers? Styles change so fast these days, so do not be a slave to trends. Learn to compare prices!



## SAVE AND INVEST

- Is that birthday money burning a hole in your pocket? Let your money accumulate and earn interest. It will go even farther.



## STICK TO A BUDGET

- Make a plan that combines spending and saving. When you are older, you will also need to budget for things like gas and groceries.



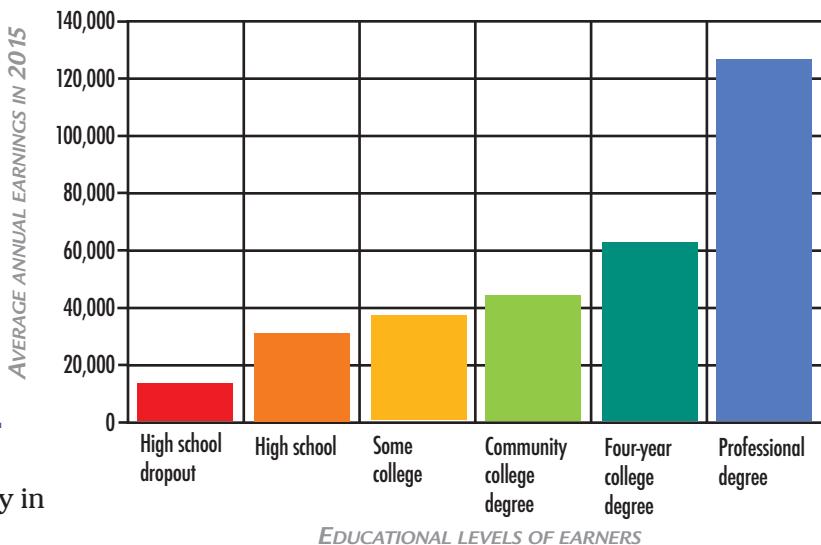
## INVEST IN YOUR FUTURE

The single biggest thing you can do to improve your personal finances is to stay in school. Graduate! Go on to community college or a university. Maybe even go to graduate school to gain a higher degree in business, law, architecture, engineering, or medicine. Your wallet will thank you.

Along the way to a higher education, you will have to make dozens of decisions. Think carefully every step of the way. Sure, it would be easy to blow off studying for next week's math test to go to a monster truck rally, but what if that leaves you unable to understand the material? Your jobs right now are to study hard, participate in community life by volunteering, and be a kind and compassionate person.

You are a precious commodity—an extremely valuable human and entrepreneurial resource—so take good care of yourself! Your future depends on it!

## EARNINGS BY EDUCATION LEVEL



*By staying in school, these high school graduates have taken the first steps on the road to a better life.*



## USE CREDIT WISELY

- Just because you have a \$1,000 spending limit on your credit card does not mean you should use it. Interest charges can add up.



## GET INSURANCE

- You might get sick, your house might be damaged in a storm or fire, or your car could be involved in an accident. Insurance will help pay for your losses.



## STAY PROTECTED

- Understand how a contract, a warranty, and a guarantee will protect you. Always read the tiny print at the bottom of anything you sign your name to.



# Chapter 11 Review

*Use pages 188–189 to answer questions 1–2 in complete sentences.*

1. Why is self-assessment important before choosing a career?
2. How does an individual's work ethic determine career success?

*Use pages 190–191 to answer questions 3–4 in complete sentences.*

3. Why is it important for employees to stay informed of new technology?
4. Use your own words to explain how technological advances impact the workplace.

*Use pages 192–193 to answer questions 5–6 in complete sentences.*

5. Write a paragraph explaining the six ways to stay financially responsible.
6. Study the graph on page 193. What can you conclude from this graph about how education levels affect income?

---

## Apply Your Learning

1. **There is a correlation among skills, education, and income.** However, by 2025, the projected cost of a public college education will be \$41,284 per year—a whopping \$165,136 for all four years. Is free college something you believe is possible in the United States?

Gather information from a variety of sources on this issue to construct an informed, evidence-based argument. Make sure you select various resources with multiple points of view, such as news-based sources, social media, or government sites. After analyzing the sources, write a newspaper editorial persuading readers to adopt your chosen perspective. Cite evidence from your sources to increase the validity of your argument.

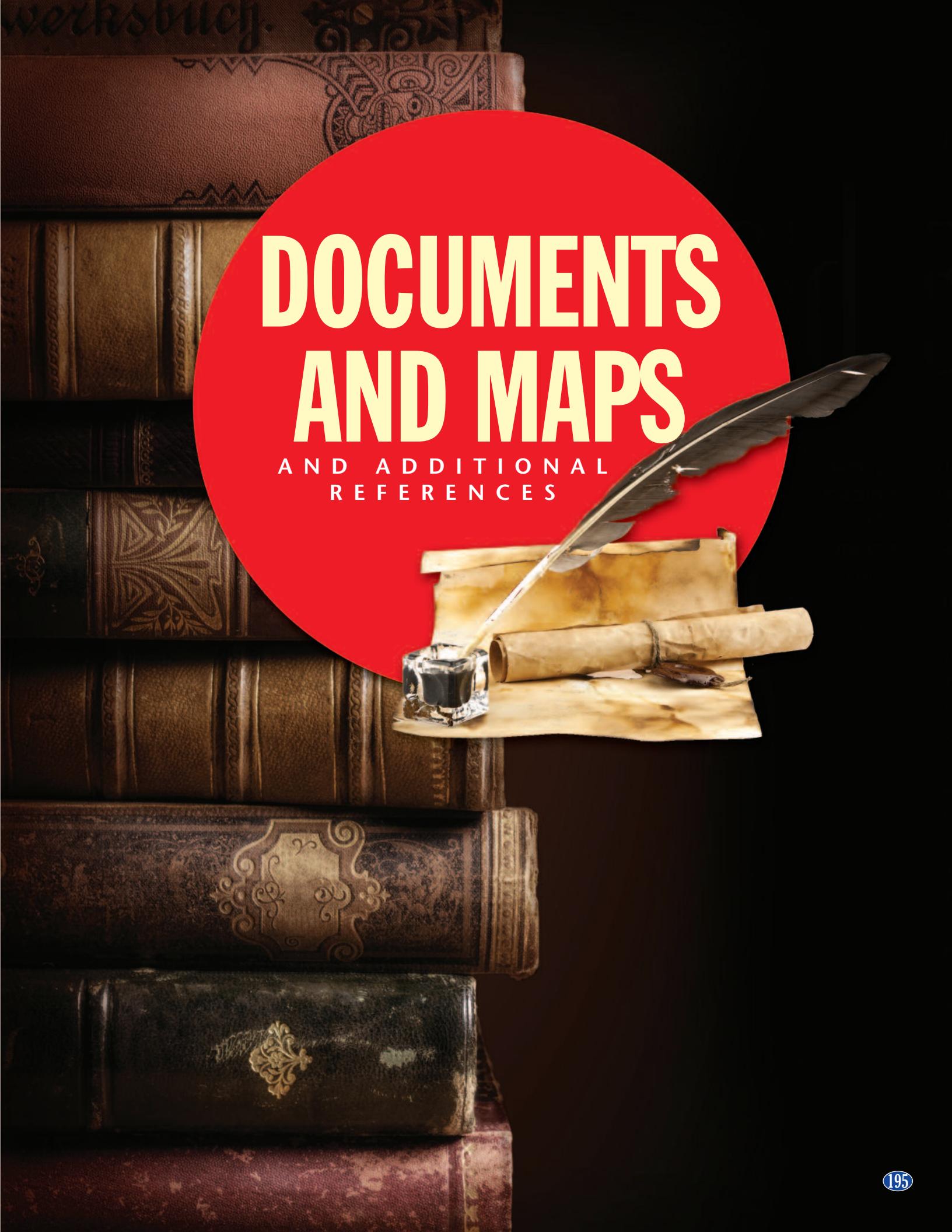
2. **Changes in technology influence the abilities, skills, and education needed in the workforce.** Advanced computers and smart artificial intelligence are fairly recent inventions. What are some careers that did not exist 50 years ago? Create a diagram or flow chart that shows the invention of a new technology and the careers that stem from that invention.

3. **Elected officials write laws in response to problems or issues.** When major changes in technology occur, legislation must be updated. In 2012 it became legal for civilians to fly drones for a hobby, and businesses are now able to use drones for work purposes. What rules for drones might be created in the future? Research the public policy that has been passed in your locality, state, and the nation. Create a timeline that shows how legislation has changed over time as drones have become more common.

---

## Imagine...

**Imagine you have just landed your dream job.** How did you get it? What did you study? How much money will you make? What kind of work ethic will be required? What kinds of technology will you be expected to use? Answer these questions by conducting research. Create a job description that will go under your picture in the company newsletter.



# DOCUMENTS AND MAPS

AND ADDITIONAL  
REFERENCES



# Declaration of Independence

Written by Thomas Jefferson and adopted by the Second Continental Congress July 4, 1776.

## Jefferson states his ideas about government.

All people have certain rights and freedoms that no one can take away. Governments get their power from the people and are formed to protect these rights and freedoms. If the government acts in a way that hurts the people and takes away their freedoms, people have the right to change this form of government. This change should only happen under the most serious of circumstances.

## Jefferson describes what has happened.

Britain's government has taken away our rights and treated us unfairly. The king has taken away our freedom. This is very serious and America needs to break away from the king.

*The unanimous Declaration of the thirteen united States of America,*

*When in the Course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the Laws of Nature and of Nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.*

We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal, that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable Rights, that among these are Life, Liberty and the pursuit of Happiness.--That to secure these rights,

Governments are instituted among Men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed, --That whenever any Form of Government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the Right of the People to alter or to abolish it, and to institute new Government, laying its foundation on such principles and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their Safety and Happiness.

Prudence, indeed, will dictate that Governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes; and accordingly all experience hath shown, that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same Object evinces a design to reduce them under absolute Despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such Government, and to provide new Guards for their future security.--

Such has been the patient sufferance of these Colonies; and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former Systems of Government. The history of the present King of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in direct object the establishment of an absolute Tyranny over these States. To prove this, let Facts be submitted to a candid world.

He has refused his Assent to Laws, the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his Governors to pass Laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his Assent should be obtained; and when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other Laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of Representation in the Legislature, a right inestimable to them and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public Records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved Representative Houses repeatedly, for opposing with manly firmness his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused for a long time, after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected; whereby the Legislative powers, incapable of Annihilation, have returned to the People at large for their exercise; the State remaining in the mean time exposed to all the dangers of invasion from without, and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States; for that purpose obstructing the Laws for Naturalization of Foreigners; refusing to pass others to encourage their migrations hither, and raising the conditions of new Appropriations of Lands. He has obstructed the Administration of Justice, by refusing his Assent to Laws for establishing Judiciary powers.

He has made Judges dependent on his Will alone, for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of New Offices, and sent hither swarms of Officers to harass our people, and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in times of peace, Standing Armies without the Consent of our legislatures.

He has affected to render the Military independent of and superior to the Civil power.

He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his Assent to their Acts of pretended Legislation:

For Quartering large bodies of armed troops among us:

For protecting them, by a mock Trial, from punishment for any Murders which they should commit on the Inhabitants of these States:

For cutting off our Trade with all parts of the world: For imposing Taxes on us without our Consent:

For depriving us in many cases, of the benefits of Trial by Jury:

For transporting us beyond Seas to be tried for pretended offences:

For abolishing the free System of English Laws in a neighboring Province, establishing therein an Arbitrary government, and enlarging its Boundaries so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these Colonies:

For taking away our Charters, abolishing our most valuable Laws, and altering fundamentally the Forms of our Governments:

For suspending our own Legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated Government here, by declaring us out of his Protection and waging War against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our Coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is at this time transporting large Armies of foreign Mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation and tyranny, already begun with circumstances of Cruelty & perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the Head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow Citizens taken Captive on the high Seas to bear Arms against their Country, to become the executioners of their friends and Brethren, or to fall themselves by their Hands.

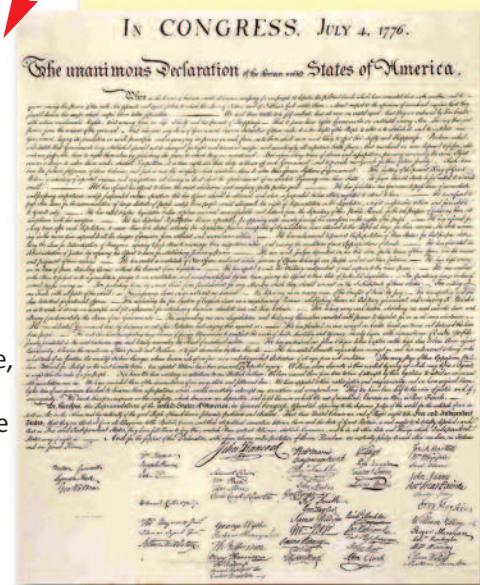
He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers, the merciless Indian Savages, whose known rule of warfare, is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes and conditions.

In every stage of these Oppressions We have Petitioned for Redress in the most humble terms: Our repeated Petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A Prince whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a Tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

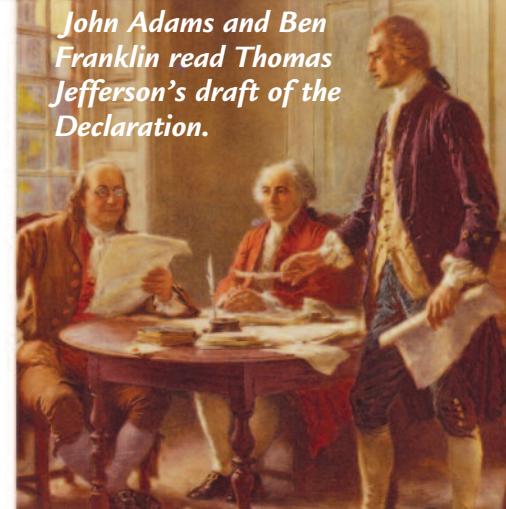
Nor have We been wanting in attentions to our British brethren. We have warned them from time to time of attempts by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them by the ties of our common kindred to disavow these usurpations, which, would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence.

**Jefferson gives a long list of the king's actions.**

The king has taxed us unfairly. He has hurt our ability to trade and has prevented us from enjoying our rights and freedoms.



*John Adams and Ben Franklin read Thomas Jefferson's draft of the Declaration.*



**Jefferson describes how serious this problem is.**

We have tried everything in an effort to work things out with the king, but he doesn't listen.

**With no other choice,  
America breaks away.**

Therefore, we are breaking away from England and choosing to become an independent country. We will govern ourselves!

They too have been deaf to the voice of justice and of consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity, which denounces our Separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind, Enemies in War, in Peace Friends.

We, therefore, the Representatives of the United States of America, in General Congress, Assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the Name, and by Authority of the good People of these Colonies, solemnly publish and declare, That these United Colonies are, and of Right ought to be Free and Independent States; that they are Absolved from all Allegiance to the British Crown, and that all political connection between them and the State of Great Britain, is and ought to be totally dissolved; and that as Free and Independent States, they have full Power to levy War, conclude Peace, contract Alliances, establish Commerce, and to do all other Acts and Things which Independent States may of right do. And for the support of this Declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our Lives, our Fortunes and our sacred Honor.

**GEORGIA**

Button Gwinnett  
Lyman Hall  
George Walton

**NORTH CAROLINA**

William Hooper  
Joseph Hewes  
John Penn

**SOUTH CAROLINA**

Edward Rutledge  
Thomas Heyward, Jr.  
Thomas Lynch, Jr.  
Arthur Middleton

**MASSACHUSETTS**

John Hancock  
Samuel Adams  
John Adams  
Robert Treat Paine  
Elbridge Gerry

**MARYLAND**

Samuel Chase  
William Paca  
Thomas Stone  
Charles Carroll of  
Carrollton

**VIRGINIA**

George Wythe  
Richard Henry Lee  
Thomas Jefferson  
Benjamin Harrison  
Thomas Nelson, Jr.  
Francis Lightfoot Lee  
Carter Braxton

**PENNSYLVANIA**

Robert Morris  
Benjamin Rush  
Benjamin Franklin  
John Morton  
George Clymer  
James Smith  
George Taylor  
James Wilson  
George Ross

**DELAWARE**

Caesar Rodney  
George Read  
Thomas McKean

**NEW YORK**

William Floyd  
Philip Livingston  
Francis Lewis  
Lewis Morris

**NEW JERSEY**

Richard Stockton  
John Witherspoon  
Francis Hopkinson  
John Hart  
Abraham Clark

**NEW HAMPSHIRE**

Josiah Bartlett  
William Whipple  
Matthew Thornton

**RHODE ISLAND**

Stephen Hopkins  
William Ellery

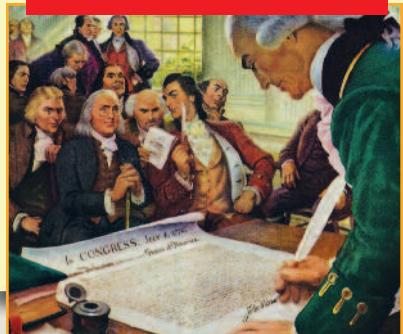
**CONNECTICUT**

Roger Sherman  
Samuel Huntington  
William Williams  
Oliver Wolcott

Fifty-six Americans signed the Declaration of Independence. Benjamin Franklin said it best when he described that event.

**"We must all hang together, or assuredly we shall all hang separately."**

John Hancock proudly signs his name in big letters. Can you find his signature below?



— And for the support of this Declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our Lives, our Fortunes

Button Gwinnett  
Lyman Hall  
Geo Walton

John Hooper  
Joseph Hewes,  
John Penn

Edward Rutledge Jr.

The Mayors & Just<sup>t</sup>  
Thomas Lynch Jr.  
Arthur Middleton

George Wythe  
Richard Henry Lee  
Thomas Jefferson  
Benjamin Harrison  
Thomas Nelson Jr.  
Francis Lightfoot Lee  
Carter Braxton

John Hancock  
Robt Morris  
Benj. Rush  
Benj. Franklin  
John Morton  
Geo. Clymer  
Jas. Smith  
Geo. Taylor  
James Wilson  
GW. ROB<sup>r</sup>  
Carter Braxton  
Thos. M. Clark  
Rufus King  
John Hart  
Tho. M. Clark  
Nathl. Jackson  
John C. Drayson  
Jos. Warren  
Saml. Huntington  
Wm. Williams  
Oliver Wolcott  
Matthew Thornton

## **THE PREAMBLE** **Introduces what the framers hope to accomplish.**

This plan of government will keep people safe and their liberties secure. We are confident this plan will protect our citizens for a very long time.

## **ARTICLE I. CONGRESS** **Introduces the Congress and its power. The fact that Congress is described first shows that the framers wanted the people to know it was important.**

Government will have a Congress made up of a House of Representatives and a Senate. House members will serve for two years and are elected by the people. Senate members will serve for six years and are chosen by state leaders (*changed by the 17th Amendment*).

*We the People of the United States, in Order to form a more perfect Union, establish Justice, insure domestic Tranquility, provide for the common defence, promote the general Welfare, and secure the Blessings of Liberty to ourselves and our Posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.*

## **ARTICLE I. THE LEGISLATIVE BRANCH**

### **Section 1 - The Legislature**

All legislative Powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

### **Section 2 - The House**

The House of Representatives shall be composed of Members chosen every second Year by the People of the several States, and the Electors in each State shall have the Qualifications requisite for Electors of the most numerous Branch of the State Legislature.

No Person shall be a Representative who shall not have attained to the Age of twenty five Years, and been seven Years a Citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an Inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

(Representatives and direct Taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective Numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole Number of free Persons, including those bound to Service for a Term of Years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three fifths of all other Persons.) (*The previous sentence in parentheses was modified by the 14th Amendment, section 2.*) The actual Enumeration shall be made within three Years after the first Meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent Term of ten Years, in such Manner as they shall by Law direct. The Number of Representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty Thousand, but each State shall have at Least one Representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations one,

Connecticut five, New York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five and Georgia three.

When vacancies happen in the Representation from any State, the Executive Authority thereof shall issue Writs of Election to fill such Vacancies.

The House of Representatives shall choose their Speaker and other Officers; and shall have the sole Power of Impeachment.

### **Section 3 - The Senate**

The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, (chosen by the Legislature thereof,) (*The words in parentheses were changed by the 17th Amendment, section 1.*) for six Years; and each Senator shall have one Vote.

Immediately after they shall be assembled in Consequence of the first Election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three Classes. The Seats of the Senators of the first Class shall be vacated at the Expiration of the second Year, of the second Class at the Expiration of the fourth Year, and of the third Class at the Expiration of the sixth Year, so that one third may be chosen every second Year; (and if Vacancies happen by Resignation, or otherwise, during the Recess of the Legislature of any State, the Executive thereof may make temporary Appointments until the next Meeting of the Legislature, which shall then fill such Vacancies.) (*The words in parentheses were changed by the 17th Amendment, section 2.*)

No person shall be a Senator who shall not have attained to the Age of thirty Years, and been nine Years a Citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an Inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

The Vice President of the United States shall be President of the Senate, but shall have no Vote, unless they be equally divided.

# **The Constitution of the United States**

Framed at the 1787 Constitutional Convention and ratified in 1789.



## **IMPEACHMENT** **How to discipline a president who misbehaves.**

Congress has the power to publicly charge the president with misconduct. If a president does something bad while in office, the House of Representatives can vote to impeach—bring one or more charges against—the president. Then the Senate holds a trial and votes on whether to convict him and remove him from office. Two presidents have been impeached; neither was convicted and removed.

## **BEING IN CONGRESS**

- Each House of Congress will determine its own rules.
- Members of Congress will be paid out of the U.S. Treasury.  
*(In 2010, members of the House and the Senate earned \$174,000 per year)*
- Each member of Congress is able to speak freely while Congress is in session.

## **TAXES**

The federal government cannot tax your property or income unless both houses of Congress agree to it.

## **LAWMAKING**

Congress has the power to pass bills for the president to sign. If the president doesn't like the bill, he or she can send it back to Congress (veto). Congress can pass the bill into law over the president's veto if two-thirds of the House, and two-thirds of the Senate, both vote to do so.

The Senate shall choose their other Officers, and also a President pro tempore, in the absence of the Vice President, or when he shall exercise the Office of President of the United States.

The Senate shall have the sole Power to try all Impeachments. When sitting for that Purpose, they shall be on Oath or Affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief Justice shall preside: And no Person shall be convicted without the Concurrence of two thirds of the Members present.

Judgment in Cases of Impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from Office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any Office of honor, Trust or Profit under the United States: but the Party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to Indictment, Trial, Judgment and Punishment, according to Law.

## **Section 4 - Elections, Meetings**

The Times, Places and Manner of holding Elections for Senators and Representatives, shall be prescribed in each State by the Legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time by Law make or alter such Regulations, except as to the Place of choosing Senators.

The Congress shall assemble at least once in every Year, and such Meeting shall (be on the first Monday in December,) *(The preceding words in parentheses were superseded by the 20th Amendment, section 2.)* unless they shall by Law appoint a different Day.

## **Section 5 - Membership, Rules, Journals, Adjournment**

Each House shall be the Judge of the Elections, Returns and Qualifications of its own Members, and a Majority of each shall constitute a Quorum to do Business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the Attendance of absent Members, in such Manner, and under such Penalties as each House may provide.

Each House may determine the Rules of its Proceedings, punish its Members for disorderly Behavior, and, with the Concurrence of two-thirds, expel a Member.

Each House shall keep a Journal of its Proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such Parts as may in their Judgment require Secrecy; and the Yeas and Nays of the Members of either House on any question shall, at the Desire of one fifth of those Present, be entered on the Journal. Neither House, during the Session of Congress, shall, without the Consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other Place than that in which the two Houses shall be sitting.

## **Section 6 - Compensation**

(The Senators and Representatives shall receive a Compensation for their Services, to be ascertained by Law, and paid out of the Treasury of the United States.) *(The preceding words in parentheses were modified by the 27th Amendment.)* They shall in all Cases, except Treason, Felony and Breach of the Peace, be privileged from Arrest during their Attendance at the Session of their respective Houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any Speech or Debate in either House, they shall not be questioned in any other Place.

No Senator or Representative shall, during the Time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil Office under the Authority of the United States which shall have been created, or the Emoluments whereof shall have been increased during such time; and no Person holding any Office under the United States, shall be a Member of either House during his Continuance in Office.

## **Section 7 - Revenue Bills, Legislative Process, Presidential Veto**

All bills for raising Revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with Amendments as on other Bills.

Every Bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a Law, be presented to the President of the United States; If he approve he shall sign it, but if not he shall return it, with his Objections to that House in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the Objections at large on their Journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If after such Reconsideration two thirds of that House shall agree to pass the Bill, it shall be sent, together with the Objections, to the other House, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two thirds of that House, it shall become a Law. But in all such Cases the Votes of both Houses shall be determined by Yeas and Nays, and the Names of the Persons voting for and against the Bill shall be entered on the Journal of each House respectively.

If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten Days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the Same shall be a Law, in like Manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their Adjournment prevent its Return, in which Case it shall not be a Law.

Every Order, Resolution, or Vote to which the Concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of Adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States; and before the Same shall take Effect, shall be approved by him, or being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the Rules and Limitations prescribed in the Case of a Bill.

### Section 8 - Powers of Congress

The Congress shall have Power To lay and collect Taxes, Duties, Imposts and Excises, to pay the Debts and provide for the common Defence and general Welfare of the United States; but all Duties, Imposts and Excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;

To borrow money on the credit of the United States;

To regulate Commerce with foreign Nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian Tribes;

To establish an uniform Rule of Naturalization, and uniform Laws on the subject of Bankruptcies throughout the United States;

To coin Money, regulate the Value thereof, and of foreign Coin, and fix the Standard of Weights and Measures;

To provide for the Punishment of counterfeiting the Securities and current Coin of the United States;

To establish Post Offices and Post Roads;

To promote the Progress of Science and useful Arts, by securing for limited Times to Authors and Inventors the exclusive Right to their respective Writings and Discoveries;

To constitute Tribunals inferior to the supreme Court;

To define and punish Piracies and Felonies committed on the high Seas, and Offenses against the Law of Nations;

To declare War, grant Letters of Marque and Reprisal, and make Rules concerning Captures on Land and Water;

To raise and support Armies, but no Appropriation of Money to that Use shall be for a longer Term than two Years;

To provide and maintain a Navy;

To make Rules for the Government and Regulation of the land and naval Forces;

To provide for calling forth the Militia to execute the Laws of the Union, suppress Insurrections and repel Invasions;

To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the Militia, and for governing such Part of them as may be employed in the Service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively, the Appointment of the Officers, and the Authority of training the Militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress;

To exercise exclusive Legislation in all Cases whatsoever, over such District (not exceeding ten Miles square) as may, by Cession of particular States, and the acceptance of Congress, become the Seat of the Government of the United States, and to exercise like Authority over all Places purchased by the Consent of the Legislature of the State in which the Same shall be, for the Erection of Forts, Magazines, Arsenals, dock-Yards, and other needful Buildings; And

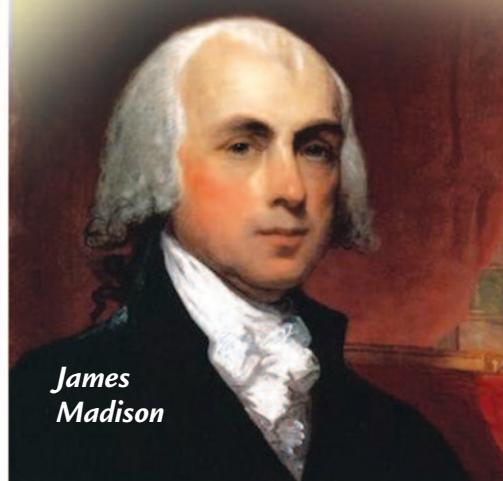
To make all Laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into Execution the foregoing Powers, and all other Powers vested by this Constitution in the Government of the United States, or in any Department or Officer thereof.

### POCKET VETO

If the president takes no action on a bill passed by Congress within 10 days while Congress is in session, it becomes a law without his signature. If Congress is not in session when this happens the bill dies. (This is called a "pocket veto.")

### POWER

Congress has the power to help and protect the country. This power includes taxing to raise money, forming an army, and declaring war.



James  
Madison

### ELASTIC CLAUSE

This clause allows Congress to stretch its power to make all laws that become necessary as time passes and the country's needs change.

## LIMITS

There are things the federal and state governments cannot do.

**Federal Government** cannot:

- Put people in jail without telling them why.
- Pass a law against an action after it has already happened.
- Tax products shipped out of the United States.
- Allow elected officials to accept gifts from foreign countries.

This is an abbreviated "Bill of Rights."

## LIMITS ON STATE POWER

**State Government** cannot:

- Make treaties with other countries
- Print money
- Declare war on another country

## ARTICLE II. THE PRESIDENT

The government will have a president and a vice president whose term will be four years. The president and vice president will be chosen by special people, called electors, from each state. There are rules to determine who is allowed to be president.

## Section 9 - Limits on Congress

The Migration or Importation of such Persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the Year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such Importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each Person.

The privilege of the Writ of Habeas Corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in Cases of Rebellion or Invasion the public Safety may require it.

No Bill of Attainder or ex post facto Law shall be passed.

(No capitation, or other direct, Tax shall be laid, unless in Proportion to the Census or Enumeration herein before directed to be taken.) (Section in parentheses clarified by the 16th Amendment.)

No Tax or Duty shall be laid on Articles exported from any State.

No Preference shall be given by any Regulation of Commerce or Revenue to the Ports of one State over those of another: nor shall Vessels bound to, or from, one State, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay Duties in another.

No Money shall be drawn from the Treasury, but in Consequence of Appropriations made by Law; and a regular Statement and Account of the Receipts and Expenditures of all public Money shall be published from time to time.

No Title of Nobility shall be granted by the United States: And no Person holding any Office of Profit or Trust under them, shall, without the Consent of the Congress, accept of any present, Emolument, Office, or Title, of any kind whatever, from any King, Prince or foreign State.

## Section 10 - Powers prohibited of States

No State shall enter into any Treaty, Alliance, or Confederation; grant Letters of Marque and Reprisal; coin Money; emit Bills of Credit; make any Thing but gold and silver Coin a Tender in Payment of Debts; pass any Bill of Attainder, ex post facto Law, or Law impairing the Obligation of Contracts, or grant any Title of Nobility.

No State shall, without the Consent of the Congress, lay any Imposts or Duties on Imports or Exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection Laws: and the net Produce of all Duties and Imposts, laid by any State on Imports or Exports, shall be for the Use of the Treasury of the United States; and all such Laws shall be subject to the Revision and control of the Congress.

No State shall, without the Consent of Congress, lay any duty of Tonnage, keep Troops, or Ships of War in time of Peace, enter into any Agreement or Compact with another State, or with a foreign Power, or engage in War, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent Danger as will not admit of delay.

## ARTICLE. II. - THE EXECUTIVE BRANCH

### Section 1 - The President

The executive Power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his Office during the Term of four Years, and, together with the Vice President chosen for the same Term, be elected, as follows:

Each State shall appoint, in such Manner as the Legislature thereof may direct, a Number of Electors, equal to the whole Number of Senators and Representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress: but no Senator or Representative, or Person holding an Office of Trust or Profit under the United States, shall be appointed an Elector.

(The Electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by Ballot for two persons, of whom one at least shall not lie an Inhabitant of the same State with themselves. And they shall make a List of all the Persons voted for, and of the Number of Votes for each; which List they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the Seat of the Government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate. The President of the Senate shall, in the Presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the Certificates, and the Votes shall then be counted. The Person having the greatest Number of Votes shall be the President, if such Number be a Majority of the whole Number of Electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such Majority, and have an equal Number of Votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately choose by Ballot one of them for President; and if no Person have a Majority, then from the five highest on the List the said House shall in like Manner choose the President.

But in choosing the President, the Votes shall be taken by States, the Representation from each State having one Vote; a quorum for this Purpose shall consist of a Member or Members from two-thirds of the States, and a Majority of all the States shall be necessary to a Choice. In every Case, after the Choice of the President, the Person having the greatest Number of Votes of the Electors shall be the Vice President. But if there should remain two or more who have equal Votes, the Senate shall choose from them by Ballot the Vice President.) (*This clause in parentheses was superseded by the 12th Amendment.*)

The Congress may determine the Time of choosing the Electors, and the Day on which they shall give their Votes; which Day shall be the same throughout the United States.

No person except a natural born Citizen, or a Citizen of the United States, at the time of the Adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the Office of President; neither shall any Person be eligible to that Office who shall not have attained to the Age of thirty-five Years, and been fourteen Years a Resident within the United States.

(In Case of the Removal of the President from Office, or of his Death, Resignation, or Inability to discharge the Powers and Duties of the said Office, the same shall devolve on the Vice President, and the Congress may by Law provide for the Case of Removal, Death, Resignation or Inability, both of the President and Vice President, declaring what Officer shall then act as President, and such Officer shall act accordingly, until the Disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.) (*This clause in parentheses has been modified by the 20th and 25th Amendments.*)

The President shall, at stated Times, receive for his Services, a Compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the Period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that Period any other Emolument from the United States, or any of them.

Before he enter on the Execution of his Office, he shall take the following Oath or Affirmation: "I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the Office of President of the United States, and will to the best of my Ability, preserve, protect and defend the Constitution of the United States."

#### **Section 2 - Civilian Power over Military, Cabinet, Pardon Power, Appointments**

The President shall be Commander in Chief of the Army and Navy of the United States, and of the Militia of the several States, when called into the actual Service of the United States; he may require the Opinion, in writing, of the principal Officer in each of the executive Departments, upon any subject relating to the Duties of their respective Offices, and he shall have Power to Grant Reprieves and Pardons for Offenses against the United States, except in Cases of Impeachment.

He shall have Power, by and with the Advice and Consent of the Senate, to make Treaties, provided two thirds of the Senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the Advice and Consent of the Senate, shall appoint Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls, Judges of the supreme Court, and all other Officers of the United States, whose Appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by Law: but the Congress may by Law vest the Appointment of such inferior Officers, as they think proper, in the President alone, in the Courts of Law, or in the Heads of Departments.

The President shall have Power to fill up all Vacancies that may happen during the Recess of the Senate, by granting Commissions which shall expire at the End of their next Session.

#### **Section 3 - State of the Union, Convening Congress**

He shall from time to time give to the Congress Information of the State of the Union, and recommend to their Consideration such Measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary Occasions, convene both Houses, or either of them, and in Case of Disagreement between them, with Respect to the Time of Adjournment, he may adjourn them to such Time as he shall think proper; he shall receive Ambassadors and other public Ministers; he shall take Care that the Laws be faithfully executed, and shall Commission all the Officers of the United States.

#### **Section 4 - Disqualification**

The President, Vice President and all civil Officers of the United States, shall be removed from Office on Impeachment for, and Conviction of, Treason, Bribery, or other high Crimes and Misdemeanors.

#### **WHO CAN BE PRESIDENT?**

To serve as president, a person must be a natural born citizen and be at least 35 years old.

#### **PRESIDENTIAL POWERS**

Presidential power includes: being in charge of the military, making treaties, and appointing judges.

#### **STATE OF THE UNION**

The president must report to Congress on how things in the country are going. He describes the "State of the Union."

#### **REMOVAL FROM OFFICE**

Presidents can be removed from office if they are convicted of a serious crime by Congress.

### ARTICLE III. THE COURTS

The government will have a judicial branch that includes a Supreme Court. Congress can also establish lower courts, and it quickly created a system of federal courts with three levels: district courts; courts of appeal; and, at the top, the Supreme Court.

### THE SUPREME COURT

Supreme Court can rule on all cases involving:

- Ambassadors from other countries
- Two different states
- Citizens from different states
- Cases from lower courts that are still being argued

### TREASON

No person is allowed to do anything that would seriously hurt the United States. This is treason and will be punished severely.

### ARTICLE IV. SOME ADDITIONAL RULES

Each state's laws must be respected. The government has the power to add more states. Escaped slaves must be returned.

### NEW STATES

Congress has the power to set the rules to create new states. More states can be established.

### ARTICLE III. - THE JUDICIAL BRANCH

#### Section 1 - Judicial powers

The judicial Power of the United States, shall be vested in one supreme Court, and in such inferior Courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The Judges, both of the supreme and inferior Courts, shall hold their Offices during good Behavior, and shall, at stated Times, receive for their Services a Compensation which shall not be diminished during their Continuance in Office.

#### Section 2 - Trial by Jury, Original Jurisdiction, Jury Trials

(The judicial Power shall extend to all Cases, in Law and Equity, arising under this Constitution, the Laws of the United States, and Treaties made, or which shall be made, under their Authority; to all Cases affecting Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls; to all Cases of admiralty and maritime Jurisdiction; to Controversies to which the United States shall be a Party; to Controversies between two or more States; between a State and Citizens of another State; between Citizens of different States; between Citizens of the same State claiming Lands under Grants of different States, and between a State, or the Citizens thereof, and foreign States, Citizens or Subjects.)  
*(This section in parentheses is modified by the 11th Amendment.)*

In all Cases affecting Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls, and those in which a State shall be Party, the supreme Court shall have original Jurisdiction. In all the other Cases before mentioned, the supreme Court shall have appellate Jurisdiction, both as to Law and Fact, with such Exceptions, and under such Regulations as the Congress shall make.

The Trial of all Crimes, except in Cases of Impeachment, shall be by Jury; and such Trial shall be held in the State where the said Crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the Trial shall be at such Place or Places as the Congress may by Law have directed.

#### Section 3 - Treason

Treason against the United States, shall consist only in levying War against them, or in adhering to their Enemies, giving them Aid and Comfort. No Person shall be convicted of Treason unless on the Testimony of two Witnesses to the same overt Act, or on Confession in open Court.

The Congress shall have power to declare the Punishment of Treason, but no Attainer of Treason shall work Corruption of Blood, or Forfeiture except during the Life of the Person attainted.

### ARTICLE. IV. - THE STATES

#### Section 1 - Each State to Honor all others

Full Faith and Credit shall be given in each State to the public Acts, Records, and judicial Proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may by general Laws prescribe the Manner in which such Acts, Records and Proceedings shall be proved, and the Effect thereof.

#### Section 2 - State citizens, Extradition

The Citizens of each State shall be entitled to all Privileges and Immunities of Citizens in the several States.

A Person charged in any State with Treason, Felony, or other Crime, who shall flee from Justice, and be found in another State, shall on demand of the executive Authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having Jurisdiction of the Crime.

(No Person held to Service or Labour in one State, under the Laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in Consequence of any Law or Regulation therein, be discharged from such Service or Labour, But shall be delivered up on Claim of the Party to whom such Service or Labour may be due.)  
*(The clause in parentheses is changed by the 13th Amendment.)*

#### Section 3 - New States

New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new States shall be formed or erected within the Jurisdiction of any other State; nor any State be formed by the Junction of two or more States, or parts of States, without the Consent of the Legislatures of the States concerned as well as of the Congress.

The Congress shall have Power to dispose of and make all needful Rules and Regulations respecting the Territory or other Property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to Prejudice any Claims of the United States, or of any particular State.

#### **Section 4 - Republican government**

The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a Republican Form of Government, and shall protect each of them against Invasion; and on Application of the Legislature, or of the Executive (when the Legislature cannot be convened) against domestic Violence.

#### **ARTICLE. V. - AMENDMENT**

The Congress, whenever two thirds of both Houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose Amendments to this Constitution, or, on the Application of the Legislatures of two thirds of the several States, shall call a Convention for proposing Amendments, which, in either Case, shall be valid to all Intents and Purposes, as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the Legislatures of three fourths of the several States, or by Conventions in three fourths thereof, as the one or the other Mode of Ratification may be proposed by the Congress; Provided that no Amendment which may be made prior to the Year One thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any Manner affect the first and fourth Clauses in the Ninth Section of the first Article; and that no State, without its Consent, shall be deprived of its equal Suffrage in the Senate.

#### **ARTICLE. VI. - DEBTS, SUPREMACY, OATHS**

All Debts contracted and Engagements entered into, before the Adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the Confederation.

This Constitution, and the Laws of the United States which shall be made in Pursuance thereof; and all Treaties made, or which shall be made, under the Authority of the United States, shall be the supreme Law of the Land; and the Judges in every State shall be bound thereby, any Thing in the Constitution or Laws of any State to the Contrary notwithstanding.

The Senators and Representatives before mentioned, and the Members of the several State Legislatures, and all executive and judicial Officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by Oath or Affirmation, to support this Constitution; but no religious Test shall ever be required as a Qualification to any Office or public Trust under the United States.

#### **ARTICLE. VII. - RATIFICATION DOCUMENTS**

The Ratification of the Conventions of nine States, shall be sufficient for the Establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the Same.

Done in Convention by the Unanimous Consent of the States present the Seventeenth Day of September in the Year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and Eighty seven and of the Independence of the United States of America the Twelfth. In Witness whereof We have hereunto subscribed our Names.

G. Washington-Presidt. and deputy from VIRGINIA

NEW HAMPSHIRE: John Langdon, Nicholas Gilman

MASSACHUSETTS: Nathaniel Gorham, Rufus King

CONNECTICUT: Wm. Saml. Johnson, Roger Sherman

NEW YORK: Alexander Hamilton

NEW JERSEY: Wil. Livingston, David Brearly, Wm. Paterson, Jona. Dayton

PENNSYLVANIA: B. Franklin, Thomas Mifflin, Robt. Morris, Geo. Clymer, Thos. FitzSimons, Jared Ingersoll, James Wilson, Gouv Morris

DELAWARE: Geo. Read, Gunning Bedford jun, John Dickinson, Richard Bassett, Jaco. Broom

MARYLAND: James McHenry, Dan of St Thos. Jenifer, Danl Carroll

VIRGINIA: John Blair, James Madison Jr.

NORTH CAROLINA: Wm. Blount, Richd. Dobbs Spaight, Hu Williamson

SOUTH CAROLINA: J. Rutledge, Charles Cotesworth Pinckney, Charles Pinckney, Pierce Butler

GEORGIA: William Few, Abr Baldwin

#### **ARTICLE V. AMENDING THE CONSTITUTION**

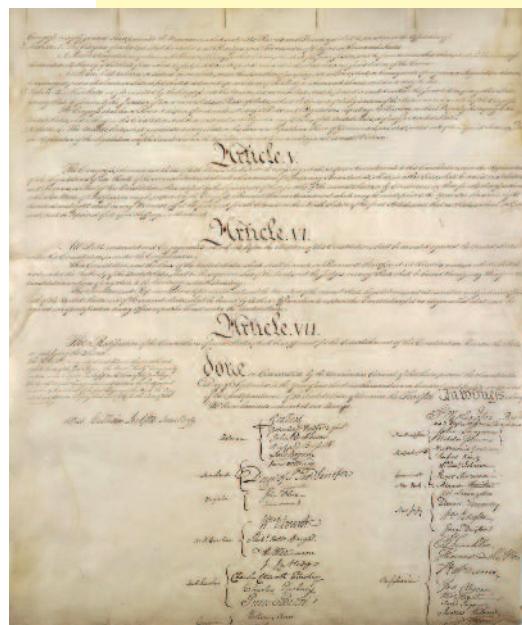
Congress can propose changes to the Constitution, if two-thirds of the members of each house, the Senate and the House of Representatives, vote to do so. Then the proposed amendment goes to the states, and three-quarters of them must ratify it before it goes into effect. These days that means 38 out of the 50 states must agree to it before it becomes part of the Constitution.

#### **ARTICLE VI. THE CONSTITUTION IS HIGHEST LAW**

The Constitution is the most important law of the land. When state law conflicts with the Constitution, the Constitution wins.

#### **ARTICLE VII. ACCEPTING THE CONSTITUTION**

If 9 of the original 13 states agree to the terms of the Constitution, it becomes the law of the land.



An amendment is a change or an addition to a law.

#### FIRST AMENDMENT

We are allowed to practice any religion we choose. The government can't stop us from saying or writing what we think. We are allowed to meet peacefully in groups.

#### SECOND AMENDMENT

When the Constitution was adopted, the U.S. had no national army. This gives us the right to bear arms to defend ourselves.

#### FOURTH AMENDMENT

The government cannot search us or our home without proper permission.

#### FIFTH AMENDMENT

People accused of crimes are protected from government abuse.

#### SIXTH AND SEVENTH AMENDMENTS

The people have a right to a speedy trial by a jury.

#### EIGHTH AMENDMENT

Any government punishment must be fair.

#### NINTH AND TENTH AMENDMENTS

The rights of people and powers of states, if not listed here as granted the federal government, belong to the people or the states.

#### AMENDMENT 1. Freedom of Religion, Press, Expression.

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the Government for a redress of grievances.

#### AMENDMENT 2. Right to Bear Arms.

A well regulated Militia, being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear Arms, shall not be infringed.

#### AMENDMENT 3. Quartering of Soldiers.

No Soldier shall, in time of peace be quartered in any house, without the consent of the Owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

#### AMENDMENT 4. Search and Seizure.

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no Warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by Oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

#### AMENDMENT 5. Trial and Punishment, Compensation for Takings.

No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a Grand Jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the Militia, when in actual service in time of War or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offense to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

#### AMENDMENT 6. Right to Speedy Trial, Confrontation of Witnesses.

In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the Assistance of Counsel for his defence.

#### AMENDMENT 7. Trial by Jury in Civil Cases.

In Suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury, shall be otherwise re-examined in any Court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

#### AMENDMENT 8. Cruel and Unusual Punishment.

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

#### AMENDMENT 9. Construction of Constitution.

The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

#### AMENDMENT 10. Powers of the States and People.

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

# The Bill of Rights

Proposed by James Madison and approved December 15, 1791.

# Additional Amendments to the Constitution

More than 200 years of change for a changing world.

*In the years since the Bill of Rights was ratified, other changes have also been made to the Constitution. These changes are usually very important, and they are not made very often.*

## 12TH AMENDMENT

When the Constitution was written, the person who finished second in the presidential election became vice president. This amendment changed this. People now vote separately for the president and the vice president.

If there is no Electoral College majority, the House of Representatives will decide who becomes president. Today the winning candidate for president must win 270 out of 538 electoral votes to win a majority.

## 13TH, 14TH, AND 15TH AMENDMENTS

Slavery is ended. African Americans, like white people born in the United States, are citizens, and they have the same rights as other citizens, including voting rights.

## AMENDMENT 11. Judicial Limits.

Ratified 2/7/1795.  
The Judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by Citizens of another State, or by Citizens or Subjects of any Foreign State.

## AMENDMENT 12. Choosing the President, Vice President.

Ratified 6/15/1804.  
The Electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for President and Vice President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice President, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice President and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate;

The President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates and the votes shall then be counted;

The person having the greatest Number of votes for President, shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President.

The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice President, shall be the Vice President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed, and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice President; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of Senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice President of the United States.

## AMENDMENT 13. Slavery Abolished.

Ratified 12/6/1865.  
1. Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

2. Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

## AMENDMENT 14. Citizenship Rights.

Ratified 7/9/1868.  
1. All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

2. Representatives shall be apportioned among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of electors for President and Vice President of the United States, Representatives in Congress, the Executive and Judicial officers of a State, or the members of the Legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State, being twenty-one years of age, and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion, or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such State.

## **13TH, 14TH, AND 15TH AMENDMENTS**

Slavery is ended. African Americans, like white people born in the United States, are citizens, and they have the same rights as other citizens, including voting rights.

## **16TH AMENDMENT**

Congress has the power to tax the people based on how much money they make.

## **17TH AMENDMENT**

State legislatures used to appoint U.S. Senators, but under this amendment the voters elect senators.

## **18TH AMENDMENT**

The production, sale, and use of alcohol are illegal.

## **19TH AMENDMENT**

Women have the right to vote.

## **20TH AMENDMENT**

The president's term will start when the president takes the oath of office on January 20th. Congress will start its new term January 3rd.

3. No person shall be a Senator or Representative in Congress, or elector of President and Vice President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath, as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress may by a vote of two-thirds of each House, remove such disability.

4. The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations and claims shall be held illegal and void.

5. The Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

---

### **AMENDMENT 15. Race No Bar to Vote.** Ratified 2/3/1870.

1. The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or by any State on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

2. The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

---

### **AMENDMENT 16. Status of Income Tax Clarified.** Ratified 2/3/1913.

The Congress shall have power to lay and collect taxes on incomes, from whatever source derived, without apportionment among the several States, and without regard to any census or enumeration.

---

### **AMENDMENT 17. Senators Elected by Popular Vote.** Ratified 4/8/1913.

The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, elected by the people thereof, for six years; and each Senator shall have one vote. The electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State legislatures.

When vacancies happen in the representation of any State in the Senate, the executive authority of such State shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies: Provided, That the legislature of any State may empower the executive thereof to make temporary appointments until the people fill the vacancies by election as the legislature may direct.

This amendment shall not be so construed as to affect the election or term of any Senator chosen before it becomes valid as part of the Constitution.

---

### **AMENDMENT 18. Making, Selling, and Distributing Liquor.** Ratified 1/16/1919. Repealed by Amendment 21, 12/5/1933.

1. After one year from the ratification of this article the manufacture, sale, or transportation of intoxicating liquors within, the importation thereof into, or the exportation thereof from the United States and all territory subject to the jurisdiction thereof for beverage purposes is hereby prohibited.

2. The Congress and the several States shall have concurrent power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

3. This article shall be inoperative unless it shall have been ratified as an amendment to the Constitution by the legislatures of the several States, as provided in the Constitution, within seven years from the date of the submission hereof to the States by the Congress.

---

### **AMENDMENT 19. Women's Suffrage.** Ratified 8/18/1920.

The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or by any State on account of sex.

Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

---

### **AMENDMENT 20. Presidential, Congressional Terms.** Ratified 1/23/1933.

1. The terms of the President and Vice President shall end at noon on the 20th day of January, and the terms of Senators and Representatives at noon on the 3rd day of January, of the years in which such terms would have ended if this article had not been ratified; and the terms of their successors shall then begin.

2. The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall begin at noon on the 3rd day of January, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

3. If, at the time fixed for the beginning of the term of the President, the President-elect shall have died, the Vice President-elect shall become President. If a President shall not have been chosen before the time fixed for the beginning of his term, or if the President-elect shall have failed to qualify, then the Vice President-elect shall act as President until a President shall have qualified; and the Congress may by law provide for the case wherein neither a President elect nor a Vice President-elect shall have qualified, declaring who shall then act as President, or the manner in which one who is to act shall be selected, and such person shall act accordingly until a President or Vice President shall have qualified.

4. The Congress may by law provide for the case of the death of any of the persons from whom the House of Representatives may choose a President whenever the right of choice shall have devolved upon them, and for the case of the death of any of the persons from whom the Senate may choose a Vice President whenever the right of choice shall have devolved upon them.

5. Sections 1 and 2 shall take effect on the 15th day of October following the ratification of this article.

6. This article shall be inoperative unless it shall have been ratified as an amendment to the Constitution by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several States within seven years from the date of its submission.

---

**AMENDMENT 21. Amendment 18 Repealed.** Ratified 12/5/1933.

1. The eighteenth article of amendment to the Constitution of the United States is hereby repealed.

2. The transportation or importation into any State, Territory, or possession of the United States for delivery or use therein of intoxicating liquors, in violation of the laws thereof, is hereby prohibited.

3. The article shall be inoperative unless it shall have been ratified as an amendment to the Constitution by conventions in the several States, as provided in the Constitution, within seven years from the date of the submission hereof to the States by the Congress.

---

**AMENDMENT 22. Presidential Term Limits.** Ratified 2/27/1951.

1. No person shall be elected to the office of the President more than twice, and no person who has held the office of President, or acted as President, for more than two years of a term to which some other person was elected President shall be elected to the office of the President more than once. But this Article shall not apply to any person holding the office of President, when this Article was proposed by the Congress, and shall not prevent any person who may be holding the office of President, or acting as President, during the term within which this Article becomes operative from holding the office of President or acting as President during the remainder of such term.

2. This article shall be inoperative unless it shall have been ratified as an amendment to the Constitution by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several States within seven years from the date of its submission to the States by the Congress.

---

**AMENDMENT 23. Presidential Vote for District of Columbia.** Ratified 3/29/1961.

1. The District constituting the seat of Government of the United States shall appoint in such manner as the Congress may direct: A number of electors of President and Vice President equal to the whole number of Senators and Representatives in Congress to which the District would be entitled if it were a State, but in no event more than the least populous State; they shall be in addition to those appointed by the States, but they shall be considered, for the purposes of the election of President and Vice President, to be electors appointed by a State; and they shall meet in the District and perform such duties as provided by the twelfth article of amendment.

2. The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

*The U.S.  
Capitol,  
where  
Congress  
meets.*

**21ST AMENDMENT**

Amendment 18 is repealed. The production, sale, and use of alcohol are legal, unless a state law says otherwise.

*(The only way to get rid of an amendment is with another amendment.)*

**22ND AMENDMENT**

No person can be elected president more than twice. This was decided based on George Washington's decision to only serve two terms.

Only one president, Franklin D. Roosevelt, served more than two terms. He was president during the difficult days of the Great Depression and World War II. This amendment was passed after his death.

## **24TH AMENDMENT**

Charging a tax to vote in a federal election (poll tax) is illegal.

A Supreme Court ruling in 1966, in a case from Virginia, removed poll taxes in state elections as well.

## **25TH AMENDMENT**

If the president resigns or dies, there is a plan in place to name another president. Throughout history there have been times when the president has been sick or an attempt has been made on his life. This amendment puts in writing the plan to replace a president who is no longer able to make decisions for the country.

## **26TH AMENDMENT**

Eighteen-year-olds have the right to vote.

## **27TH AMENDMENT**

Congress cannot vote itself a pay raise while in session.

## **AMENDMENT 24. Poll Tax.** Ratified 1/23/1964.

Section 1. The right of citizens of the United States to vote in any primary or other election for President or Vice President, for electors for President or Vice President, or for Senator or Representative in Congress, shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or any state by reason of failure to pay any poll tax or other tax.

Section 2. The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

---

## **AMENDMENT 25. Presidential Disability and Succession.** Ratified 2/10/1967.

1. In case of the removal of the President from office or of his death or resignation, the Vice President shall become President.

2. Whenever there is a vacancy in the office of the Vice President, the President shall nominate a Vice President who shall take office upon confirmation by a majority vote of both Houses of Congress.

3. Whenever the President transmits to the President pro tempore of the Senate and the Speaker of the House of Representatives his written declaration that he is unable to discharge the powers and duties of his office, and until he transmits to them a written declaration to the contrary, such powers and duties shall be discharged by the Vice President as Acting President.

4. Whenever the Vice President and a majority of either the principal officers of the executive departments or of such other body as Congress may by law provide, transmit to the President pro tempore of the Senate and the Speaker of the House of Representatives their written declaration that the President is unable to discharge the powers and duties of his office, the Vice President shall immediately assume the powers and duties of the office as Acting President.

Thereafter, when the President transmits to the President pro tempore of the Senate and the Speaker of the House of Representatives his written declaration that no inability exists, he shall resume the powers and duties of his office unless the Vice President and a majority of either the principal officers of the executive department or of such other body as Congress may by law provide, transmit within four days to the President pro tempore of the Senate and the Speaker of the House of Representatives their written declaration that the President is unable to discharge the powers and duties of his office. Thereupon Congress shall decide the issue, assembling within forty eight hours for that purpose if not in session. If the Congress, within twenty one days after receipt of the latter written declaration, or, if Congress is not in session, within twenty one days after Congress is required to assemble, determines by two thirds vote of both Houses that the President is unable to discharge the powers and duties of his office, the Vice President shall continue to discharge the same as Acting President; otherwise, the President shall resume the powers and duties of his office.

---

## **AMENDMENT 26. Voting Age Set to 18 Years.** Ratified 7/1/1971.

1. The right of citizens of the United States, who are eighteen years of age or older, to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or by any State on account of age.

2. The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

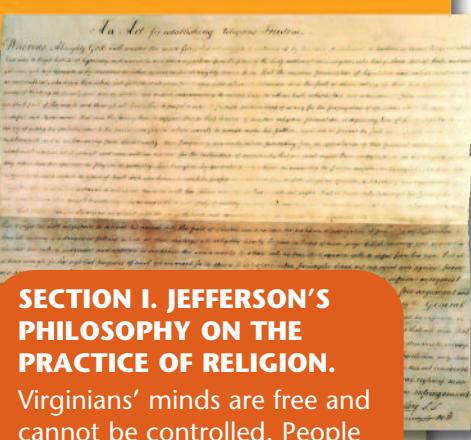
---

## **AMENDMENT 27. Limiting Congressional Pay Increases.** Ratified 5/7/1992.

No law, varying the compensation for the services of the Senators and Representatives, shall take effect, until an election of Representatives shall have intervened.

# The Virginia Statute for Religious Freedom

Drafted by Thomas Jefferson in 1777, and passed in 1786.



## SECTION I. JEFFERSON'S PHILOSOPHY ON THE PRACTICE OF RELIGION.

Virginians' minds are free and cannot be controlled. People have a right to their own beliefs, and leaders should not judge them. The people of Virginia should be allowed their religious freedom without being punished. The government should protect this liberty. People might not have the same religious beliefs, but that's okay.

## SECTION II. JEFFERSON'S IDEA FOR A NEW LAW.

Every Virginian will have a right to practice religion freely and still keep all of their rights as citizens.

## SECTION III. JEFFERSON'S BELIEF IN NATURAL RIGHTS

The right to freedom of religion is a natural right that no man or government can take away.

## An Act for establishing religious Freedom.

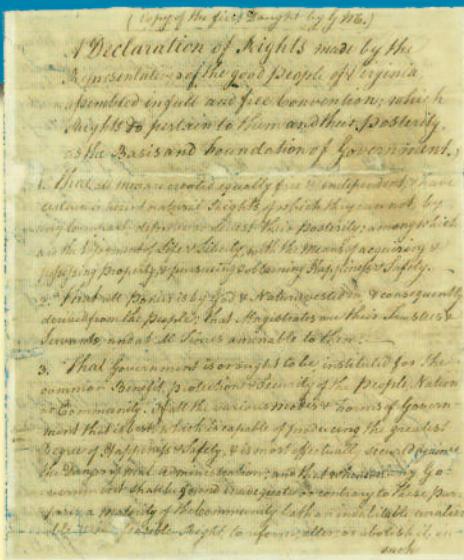
I. Well aware that Almighty God has created the mind free; that all attempts to influence it by temporal punishments or burthens, or by civil incapacitations tend only to beget habits of hypocrisy and meanness, and are a departure from the plan of the holy author of our religion, who being Lord, both of body and mind yet chose not to propagate it by coercions on either, as was in his Almighty power to do, that the impious presumption of legislators and rulers, civil as well as ecclesiastical, who, being themselves but fallible and uninspired men have assumed dominion over the faith of others, setting up their own opinions and modes of thinking as the only true and infallible, and as such endeavoring to impose them on others, hath established and maintained false religions over the greatest part of the world and through all time; that to compel a man to furnish contributions of money for the propagation of opinions which he disbelieves is sinful and tyrannical; that even the forcing him to support this or that teacher of his own religious persuasion is depriving him of the comfortable liberty of giving his contributions to the particular pastor, whose morals he would make his pattern, and whose powers he feels most persuasive to righteousness, and is withdrawing from the Ministry those temporary rewards, which, proceeding from an approbation of their personal conduct are an additional incitement to earnest and unremitting labours for the instruction of mankind; that our civil rights have no dependence on our religious opinions any more than our opinions in physics or geometry, that therefore the proscribing any citizen as unworthy the public confidence, by laying upon him an incapacity of being called to offices of trust and emolument, unless he profess or renounce this or that religious opinion, is depriving him injuriously of those privileges and advantages, to which, in common with his fellow citizens, he has a natural right, that it tends only to corrupt the principles of that very Religion it is meant to encourage, by bribing with a monopoly of worldly honours and emoluments those who will externally profess and conform to it; that though indeed, these are criminal who do not withstand such temptation, yet neither are those innocent who lay the bait in their way; that to suffer the civil magistrate to intrude his powers into the field of opinion and to restrain the profession or propagation of principles on supposition of their ill tendency is a dangerous fallacy which at once destroys all religious liberty because he being of course judge of that tendency will make his opinions the rule of judgment and approve or condemn the sentiments of others only as they shall square with or differ from his own; that it is time enough for the rightful purposes of civil government, for its officers to interfere when principles break out into overt acts against peace and good order; and finally, that Truth is great, and will prevail if left to herself, that she is the proper and sufficient antagonist to error, and has nothing to fear from the conflict, unless by human interposition disarmed of her natural weapons free argument and debate, errors ceasing to be dangerous when it is permitted freely to contradict them:

II. Be it enacted by the General Assembly that no man shall be compelled to frequent or support any religious worship, place, or ministry whatsoever, nor shall otherwise suffer on account of his religious opinions or belief; but that all men shall be free to profess, and by argument to maintain, their opinion in matters of religion, and that the same shall in no wise diminish, enlarge, or affect their civil capacities.

III. And though we well know that this assembly, elected by the people for the ordinary purposes of legislation only, [has] no power to restrain the acts of succeeding assemblies, constituted with powers equal to her own, and that therefore to declare this act to be irrevocable would be of no effect in law; yet, as we are free to declare, and do declare, that the rights hereby asserted are of the natural rights of mankind, and that if any act shall hereafter be passed to repeal the present or to narrow its operation, such act will be an infringement [violation] of natural rights.

# Virginia Declaration of Rights

Written by George Mason  
May 1776.



There are two parts to this document. The first part talks about the relationship between the people of Virginia and their government.

## SECTIONS 1–7

- The people of Virginia have the freedom to pursue a safe and happy life.
- The people are the source of power for government.
- The government is responsible for protecting the people and, while accepting that responsibility, the government also has limits on its power.

**I** That all men are by nature equally free and independent, and have certain inherent rights, of which, when they enter into a state of society, they cannot, by any compact, deprive or divest their posterity; namely, the enjoyment of life and liberty, with the means of acquiring and possessing property, and pursuing and obtaining happiness and safety.

**II** That all power is vested in, and consequently derived from, the people; that magistrates are their trustees and servants, and at all times amenable to them.

**III** That government is, or ought to be, instituted for the common benefit, protection, and security of the people, nation or community; of all the various modes and forms of government that is best, which is capable of producing the greatest degree of happiness and safety and is most effectually secured against the danger of maladministration; and that, whenever any government shall be found inadequate or contrary to these purposes, a majority of the community hath an indubitable, unalienable, and indefeasible right to reform, alter or abolish it, in such manner as shall be judged most conducive to the public weal.

**IV** That no man, or set of men, are entitled to exclusive or separate emoluments or privileges from the community, but in consideration of public services; which, not being descendible, neither ought the offices of magistrate, legislator, or judge be hereditary.

**V** That the legislative and executive powers of the state should be separate and distinct from the judicative; and, that the members of the two first may be restrained from oppression by feeling and participating the burthens of the people, they should, at fixed periods, be reduced to a private station, return into that body from which they were originally taken, and the vacancies be supplied by frequent, certain, and regular elections in which all, or any part of the former members, to be again eligible, or ineligible, as the laws shall direct.

**VI** That elections of members to serve as representatives of the people in assembly ought to be free; and that all men, having sufficient evidence of permanent common interest with, and attachment to, the community have the right of suffrage and cannot be taxed or deprived of their property for public uses without their own consent or that of their representatives so elected, nor bound by any law to which they have not, in like manner, assented, for the public good.

**VII** That all power of suspending laws, or the execution of laws, by any authority without consent of the representatives of the people is injurious to their rights and ought not to be exercised.

**VIII** That in all capital or criminal prosecutions a man hath a right to demand the cause and nature of his accusation to be confronted with the accusers and witnesses, to call for evidence in his favor, and to a speedy trial by an impartial jury of his vicinage, without whose unanimous consent he cannot be found guilty, nor can he be compelled to give evidence against himself; that no man be deprived of his liberty except by the law of the land or the judgement of his peers.

**IX** That excessive bail ought not to be required, nor excessive fines imposed; nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

**X** That general warrants, whereby any officer or messenger may be commanded to search suspected places without evidence of a fact committed, or to seize any person or persons not named, or whose offense is not particularly described and supported by evidence, are grievous and oppressive and ought not to be granted.

**XI** That in controversies respecting property and in suits between man and man, the ancient trial by jury is preferable to any other and ought to be held sacred.

**XII** That the freedom of the press is one of the greatest bulwarks of liberty and can never be restrained but by despotic governments.

**XIII** That a well regulated militia, composed of the body of the people, trained to arms, is the proper, natural, and safe defense of a free state; that standing armies, in time of peace, should be avoided as dangerous to liberty; and that, in all cases, the military should be under strict subordination to, and be governed by, the civil power.

**XIV** That the people have a right to uniform government; and therefore, that no government separate from, or independent of, the government of Virginia, ought to be erected or established within the limits thereof.

**XV** That no free government, or the blessings of liberty, can be preserved to any people but by a firm adherence to justice, moderation, temperance, frugality, and virtue and by frequent recurrence to fundamental principles.

**XVI** That religion, or the duty which we owe to our Creator and the manner of discharging it, can be directed by reason and conviction, not by force or violence; and therefore, all men are equally entitled to the free exercise of religion, according to the dictates of conscience; and that it is the mutual duty of all to practice Christian forbearance, love, and charity towards each other.

*Adopted unanimously June 12, 1776 Virginia Convention of Delegates,  
drafted by Mr. George Mason.*

*The second part talks about the rights of the people of Virginia.*

## SECTIONS 8–16

Virginians have certain fundamental rights. They include:

- The right to a fair and speedy trial.
- The right to be safe from unreasonable government searches.
- The right to fair punishments.
- The right to maintain a military.
- The right to choose which religion, if any, they will practice.

In exchange for these rights, Virginians must abide by the rules of law.

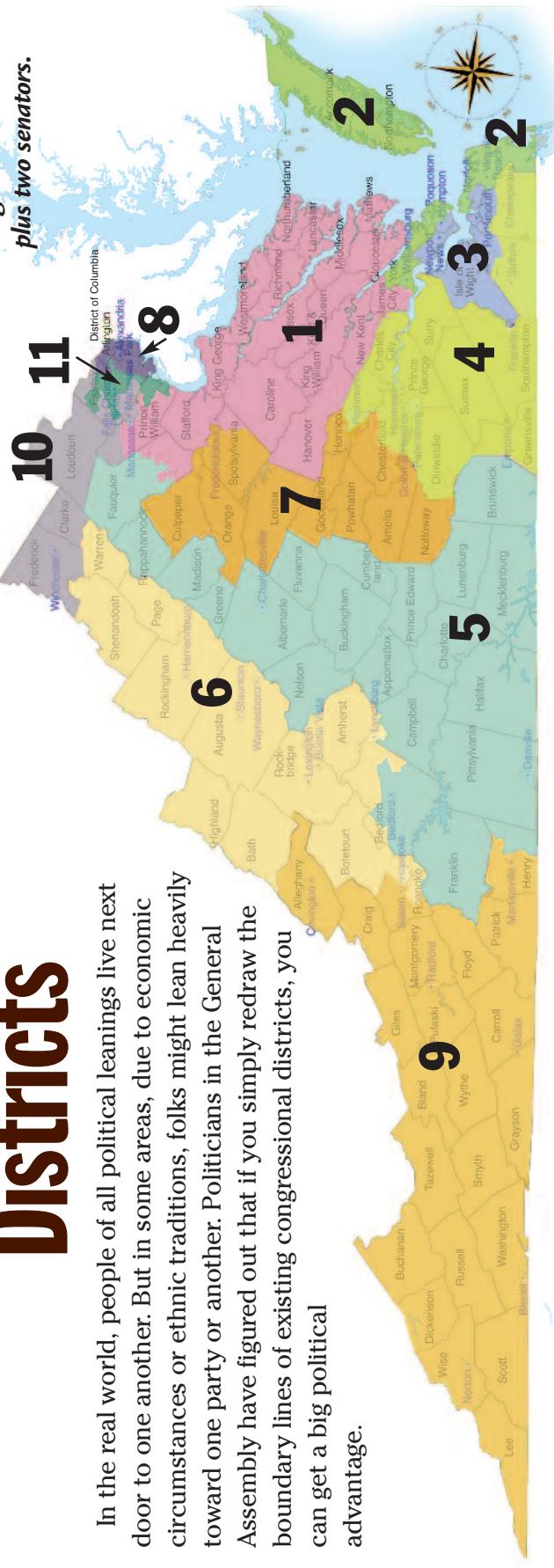
*George  
Mason*



# Virginia Congressional Districts

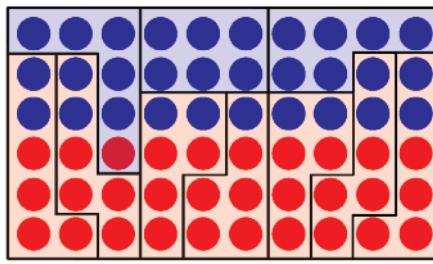
214

In the real world, people of all political leanings live next door to one another. But in some areas, due to economic circumstances or ethnic traditions, folks might lean heavily toward one party or another. Politicians in the General Assembly have figured out that if you simply redraw the boundary lines of existing congressional districts, you can get a big political advantage.

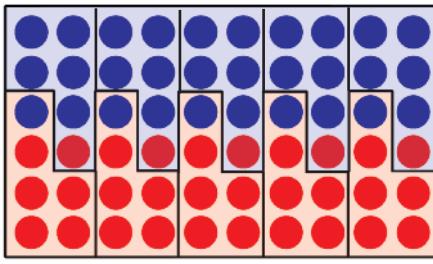


*The number of congresspeople a state has is determined by its population. As of 2017, Virginia was entitled to eleven plus two senators.*

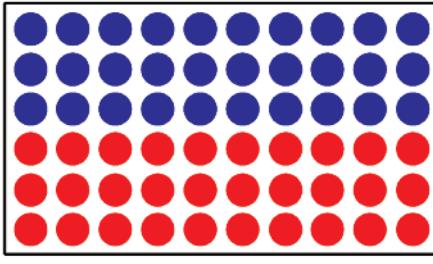
## GERRYMANDERED DISTRICTS



## 10 SIMPLE DISTRICTS



## 60 PRECINCTS



## GERRYMANDERING

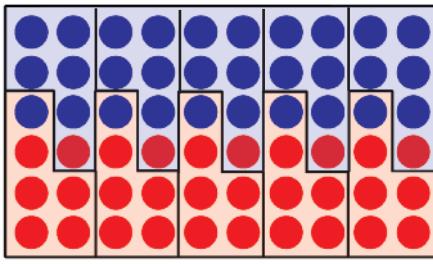
Gerrymandering is the word used to describe manipulating the map to political advantage. You can squish most of the people who might vote for one particular party into a few large districts and spread the remainder into lots of other districts. Here's how it works. Virginia is fairly evenly divided between Democrats and Republicans. Let's say that blue dots represent precincts that vote mostly for Democrats. The red circles tend to be precincts that support Republicans. Fifty percent of the districts are Democrats and 50 percent are Republicans. In this example, if you divide the precincts equally into five districts, the vote will be very close. But if the precincts are lumped irregularly, pushing all the blues into three chunks, red will get a big advantage.

7 Districts Elect Red	5 Districts Elect Blue
3 Districts Elect Blue	7 Districts Elect Red

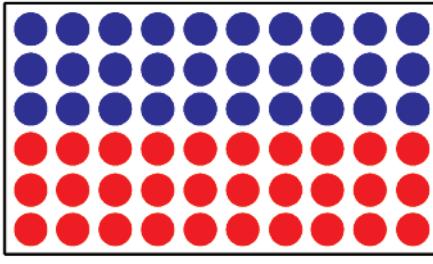
## GERRYMANDERED DISTRICTS



## 10 SIMPLE DISTRICTS



## 60 PRECINCTS



## GERRYMANDERING

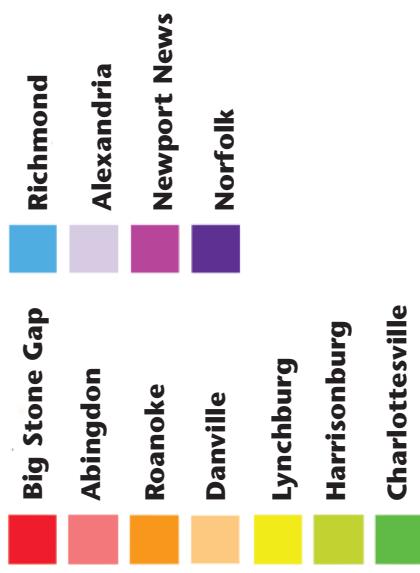
Gerrymandering is the word used to describe manipulating the map to political advantage. You can squish most of the people who might vote for one particular party into a few large districts and spread the remainder into lots of other districts. Here's how it works. Virginia is fairly evenly divided between Democrats and Republicans. Let's say that blue dots represent precincts that vote mostly for Democrats. The red circles tend to be precincts that support Republicans. Fifty percent of the districts are Democrats and 50 percent are Republicans. In this example, if you divide the precincts equally into five districts, the vote will be very close. But if the precincts are lumped irregularly, pushing all the blues into three chunks, red will get a big advantage.

7 Districts Elect Red	5 Districts Elect Blue
3 Districts Elect Blue	7 Districts Elect Red

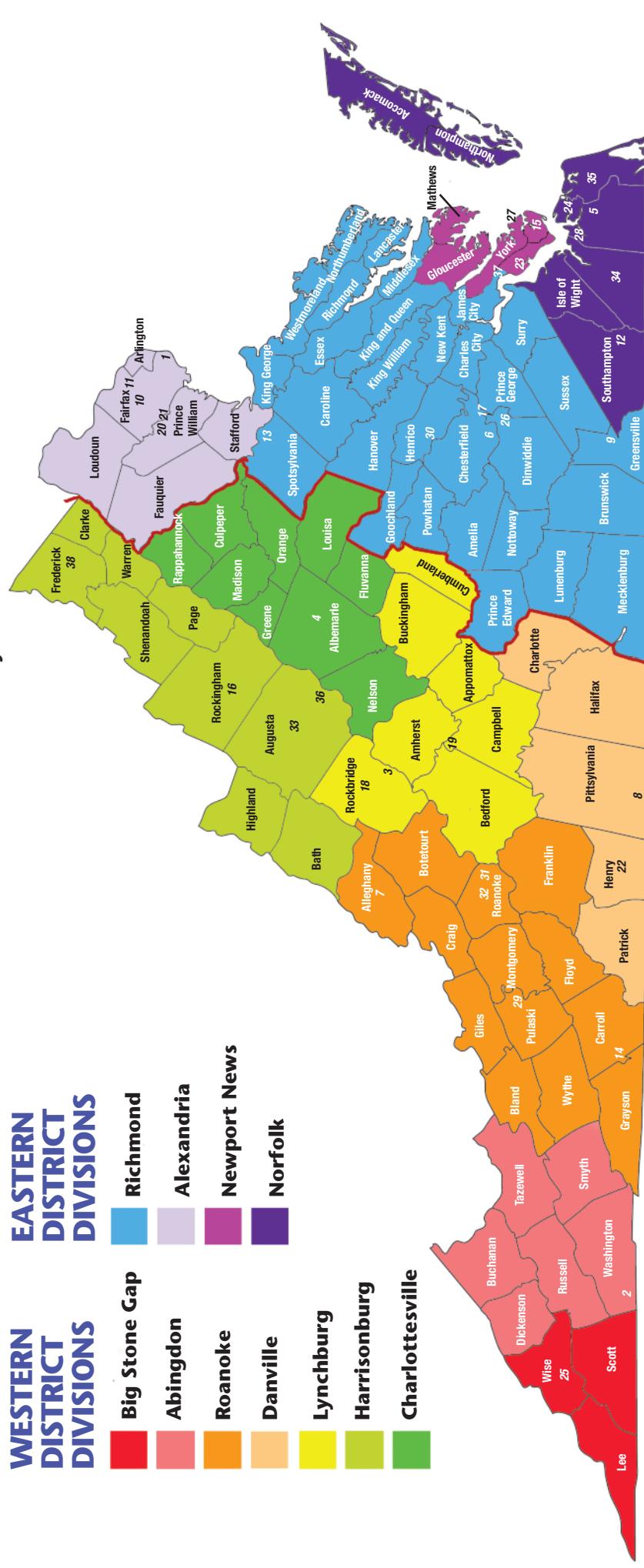
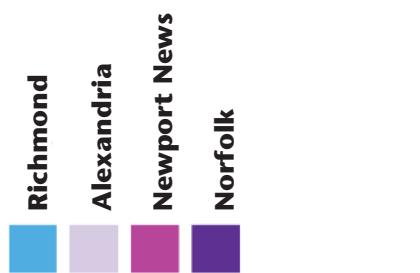
# Virginia Judicial Districts

*Find your county or independent city.  
In what district and division are you?*

## WESTERN DISTRICT DIVISIONS



## EASTERN DISTRICT DIVISIONS



## INDEPENDENT CITIES

1. **Alexandria**
2. **Bristol**
3. **Buena Vista**
4. **Charlottesville**
5. **Chesapeake**
6. **Colonial Heights**
7. **Covington**
8. **Danville**
9. **Emporia**
10. **Fairfax**
11. **Falls Church**
12. **Franklin**
13. **Fredericksburg**
14. **Galax**
15. **Hampton**
16. **Harrisonburg**
17. **Hopewell**
18. **Lexington**
19. **Lynchburg**
20. **Manassas**
21. **Manassas Park**
22. **Martinsville**
23. **Newport News**
24. **Norfolk**
25. **Norton**
26. **Petersburg**
27. **Poquoson**
28. **Portsmouth**
29. **Radford**
30. **Richmond**
31. **Roanoke**
32. **Salem**
33. **Staunton**
34. **Suffolk**
35. **Virginia Beach**
36. **Waynesboro**
37. **Williamsburg**
38. **Winchester**





# POLITICAL MAP OF THE UNITED STATES

# GLOSSARY

## A

**ambassador** - a person sent by the president as the official representative to a foreign country

**amendment** - a formal or official change to a document

**appeal** - ask a higher court to reverse the decision of a lower court

**appellate court** - a court that hears appeals from already-tried cases

**appellate jurisdiction** - authority to review a decision of a lower court

**antitrust** - a kind of legislation to prevent monopolies from forming, with the hopes of promoting competition in business

**arraignment** - a criminal proceeding at which the defendant is called before a court, told of the charges, and asked to enter a plea of guilty or not guilty

**attorney general** - an elected position, this person serves as the state of Virginia's head lawyer and legal expert

## B

**bail** - money paid or property pledged for the temporary release of a person awaiting trial as a guarantee that he or she will appear in court

**bailiff** - an official in a court of law who keeps order and looks after the accused during criminal trials

**ballot** - a document on which a voter will choose a candidate for election

**bias** - being in favor of or against a person or group, in an unfair, one-sided way

**bicameral** - having two branches, houses, or chambers

**bill** - a proposed law to be shared for discussion

**board of supervisors** - the legislative body for a county in Virginia

**bonds** - certificates issued by governments to borrow money. Bonds are purchased and held for fixed periods of time. When they are cashed in, the value will have grown due to interest payments.

**budget** - an estimate of how money will be spent

**bureaucracy** - a large group of people who are appointed, rather than elected, to take part in running a government

## C

**Cabinet** - a group of advisors to the president or governor. Each heads up one of the executive departments of the government.

**checks and balances** - ways for each branch of government to limit the powers of the other two branches so that one branch does not abuse its power

**choice** - picking an item or an action from possible alternatives

**circuit court** - the trial courts in Virginia that handle felony criminal cases and major civil cases

**city council** - the legislative body of a city

**citizen** - A person who legally belongs to a country and has the rights, protections, and freedoms of that country

**civil suit** - one person or business suing another person or business in hopes of getting a financial settlement to pay for damages. Also called a lawsuit or civil suit.

**Commonwealth's Attorneys** - elected officials in Virginia's counties and cities who represent the victims of crime in court; also known as prosecutors

**communicable** - able to be passed from one person to another; contagious

**competition** - rivalry among sellers that keeps prices low and quality high for consumers

**consent of the governed** - the people are the source of any and all governmental power

**conservative** - a person who believes that limited government is best, with little oversight of businesses, plus strong support for traditional lifestyle choices

**consumer sovereignty** - when the wants and needs of consumers dictate what products are made

**consumption** - the using of goods or services

**contract** - a written or spoken agreement, usually concerning employment, sales, or the occupancy of a home. A signed contract is enforceable by law.

**corporation** - a form of business that legally acts as a single business entity, sharing ownership and profits, but with some financial protection for shareholders

**criminal case** - a court proceeding in which a person who is charged with having committed a crime is brought to trial and found not guilty or guilty and sentenced

## D

**damages** - payment ordered by the court to compensate for loss, injury, pain, or suffering

**defendant** - in a civil case the person or company being sued; in a criminal case the person being accused of committing a crime

**district court** - found in each city and county of Virginia, this court handles things like traffic violations, misdemeanors, and civil suits with claims of \$4,500 or less

**domestic** - existing or occurring within a country or a home

**due process** - constitutional protection against unfair governmental actions and laws. A guarantee of fairness.

## E

**editorials** - writings that reflect the opinion of the newspaper

**Elastic Clause** - Article 1, Section 8 of the U.S. Constitution that allows Congress to stretch its powers to make the 27 expressed powers possible; also known as the *Necessary and Proper Clause*

**Electoral College** - a body of electors chosen by the voters in each state to elect the president and vice president of the U.S.

**electorate** - a large group of people who are entitled to vote

**embassies** - the official residences or offices of ambassadors

**entrepreneur** - a person who thinks of an idea for a new product or business and then works to build that business

**entrepreneurial** - taking a financial risk by starting a new business

**executive** - the branch of federal and state governments responsible for implementing, supporting, and enforcing laws made by the legislative branch and interpreted by the judicial branch

**executive actions** - legally binding orders given by the president to federal administrative agencies

**export** - to sell goods or services to another country

**expressed powers** - the powers of Congress that are listed in the Constitution

## F

**Federal Election Commission (FEC)** - an independent regulatory agency created to enforce campaign finance legislation in the United States

**federalism** - a way to distribute power in government between a central authority and a state

**felony** - a serious crime

**foreign** - related to contact or dealings with other countries

**free enterprise** - an economic system that operates without undue interference from the government

## G

**global economy** - worldwide markets in which the buying and selling of goods and services by all individuals, nations, and businesses takes place

**globalization** - the interaction of the people, companies, and governments of different nations; a process driven by international trade and investment and aided by information technology

## I

**immigrate** - to come into a new country permanently

**impeach** - to officially charge a person who holds a public office with misconduct

**implied powers** - the powers of Congress to carry out expressed powers; powers suggested without actually being said

**import** - to purchase goods or services from another country

**inalienable** - a right that cannot be taken away from a person

**income tax** - payments made by individuals and corporations based on income received

**incorporated** - having powers granted by the state and county to provide products and local services to citizens

**inflation** - a time when prices keep quickly going up and up

## J

**judicial** - the court systems of local, state, and federal governments, responsible for interpreting and applying the laws passed by the legislative branch and enforced by the executive branch

**judicial review** - the power of the court to rule that a law passed by Congress or a state legislature is unconstitutional

**jurisdiction** - the authority to hear a case

**jury** - a panel of people selected from the general population to hear a civil or criminal case

**juvenile** - a legal term that describes a person under the age of 18

**juvenile and domestic relations**

**district court** - located in each Virginia city and county, this court hears cases involving young people charged with a crime or matters involving family conflicts, such as child support

## L

**legislative** - the branch of the federal and state governments empowered to make laws that are enforced by the executive branch, and interpreted and applied by the judicial branch

**liberal** - a person who believes that government action is the best way to achieve equal opportunity, protect civil rights, and help those in need

**lieutenant governor** - the executive officer of a state who is next in rank to a governor and who takes the governor's place in case of disability or death

**limited government** - a type of government that is not all-powerful; it can only do those things the people have given it power to do

**litigation** - a civil lawsuit or a court proceeding involving someone charged with a crime

**lobbying** - trying to influence a legislator to introduce a bill or vote for, or against, a bill

## M

**manager** - an administrator who may be hired by the legislative branch in cities or counties to oversee the day-to-day tasks of that locality

**mayor** - the head of a town or city council. This person is either elected directly by voters or appointed by town or city councils.

**misdemeanors** - small crimes that often result in the payment of a fine rather than jail time

**monopoly** - a single company that owns all or nearly all of the market for a given type of product or service. There is no competition, which can result in high prices or inferior products.

## N

**naturalize** - to grant a foreigner citizenship in a country

## O

**op-ed pieces** - newspaper articles that offer a person's opinion instead of reporting facts

**opportunity cost** - what you give up when you make a choice

**ordinance** - a local law enacted at the town, city, or county level

**original jurisdiction** - the authority to hear a case first

## P

**pandemic** - a disease that spreads over a wide area—a whole country and sometimes many parts of the world

**partnership** - form of business with two or more owners who share the risks and profits

**plaintiff** - the person or group who accuses another person or group of a wrongdoing in a civil case

**Political Action Committees (PACs)** - special-interest groups—private organizations, such as unions or trade groups, or corporations—that spend huge sums of money in hopes of influencing an election and then obtaining some benefits if the preferred candidate wins

**political cartoons** - illustrations containing political or social messages that relate to current events

**popular vote** - the total number of votes a candidate gets from individual voters

**preamble** - an introduction to a document that explains why it is being written and what its aims are

**price** - the amount paid for an item or service

**private property** - personally owned property defined and protected by the government

**probable cause** - enough evidence to make a search or press charges

**production** - the combining of resources to make goods or provide services

**profits** - a company's earnings after all of its expenses have been paid

**propaganda** - misleading information, used to promote a political cause or point of view

**property tax** - a tax on land and buildings. Property tax may also be levied on personal property, such as boats or cars.

**proposition** - a suggested idea or plan of action

**proprietorship** - form of business with one owner who takes all the risks and all the profits

**prosecutors** - the lawyers who try to prove someone is guilty of a crime

## R

**ratification** - the formal consent or approval of something

**recession** - a time of economic decline. Trade and manufacturing drop off, and jobs are lost.

**representative system of government** - a type of government where people elect officeholders to make laws and run the nation on their behalf

**republic** - a government led by elected representatives rather than a king or a queen

**revenue** - the income of a government or business

**rule of law** - a system where the government, elected officials, and everyone else must obey the law

## S

**sales tax** - a tax consumers pay on many items they purchase. It is a percentage of the sale price.

**scarcity** - the inability to satisfy all wants at the same time due to limited resources and goods

**school board** - an elected or appointed group that oversees the operation of K-12 public schools in counties and cities across Virginia

**self-assessment** - an evaluation of one's strengths and weaknesses

**separation of powers** - a way of dividing the government's power into three equal branches: executive, legislative, and judicial

**small claims court** - part of the court system where a judge hears disputes involving money under the sum of \$5,000

**sue** - to begin legal proceedings against a person or company

## T

**third party** - a political party organized in opposition to the existing parties in a two-party system

**town council** - the legislative body of a town

## V

**verdict** - the decision of a jury

## W

**warranty** - a written promise from a manufacturer that says that if a product fails during a specified time, it will be repaired or replaced

# INDEX

## A

Adams, John, 33, 56, 136  
Administration Department (Virginia), 103  
Agriculture & Forestry (Virginia), 103  
Agriculture Department (U.S.), 76  
ambassadors, 75  
amendment process, U.S. Constitution, 42  
amendment process, Virginia Constitution, 43  
amendments to the U.S. Constitution, 14–15, 21, 40–41, 43–45, 207–210  
anti-counterfeiting measures, 179  
antitrust legislation, 172  
appeals, 82, 141  
appellate courts, 82, 134–135  
armed forces, 18–19  
arraignment, 140–141  
Articles of Confederation, 34–35  
auto industry standards, 157

## B

bail, 140  
balance of power, 66, 68  
balloon economics, 176  
ballots, 52  
banking system (U.S.), 164–165  
bias, 56–57  
bicameral legislature, 68, 94  
Bill of Rights, 14–15, 37, 40–41, 93, 96, 124, 134–135, 141, 206  
Bono, Edward de, 190  
Bovard, James, 20  
*Brown v. Board of Education*, 83, 138  
Bull Moose Party, 55  
bureaucracy, 68  
Bush, George, 61  
business organizations, types of, 158–159

## C

Cabinet departments (federal), 74–77  
Cabinet departments (Virginia), 102–103  
capital resources, 152  
Capitol Hill, 72, 125  
car manufacturing in America, 156–157  
career choices, influencing factors in, 188–193  
Centers for Disease Control (CDC), 128  
central bank of the United States, 164, 180  
changing public policy, 124  
Chávez, César, 106, 124  
checks and balances, 84–85, 137  
CIA (Central Intelligence Agency), 80

citizenship, 9–11, 16  
civic duties, 12, 16–19  
civic responsibilities, 9–13, 16, 50–51, 62–63  
civil cases, 112, 134–135, 142–143  
civil procedure, 143  
Civil Rights Act (1866), 21  
Civil Rights Act (1964), 98  
Civil War, the, 44, 99, 144, 164  
class action lawsuits, 143  
coins and currency, 178–179  
colonial economy of Virginia, 154, 167, 178  
command economy, 155  
Commerce & Trade (Virginia), 103  
Commerce Clause, 98  
Commerce Department (U.S.), 77  
Commonwealth Department (Virginia), 103  
Commonwealth of Virginia, 91–95  
community service, 7, 22–23, 50–51  
competition in the U.S. marketplace, 156  
confirmation of presidential appointees, 71, 73  
congressional powers, 68, 71, 73, 86–87  
consent of the governed, 29  
conservatives, 54  
Constitution of the United States, 7, 14, 27, 35–40, 82–84, 93, 134, 199–205  
Constitution of Virginia, 92–93, 116  
Constitutional Convention of 1787, 36  
Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC), 183  
consumer protection agencies, 183  
consumer sovereignty, 155–156  
consumption in the marketplace, 153  
Continental Congress, 33–34  
contracts, 183  
corporations, 158–159  
county officials, 110–111, 114–115  
county/city basic services, 108–109  
credit unions, 165  
criminal cases, 112, 140  
criminal procedure, 141

## D

Declaration of Independence, 32–33, 93, 196–198  
defendants, 41  
Defense Department, 76, 175  
Democrats, 52, 54–55, 214  
Department of the Interior, 76  
desegregated schools, 83, 99  
direct democracy, ancient Greece, 28  
double jeopardy, 141  
*Dred Scott v. Sandford*, 138  
due process protections, 15, 144–145

## E

economic concepts, 153  
economic flow, 162–163  
economic resources, 152

economic systems, types of, 154–155  
editorials, 57  
Education, Department of (U.S.), 77  
Education, Department of (Virginia), 103  
education, importance of, 189, 192–193  
Einstein, Albert, 11, 132  
Eisenhower, Dwight, 53  
Electoral College, 60–61  
electoral votes, 60–61  
electorate, 52  
electronic banking, 165, 179  
embassies, 75  
endangered species, 129  
Energy Department (U.S.), 77  
entitlements, 80–81  
entrepreneurs, 159, 167  
entrepreneurship, role in the economy, 152  
Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), 81, 183  
Equal Employment Opportunity Commission (EEOC), 81, 183  
Equal Rights Amendment (ERA), 45  
equality under the law, 38  
establish justice, 37  
executive actions, 85  
executive branch (federal), roles and powers, 39, 69, 74–81  
executive branch (state), roles and powers, 94–95, 102–103  
exports, 166–167  
expressed congressional powers, 86–87

## F

federal agencies and commissions, 74, 80–81  
federal budget, 81  
federal budget approval process, 71  
Federal Communications Commission (FCC), 81, 173  
Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC), 81  
Federal Election Commission (FEC), 58  
federal government, structure and powers, 68–87  
Federal Reserve Notes, 178  
Federal Reserve System, 81, 178–181  
federal supremacy, 138  
Federal Trade Commission (FTC), 173, 183  
federalism, 96, 98  
Federalist Papers, 96  
Federalists, 96  
felonies, 135  
Finance Department (Virginia), 103  
financial responsibilities, personal, 192  
527 groups, 58  
Food and Drug Administration (FDA), 183  
Ford, Henry, 156  
forensics evidence, 140  
for-profit banks, 165  
Franken, Al 122

Franklin, Benjamin, 16, 33, 50  
free market economy, 155  
freedom of assembly, 15, 40  
freedom of petition, 15, 20, 40  
freedom of religion, 14, 31, 40  
freedom of speech, 14, 40, 56, 59  
freedom of the press, 15  
fundamental principles of American democracy, 29

## G

Gandhi, Mahatma, 122  
gerrymandering, 72, 214  
*Gideon v. Wainwright*, 139  
Ginsburg, Ruth Bader, 83  
global economy, 129, 154, 166–167  
globalization, 190  
Gore, Al, 61  
government agencies, 80–81  
government bonds, 177  
government bureaucracy, 80  
government debt, 175–177  
government regulation in marketplace, 172–173  
government-provided goods and services, 174–175  
governor's roles and responsibilities, 102  
gun violence, young people, 122, 127

## H

Hamilton, Alexander, 35, 75, 96, 164, 178  
Health & Human Resources (Virginia), 103  
Health & Human Services (U.S.), 77  
history of banking in America, 164  
Homeland Security (U.S.), 77, 129  
House majority leader and whip, 72  
Housing & Urban Development, 77  
Hughes, Charles Evans, 82  
human resources, 152

## I

immigrants, 10–13, 124, 126  
impact of technology on trade, 167  
impeachment, 85  
implied congressional powers, 86–87  
implied federal powers, 138  
imports, 166–167  
inalienable rights, 33  
incentives to purchase, 153  
independent cities, 108–109, 215  
Independents, 52  
individual rights, 41  
inflation, 180–181  
insure domestic tranquility, 37  
interest rates, control of, 181  
international trade, 166–167  
interstate commerce, 98  
interstate highways, 174  
investigative journalism, 122–123

## J

Jackson, Andrew, 54  
Jamestown colony, 30, 92, 102  
Jay, John, 96  
Jefferson, Thomas, 31–33, 75, 90, 92–94, 98, 136, 164  
judicial branch (federal), 39, 69, 82–83, 134  
judicial branch (state), 95, 112–113, 135  
judicial review, 83, 136  
juries, 135  
jury duty, 17  
Justice Department (U.S.), 76  
justice's power of dissent, 83  
juvenile crimes, 95, 113

## K

Kagan, Elena, 85  
King, Martin Luther, Jr., 15, 124  
Knox, Henry, 75

## L

Labor Department (U.S.), 77  
land-grant colleges, 99  
lawmaking process (federal), 70–71  
lawmaking process (local), 110–111  
lawmaking process (state), 100  
legal jurisdiction, 134–135  
legislative branch (federal), 39, 68, 70–73  
legislative branch (state), 94, 104–105  
lemon laws, 182  
liberals, 54  
limited government, 29  
Lincoln, Abraham, 53  
literacy tests, 21  
litigation, 142  
lobbying, 73, 101, 124–125, 127, 131, 173  
local government, 108–111  
local officials, 110–111  
local ordinances, 110–111, 117  
*Loving v. Virginia*, 139  
low interest rates, economic impact of, 181

## M

Madison, James, 35–36, 38, 93, 96, 136  
*Magna Carta*, 29, 144  
Mandela, Nelson, 128  
*Mapp v. Ohio*, 138  
*Marbury v. Madison*, 83, 136–137  
Marbury, William, 136–137  
Marshall, John, 136–137  
Marshall, Thurgood, 83  
Mason, George, 31, 40, 93  
*McCulloch v. Maryland*, 138  
Mead, Margaret, 48  
media, impact on public opinion and policy, 56–57, 121–123  
military service, 6, 18–19  
Miranda warning, 144

misdemeanors, 112, 135  
mixed economy, 155–157, 162–163  
monetary damages, 134–135  
money, forms of, 178–179  
monopolies, 172–173

## N

NASA (National Aeronautics and Space Administration), 74, 80  
Nast, Thomas, 54  
national debt, 175–177  
national government, structure and powers, 68–87  
national parks, 99  
natural resources, 152  
natural resources (Virginia), 103  
naturalization process, 10–13  
Nixon, Richard, 85, 122–123  
non-citizen soldiers, 12  
Nuclear Regulatory Commission (NRC), 81

## O

Obama, Barack, 53, 71, 171  
Occupational Safety & Health Administration (OSHA), 183  
O'Connor, Sandra Day, 83  
OPEC cartel, 172  
op-ed pieces, 56  
opportunity cost, 153  
original jurisdiction, 134–135, 137

## P

PACs (political action committees), 58–59  
pandemics, 128  
Parks, Rosa, 124  
partnerships, 158  
patents, 173  
payment options in the economy, 165, 178–179  
Peale, Norman Vincent, 150  
Pentagon, 175  
Perot, Ross, 55  
plaintiff, 142  
*Plessy v. Ferguson*, 83  
political advertising, 57  
political campaign spending, 59  
political campaigns, 56–59  
political cartoons, 10, 16, 53, 54, 56, 57, 185  
political fund-raising, 58, 73  
political parties, 52–55  
political subdivisions in Virginia (counties, cities, towns), 108–111, 214  
poll taxes, 21, 62  
power to declare war, 71  
Preamble to the U.S. Constitution, 36–37  
president of the U.S., 39, 69, 74–75, 78–79  
president pro tempore of the U.S. Senate, 73

presidential duties, 69, 79  
presidential elections, 60–61  
presidential powers, 78–79  
presidential veto, 71, 78  
probable cause, 140  
production in the marketplace, 153  
profit, 156  
Progressive Party, 55  
Prohibition, 45  
propaganda, 56, 123  
prosecutors, 140–141  
protecting the environment, 81, 101, 129  
protection against self-incrimination, 41, 141  
provide for the common defense, 37  
Public Safety & Homeland Security (Virginia), 103  
purposes of the U.S. Constitution stated in the Preamble, 37

## R

Randolph, Edmund, 75  
Reagan, Ronald, 53  
recession, 181  
representative government, 28–29  
republic, ancient Rome, 28  
Republicans, 52, 54  
resources in the marketplace, 152–153, 162–163  
responsibilities of the Federal Reserve, 180  
right to bear arms, 40, 127  
right to fair and speedy trial, 15, 17, 29, 41, 135, 141  
right to free speech in schools, 146–147  
right to marital privacy, 139  
right to trial by jury, 29, 41  
rights of an accused person, 41, 141  
Robinson, Jackie, 9  
Rogers, Will, 16, 121  
Roosevelt, Franklin D., 53, 71, 78  
Roosevelt, Theodore, 55  
rule of law, 29

## S

savings and loans, 165  
scarcity in the marketplace, 153  
search warrants, 138, 141, 146  
secure the blessings of liberty, 37  
Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), 81  
segregated schools, 83  
self-assessment and career choice, 188–189  
self-incrimination, 141  
Senate majority leader and whip, 73  
separation of powers, 84–85  
small claims court, 113  
social media, importance of, 123, 189–191

Social Security Administration, 81  
sole proprietorship, 158  
Sotomayor, Sonia, 83  
sources of government funds, 175–177  
Speaker of the House, 70, 72  
special-interest groups, 59, 73, 87, 124–125, 127  
stable economy, 177  
State Department, 76  
state government, structure and powers, 94–98, 101–103  
State of the Union address, 78  
state seal and motto of Virginia, 93  
states' rights, 34–35, 41, 96, 206  
Stevenson, Adlai, 56–57  
student government, 51–52  
students and the law, 146–147  
Super PACs, 58–59, 125  
supply and demand in the marketplace, 153, 156  
Swift Boat Veterans TV ad, 57  
swing states, 61

## T

taxes, taxation, 16, 71, 81, 176–177  
Technology Department (Virginia), 103  
technology, importance of, 189–191  
telecommunications industry, 172  
term limits, 73, 94, 103  
third-party candidates, 55, 61  
three-part system of government, 38–39, 68, 84–85, 94–95  
trade regulations, 71  
traditional economy, 154  
Transportation Department (U.S.), 77  
Transportation Department (Virginia), 103  
Treasury Department, 76, 178  
Truman, Harry, 78  
two-party system, 54, 56, 61  
types of banks, 165

## U

U.S. Congress, 68, 70–73  
U.S. court system, 17, 39, 69, 82–83, 134–143  
U.S. dollar, 178–179  
U.S. House of Representatives, 68, 70–72  
U.S. Senate, 68, 70–73

## V

vaccinations, 128, 174  
verdicts, 17, 95, 115, 135, 141  
Veterans Affairs (U.S.), 77  
Veterans & Defense Affairs (Virginia), 103  
veto override, 71  
Virginia Company of London charters, 30  
Virginia congressional districts, 72, 214  
Virginia court system, 95, 112–113, 135  
Virginia Declaration of Rights, 31, 33, 93, 212–213

Virginia General Assembly, 43, 92, 94, 100–101  
Virginia House of Delegates, 94  
Virginia Plan, 75  
Virginia Senate, 94  
Virginia state parks, 99  
Virginia State University, 99  
Virginia Statute for Religious Freedom, 31, 211  
Virginia Tech, 99  
voter participation, 20, 63  
voter registration process in Virginia, 62  
Voting Rights Act (1965), 21

## W

warranties, 192  
Warren, Elizabeth, 186  
Washington, George, 35, 50, 60, 75, 80, 93  
White House, 69  
Wilder, L. Douglas, 102  
Wilson, Woodrow, 55, 66  
women's right to vote, 21, 43–44  
work ethic and career success, 188–189

# PICTURE CREDITS

Every effort has been made to ensure that this listing is complete and accurate and that appropriate credit has been given and permission obtained. In the event of any omissions or errors, the publisher will endeavor to correct said errors or omissions in the next printing. All photos and illustrations listed below are copyrighted by the respective providers. Any photos not listed are from Shutterstock or are in the public domain.

Back cover: Joseph Sohm/Shutterstock; Pages 6–7: top left, New York State Historic Preservation Office; middle left, National Gallery of Art; bottom montage, all Library of Congress, except the Navajo code talker, Shutterstock, and the navy sailor, U.S. Navy Band Archives. Page 10: bottom left, Library of Congress; middle left, University of Texas, El Paso; bottom right, Library of Congress. Page 11: bottom right, Bill/Dowling/Shutterstock. Page 12: bottom left, Corbis; bottom right, Leonard Zhukovsky/ Shutterstock. Page 13: bottom, Corbis. Page 16: bottom right, The New Yorker Cartoon Bank. Page 18: top left, Joe Ruhinski; top right, U.S. Navy archives; bottom left, USAF archives; bottom right, Jason Couillard. Page 19: top right, Sgt. Chad Menegay; middle left, Army National Guard; middle right, Jerry Zitterman/ Shutterstock; bottom right, Associated Press; bottom left, U.S. Marines archive. Page 20: Bottom left, ©Bruce Davidson. Page 21: Top left, Granger; bottom right, Library of Congress; bottom left, Newsweek. Page 22: bottom, David Butler II-USA TODAY Sports. Page 23: top right, Blend Images. Page 25: bottom, Joseph Sohm/Shutterstock. Page 28: bottom right, screen capture from Rome, HBO. Page 29: top middle, National Archives; top right, Granger. Page 30: top middle, Joseph Sohm/Shutterstock; top left, Library of Congress. Page 31: top right and bottom right, Library of Virginia; bottom left, Virginia Historical Society. Page 32: top left, Granger; bottom left, Library of Congress. Page 33: top right, Library of Congress. Page 34: top left, National Archives; bottom, J.T. Lewis/Shutterstock. Page 35: All Granger. Page 36: bottom, Joe Sohm/Shutterstock. Page 40: middle center, AP Images. Page 44: all Library of Congress. Page 50: bottom, Blend Images. Page 51: bottom right, Corbis. Page 53: top right, John Darkow, Columbia [Missouri] Daily Tribune; top middle right and middle left, Library of Congress; lower middle right, USMA at West Point. Page 54: bottom left, Library of Congress. Page 55: top left, Library of Congress; bottom left, Associated Press. Page 56: Randy Jones; page 57: middle left, Library of Congress; right panel, all images from the Museum of the Moving Image. Page 60: bottom left, Library of Virginia. Page 61: top right, The White House; middle left, Associated Press. Page 62: all, Getty Images. Page 74: bottom right, Library of Congress. Page 72: middle, virginia.gov. Page 73: top right, U.S. Senate. Page 74: White House Photostream. Page 83: bottom left, Corbis; middle, Arizona State University; bottom right, Collection of the Supreme Court of the United States,

Steve Petteway. Page 87: middle left, Library of Congress. Page 91: Library of Virginia. Page 94: bottom left, Nagel Photography/Shutterstock. Page 95: top center, Joseph Sohm/ Shutterstock; top right, WSET Lynchburg; bottom right, City of Chesapeake. Page 99: bottom left, Library of Congress. Page 102: top right, Clement Britt, Courtesy of the Richmond Times-Dispatch. Page 105: Nagel Photography/Shutterstock. Page 117: bottom left, Barry Blackburn/Shutterstock. Page 122: bottom left, Denys Prykhodov/Shutterstock. Page 123: middle right: NASA. Page 124: middle left to right, Library of Congress; University of Texas at Austin; Library of Congress. Page 126: top left, CSPAN. Page 136: middle left: Granger. Page 137: bottom left to right, American Bar Association; University of Virginia. Page 141: middle left, right, and bottom right, Corbis. Page 146: top: Corbis. Page 156: top left, Library of Congress. Page 157: top left: Tesla Motors; bottom right, Darren Brode/Shutterstock. Page 159: top left, Carolyn Cole/Los Angeles Times. Pages 160: top, Rex Photos: Page 164: bottom left, Library of Congress. Page 167: top far right, Paul Prescott/Shutterstock. Page 178: top right, U.S. Bureau of Engraving and Printing. Page 180: middle left, The Federal Reserve. Page 185: Stuart Carlson. Page 189: top right, Jane Schneider/Memphis Parent; middle right, Emi-Jay; bottom right, Sean Belnick.